漢譯開明英文文法

THE KAIMING ENGLISH GRAMMAR

(Chinese Version)

林語堂著
張沛霖譯

漢譯開明英文文法

THE KAIMING ENGLISH GRAMMAR

(Chinese Version)

林語堂著
張沛霖譯

開明書店印行

漢譯開明英文文法

二十九年十月初版　三十五年十一月八版

每冊定價國幣六元五角

原著者　林語堂

漢譯者　張沛霖

發行者　開明書店
代表人范洗人

印刷者　開明書店

有著作權 ■ 不准翻印

(235 P.)　韭 D 18

譯　序

這原是林先生用英文寫成的英文法書，現在承著者的囑託，翻譯爲中文本。

這書本來用作高中或大學一年級的英文法教本的，所以要譯成中文，無非想進一層替讀者添加學習的興趣和增進了解的程度。

英文法，在學校裏，一向被認爲枯燥乏味的科目。這並不是英文法本身的過失，實在因爲舊式英文法書的編制，專門教學習者死記着呆板的規則，甚至於把活潑的文字硬用那死板的規則來處理，弄得人莫明其妙。這部書一反從前的編制方式，完全以說英語者的觀念或意念做出發點，根據了心理學來討論各種各樣的表現法和英國人固有的思想方法，把一切文法工具（如文法形式和變化及種種結構）分配在許多'意念範疇'之內，使讀者覺得親切有味。而且它在每個意念範疇以內，都留下極大的餘地，給我們自己去觸類旁通，於欣然領會之餘，更能自己發掘出更多的類例和句例，自然而然的得到左右逢源之樂。它幫我們脫出了一向做那文法規則和界說的奴隸的鐐銬，一變而爲它們的主人；同時更介紹我們跟現代英語的慣用法發生親密的友誼，大踏步向詞以達意的大路上前進。

著者雖然也受現代文法學大家如意大利 Benedetto Croce，丹麥 Otto Jespersen，法國 Ferdinand Brunot, Henri Frei 諸人的影響，對於文法的革新，和他們抱着同樣的見解，但他的編著本書，既然供學校教科之用，所以竭力顧及實用方面，並不完全以理論爲主。像八品詞的仍被採用，卽其一例。

舊式英文法的基礎，已經發生了動搖；用革新的見解編著英文法的，在中國，這還是第一部。凡是讀過本書的，都能知道它對於中國的英文法教學上，有怎樣重大的影響。Otto Jespersen 曾經稱讚此書的趣味豐富，日本東京帝大教授市河三喜 (Sanki Ichikawa) 並且極力尊崇此書，說是'中國學術界對於英文研究的一個莫大的貢獻'。

文法學的革新，已經成爲世界一般的趨勢。不但是英文法，就是中國的國文法，也不能例外。這本書不但可爲學習英文法者的指導，就是對於國文法的改進，也有極大的幫助。總之，在全體的文法學界，這書的貢獻，不能不說是相當的重大。因此，中文本的翻譯，更其是需要了。

此外，有一點覺得應該聲明的，就是，譯者認爲有時可以添加一點說明和實例的地方，特別是涉及國文法的部分，也稍稍增加一點，這是該由譯者負責的。

張沛霖 識

一九四〇年八月一日，於上海

著者序

表現法的科學

開明英文文法是把一種新的文法理論應用到中國的英文法教學上面。它把一切文法形式和結構只當作表達意念的工具，把文法本身當作一種表現法的科學。它不是從外表講到涵義，卻是從涵義講到外表，即從意念講到意念的表現法。因此，它所討論的不是詞形和形式變化的界說和分析，卻更深一層研究說者的心理，問一問說者心底裏有什麼意念要表達，以及用什麼文法工具把它們表達出來。所以文法應討論 (1) 意念，以及 (2) 意念的表現法。一切的文法變化和結構是和這兩個問題有關，而附屬於它們的。這一種革新的文法見解，創始於 Benedetto Croce 的理想，而 Otto Jespersen 的 *Philosophy of Grammar* (文法理論，1924 年版) 和 Ferdinand Brunot 的 *La Pensée et la Langue* (思想及語言，1922 年版) 這兩部劃時代的著作，更把它發揚光大起來。

中英文之比較

在某種程度以內，開明英文文法也含有中英兩種語言的新的比較文法，說得精密一點，這是中英文意念範疇及各種表達意念的工具的比較。可是書中所舉各點，其性質完全是實用的而非理論的，意在藉此幫助中國學生克服某些心理上的困難。有許多普通的文法錯誤，很容易用這種心理方法矯正，也只有用這種方法才可以矯正。凡中英文在意念上有區別的地方，唯一辦法當然要訓練中國學生學得這新的思想方法。但如在多數狀態下面，中英文有着意念共通的地方，如何闡明這兩種文字表達方法的'不同'，實在是最有意義的事。因此，這樣整理出來的英文法，它所講的便是英文的思想法和表現法。學生應時時刻刻問自己：如果有了某個現成的觀念，用英文應該怎樣把它表達出來？

錯誤之由來

意念及其表現法的相差，僅僅是邏輯的，而非實際的。沒有一種思想會無法表現；也沒有一種表現的形式不循思想的徑路。我們說話時在運用思想，有許多女人從說話裏去找尋她們思想些什麼。思想法和表現法實則彼此打成一片，不可分離的。因此，沒有一種文法主張只講表現法，而同時不講思想方法的。文法錯誤的所以造成，大概由於思想途徑和表現法習慣的錯誤。錯誤有兩種：一是由於異邦人的思想法，這是學習外國語者所固有的；一是由於心理的原因，如觀念的矛盾，心理的轉變，人類的遺忘性，前後詞兒的影響等等。僅僅知道些規則，不能免除學習外國語者或說本國語者的錯誤。所以教文法的唯一有效而近情的辦法，是把它當作表現法的科學，由於反覆而有系統的練習，養成思想法和表現法的正確而通順的習慣。

要不要文法?

教文法而結果不能保證表現法的正確，已經使許多人棄文法如敝屣，主張用循序累積的閱讀方法來代替文法條例的記誦。倘論這種方法著重在無意中養成習慣，而不重支離破碎的文法，這是很對的。可是主張循序閱讀法的人卻爲'恐懼錯綜心理'所苦，把文法當作困擾學生的妖魔。這卻不見得合理。其實我們只要——實則也應該——把文法當作各種表現法的一套系統的練習，是每個人說話時必不可少的，那就得了。主張'閱讀而不學文法'的人，只要頭腦冷靜一點，就會承認這種閱讀方法的價值在於就活的文脈中挑選表現法的變動，由於把這些變動排列在意念分類之內，再預備些有系統的練習，那末這種種表現法挑選起來，便容易得多而愉快得多了。事實不容否認，在某處碰見孤另另的一個表現法，然後隔了許久才發見它的類例，終不及把那個孤另另的表現法隨即添上十來個同類同結構的例子來得有效而明確。照這樣講來，對於文法自無反對的餘地了。

規則作祟

我覺得文法錯誤還有第三個原因，就是由於拚命要求'正確'，怕破壞了文法規則。這種恐懼心理甚至達到蹂躪一切自然成語的境地。有些英國

小學生在夜校裏學過一點文法，開口說一句 "Whom are you?" 或 "between you and I"，而且還自鳴得意，其實他們吃虧的是由於那些捉摸不定的文法規則而生的一種心理紊亂。即在異國的學習者，像這種滿紙'不可'，'不得'的規條的文法，頗足以使他們覺得自己是在一個密佈陷阱和暗門的房間裏偷偷摸摸地行走，而不是用淺近的英語來表達他們的意念。像 "if war will break out next week" 和 "I had been sick before yesterday noon" 這一類可惡的句子，就是這一種文法教學法的產品。就心理學上講，正確是自然表現力的敵人，因而文法教學法非特不能增進學生表現的能力，實際反而成爲遏止一切自然表現力的惡魔。

'一切文法規則都有漏洞'

但是規則之無用，還有一個更深的邏輯理由。天才語言學家 Edward Sapir 說過：'一切文法規則都有漏洞'。天下最令人難堪的事，莫過於一個學過或教過一些文法的大學畢業生，老是以'時制順序'或'造句法'爲盾牌，無異於一個律師以刑法條文爲盾牌，突然批評你的極其通順的表現法，或許教你把 "let alone ～" 改爲 "letting alone ～"，硬說這個應該用分詞短語，或者把你的 "The boat sails next Wednesday" 改爲 "The boat will sail, etc." 如果本書中的註釋能够幫助教師對於規則的信仰發生動搖，發見英語的平易的方面，那末著者的心力便不算是虛擲的了。

一本沒有規則的文法書

現在我們應該丟掉分門別類的規則和同樣多的分門別類的例外，而對於英語中活的事實多加觀察。要訓練表現的能力，只有從學習善能表意而變化無窮的成語入手，不可套上文法的桎梏。文法既作爲表現法的科學，就應該靈活而不生硬；它所應付的應該是說者的意向而非規則和界說。它應該比較具體，而不該在拉丁字源的術語的圈子裏打滾。它也應該比較積極，不應該像一部刑法。本書著者的努力在於以觀察現代慣用法代替這種分門別類的規則。英文是一件活的東西，應付它只有這個才是妥當辦法。著者希望由於這個方法學生可以跟現代英文慣用法成立一種密切的交情，此外沒有什麼方法了。

末了，著者對於所有論文法而採取這相同的文法見解的作家，敬致謝意。至於受惠於 Jespersen 教授和他的 *Mordern English Grammar*（現代英文法）和 ***Philosophy of Grammar*** 的地方，凡用過這兩本書的人當然是有目共見。本書中有許多地方我都採取了他的見解和例句，雖則在一本作爲一般學校教本的書裏，關於術語方面，我卻不敢像他那樣地前進。比方，八大詞類已設法完全加以保留。最要者，關於這件似乎旁門左道的冒險，我從他以及 Ferdinand Brunot 教授和 Henri Frei 先生那裏得到勇氣不少。還有許多開明的項目和實例，都應該對於 *Concise Oxford Dictionary*（簡明牛津字典）和 ***Modern English Usage***（現代英語慣用法）的著者致謝。

林語堂序於上海

一九三〇年五月廿六日

目　次

譯序……(3)
著者序……(5)

第一章　表現法的科學

1.10. 說什麼以及怎樣說 …… 1
1.11. 一切文法的形式和結構是表達意念的工具 …… 2
1.20. 【文法便是表現法的科學】…… 3
1.30. 中英文意念及表現法的不同 …… 4
1.31. 中英文意念本身的不同…… 4
1.32. 英文法應教人學習英國人的思想方法和表現法 …… 5
1.40. 【文法事實的形式分類法及意念分類法】…… 6
1.41. 編輯大綱…… 8
1.42. 活的文法…… 9

第二章　詞類及其作用的轉變

2.10. 【八大詞類】…… 10
2.11. 界說 …… 10
(練習一) …… 13
2.12. 文法作用…… 13
2.13. 中英文之比較 …… 14
2.14. 【作用的意味】 …… 15
2.15. 事物的意味 …… 16
2.16. 動作和品性的意味 …… 17
(練習二)…… 18
(練習三)…… 18
2.17. 情狀和方面的意味 …… 18
(練習四)…… 20
2.18. 介詞力量的意味…… 20
(練習五)…… 22
2.20. 【作用的轉變】 …… 22
2.21. 名詞當形容詞 …… 23

2.22. 名詞變形容詞 …… 25
(練習六) …… 25
2.23. 名詞當動詞 …… 25
2.30. 動詞當名詞 …… 26
(練習七) …… 27
(練習八) …… 27
2.31. 動詞變名詞 …… 28
2.32. 成對的名詞和動詞 …… 28
(練習九) …… 29
2.33. 動詞當形容詞——'分詞' …… 30
(練習十) …… 32
2.34. 分詞的拼法 …… 32
2.35. 動詞變形容詞 …… 34
2.40. 形容詞變名詞 …… 34
(練習十一) …… 35
2.41. The Poor, the Dead 等 …… 35
2.42. 形容詞變副詞: 詞尾 -ly …… 37
(練習十二) …… 38
2.43. Knowingly, Decidedly 等 …… 38
2.50. 介詞當形容詞 …… 39
2.51. 副詞和介詞當名詞 …… 40
2.52. 副詞·介詞·連詞 …… 40
2.60. 【幾個有趣的複合詞】 …… 41

第三章 句的語氣

3.10. 【句是什麼?】 …… 44
3.11. 有限式動詞的重要 …… 46
(練習十三) …… 46
3.20. 【句·短語·子句】 主語·述語·本動詞 …… 47
(練習十四) …… 47
3.21. 直接賓語和間接賓語 …… 47
3.22. 句法: 修飾語和連詞 …… 48
(練習十五) …… 48
3.23. 短語和子句 …… 49
3.30. 【句的語氣】 …… 50
3.31. 中英文之比較: 中文的助詞 …… 50
3.40. 【肯定】 I Do, I Am …… 51

(練習十六)…… 52
3.41. Can, Will, Have, Must 等 …… 52
3.42. 肯定回答…… 53
(練習十七)…… 53
3.43. 限制斷言…… 53
(練習十八)…… 54
3.44. 强調斷言…… 54
(練習十九)…… 56
3.45. 英文默說法和雙重否定詞 …… 56
3.46. 反問肯定…… 57
3.50. 【否定】 …… 58
(練習二十)…… 59
3.51. Aren't, Isn't, Mustn't 等 …… 59
(練習二十一) …… 60
3.52. No ～, Not a ～, Not Any ～, Nothing 等…… 61
(練習二十二) …… 61
3.53. Few, a Few, Little, a Little …… 62
3.54. 否定回答中的 No …… 62
3.55. 强調否定…… 63
(練習二十三) …… 64
3.56. "I Ain't Got Nothing" …… 64
3.57. 條件否定…… 65
(練習二十四) …… 66
3.60. 【疑問】 …… 66
3.61. Will You?, Won't You?…… 67
(練習二十五) …… 67
3.62. 過節問句…… 68
(練習二十六) …… 68
3.63. 聲調疑問句以及疑問聲調 …… 69
3.64. 間接問句和名詞子句…… 70
(練習二十七) …… 71
3.70. 【可能語氣】…… 71
3.71. 命令・請求・提議等等…… 72
(練習二十八) …… 73
3.72. Shall 和 Will …… 73
(練習二十九) …… 75
3.73. 希望和願望 …… 75
(練習三十)…… 76

3.74. 准許・禁止・義務等 …… 76
(練習三十一) …… 78
3.75. 推測和可能 …… 78
(練習三十二) …… 79
3.76. 純粹假設: Would, Should, Could, Might …… 79
3.77. 虛擬子句 …… 81
(練習三十三) …… 82
3.80. 【感情吐露】 …… 83
3.81. 嘗詞 …… 84

第四章 人與事物及其性

4.10. 事物的種類 …… 87
4.20. 【程序和結果】 …… 88
4.21. 指結果的'程序詞' …… 88
(練習三十四) …… 89
4.30. 【抽象名詞和具體名詞】 …… 90
4.31. 具體意義的抽象詞 …… 92
4.32. A Piece of Folly, a Fit of Anger 等 …… 93
(練習三十五) …… 93
4.40. 【公名和專名】 …… 93
4.41. 專名和大寫字母 …… 95
4.50. 【集合詞和質詞】 集合詞或'羣名' …… 96
4.51. 質詞 …… 96
4.60. 【人・物・人格化】 人和物 …… 97
4.61. Who, Which 與 That …… 98
(練習三十六) …… 98
4.62. Whose 與 of Which …… 99
(練習三十七) …… 99
4.63. 人格化 …… 100
(練習三十八) …… 101
4.70. 【Sex 和 Gender 的區別】 …… 102
4.71. 陽性・陰性・通性・中性 …… 103
4.72. 兩性的人和動物 …… 104

第五章 數和量

5.10. 數和量的意念 …… 105
(練習三十九) …… 106

5.11. 質詞: Grains of Sand, Bushels of Rice 等 …… 106
(練習四十)…… 108
5.12. 抽象名詞: Piece of Luck …… 108
(練習四十一) …… 108
5.20. 【單數和複數】 複數詞尾: -s 和 -es …… 108
5.21. Boys, Ladies, Pianos, Potatoes …… 111
5.22. 不規則複數: Fish, Dozen 和 Alumni …… 112
5.23. 集合詞: Government Have 和 Government Has …… 114
(練習四十二) …… 115
5.24. 心理意向: Three Weeks is Heaps of Time …… 115
5.25. 一般單數…… 116
(練習四十三) …… 117
5.26. 自然複數…… 117
5.27. 歧義複數…… 119
5.28. 幾個特別例子: Sons-in-law, the Miss Rogers 等 …… 120
5.30. 【數詞】 數詞・分數・倍數 …… 121
5.31. 不定數 …… 124
5.40. 【數的矛盾】…… 126
5.41. 動詞的數…… 128

第六章　重量・價值・體積・距離・形狀・位置

6.10. 英文的這些範疇和中文的不同…… 134
6.20. 重量的表現法 …… 134
6.50. 價值的表現法 …… 155
6.40. 體積和距離的表現法 …… 159
(練習四十四) …… 140
6.50. 形狀的表現法: 英文之不辨形狀 …… 140
6.60. 位置的表現法 …… 142
6.61. 介詞的特殊用法…… 144

第七章　代表法

7.10. 【代表法】 …… 146
7.20. 【人稱代名詞】 位和人稱 …… 147
7.21. Mine, Thine 等 …… 148
(練習四十五) …… 149
7.22. 謙卑・尊敬・親密等的影響 …… 150

7.23. 反身代名詞和交互代名詞 …… 152
(練習四十六) …… 154
7.24. 一般人稱: One, People 等 …… 154
(練習四十七) …… 155
7.30. 【人稱和位的矛盾】 人稱的矛盾 …… 156
(練習四十八) …… 157
7.31. 位的矛盾: Who, Whom, Whoever, Whomever …… 158
(練習四十九) …… 160
7.40. 【事物代名詞】 …… 160
7.41. Some, Any, None …… 161
(練習五十) …… 162
7.42. What …… 162
7.43. One, Thing, Affair, Something 等 …… 162
(練習五十一) …… 164
7.44. That …… 164
(練習五十二) …… 165
7.45. It …… 165
(練習五十三) …… 167
7.50. 【暗比】 暗比以及比喻的表現法 …… 168
7.60. 【間接陳述】 直接陳述和間接陳述 …… 172
(練習五十四) …… 174
7.61. 副句的時制 …… 174
(練習五十五) …… 175
7.70. 【省略文的表現法】 …… 175
(練習五十六) …… 177

第八章 指定法

8.10. 代表法·指定法·修飾法 …… 181
8.11. 代名詞的種類 …… 182
8.20. 【區別】 This, That, Same, Other …… 183
(練習五十七) …… 184
8.30. 領位代名詞和領位名詞 …… 185
8.40. 【同位】 同位和示例 …… 187
(練習五十八) …… 188
8.50. 【順序】 序數詞 …… 188
(練習五十九) …… 190
8.60. 【更迭和配分】 Either, Each 等 …… 190

(練習六十)…… 191
8.70 【確定和不定】 A, An 和 The …… 191
(練習六十一) …… 193
8.71. 【一般化】 *A* Cat, *The* Cat, Cats …… 194
(練習六十二) …… 194
8.72. A 和 The 的特別用法 …… 195
(練習六十三) …… 197
8.73. A 和 The 的省略 …… 197
(練習六十四) …… 200
8.80. 【泛指法】 Whatever, Whoever 等 …… 201
(練習六十五) …… 202

第九章　修飾法

9.10. 【修飾法】 修飾法的重要 …… 203
9.11. 詞類和詞級 …… 205
9.20. 【修飾語和被修飾語的關係】 …… 206
(練習六十六) …… 209
9.21. 連字號的應用及省略 …… 210
9.22. 【修飾語之間的關係】 …… 212
9.23. 對等修飾語 …… 213
(練習六十七) …… 216
9.24. 附屬修飾語 …… 216
(練習六十八) …… 219
9.25. 【換級】 …… 220
(練習六十九) …… 221
9.26. 變形的短語當修飾語用 …… 224
(練習七十) …… 226
9.27. 名詞和動詞當修飾語用 …… 227
9.30. 【短語修飾語和子句修飾語】 …… 229
9.31. 【無限式短語當修飾語用】 …… 230
(練習七十一) …… 231
(練習七十二) …… 232
(練習七十三) …… 232
(練習七十四) …… 233
9.32. 分離無限式及其他 …… 233
(練習七十五) …… 235
9.33. Need to, Dare to …… 235

(練習七十六) …… 236
9.40. 【分詞短語】分詞短語當修飾語用 …… 237
練習七十七) …… 239
9.41. 不連結的分詞 …… 240
(練習七十八) …… 241
9.42. 獨立分詞短語 …… 241
9.50. 【介詞短語】…… 243
(練習七十九) …… 243
9.51. 介詞使文句簡潔 …… 244
(練習八十) …… 244
9.52. 句末的介詞 …… 244
9.53. But, Than …… 245
9.54. 英文介詞的幾種特別用法 …… 246
(練習八十一) …… 247
9.60. 【關係子句】…… 248
9.61. That作闡明的關係代名詞用 …… 248
9.62. Which作評論的關係代名詞用 …… 250
(練習八十二) …… 251
9.63. 修飾陳述句的 Which …… 251
9.64. In Which, from Which 等 …… 252
(練習八十三) …… 253
9.65. Which ～ It, Which ～ Them 等 …… 253
9.66. That ～ to, That ～ for 等 …… 253
9.67. 代替 in Which, for Which 等用的 That …… 254
9.68. 省去 That 的用法 …… 254
9.691. As 當關係代名詞用 …… 255
9.692. But 當關係代名詞用 …… 256
9.70. 關係副詞 When, Where, Why …… 256
9.71. When Called, When Resting …… 258
9.80. 【短語修飾語和子句修飾語的總括】…… 258
9.81. 修飾語在名詞之後的位置 …… 259
(練習八十四) …… 260
9.82. 短語修飾語和子句修飾語之經濟 …… 261
9.83. 名詞短語 …… 262
9.84. 短語的接合 …… 262
(練習八十五) …… 263

9.90. 【補足語當修飾語用】 述語補足語…… 263
（練習八十六）…… 264
9.91. "I Made Him Go"…… 264

第十章 比較和等級

10.10 【比較的等級】 它們相對的性質 …… 266
10.11. '比較的三級'…… 267
10.12. More Better, Next Best 等…… 269
10.13. 上等·平等·下等…… 270
（練習八十七）…… 271
10.14. 含蓄比較…… 271
10.15. 不可比較的詞兒…… 272
10.16. 弱變的最高級詞…… 273
10.20. 【有標準的比較】…… 275
（練習八十八）…… 278
10.30. 【差別的等級】 …… 279
10.31. 無定限的等級 …… 280
（練習八十九）…… 283
（練習九十）…… 284
10.32. 【界限】 …… 285
10.33. 累積等級…… 287
（練習九十一）…… 288
10.40. 【選擇和比較】 Had Better 和 Would Rather …… 289
10.50. 【比較和位的關係】…… 290
（練習九十二）…… 291

第十一章 動作的各方面

11.01. 【動詞之研究】 …… 293
11.02. 方面是什麼?…… 294
11.03. 英文的動詞方面…… 295
11.10. 【動作和情況】 …… 296
11.11. 存在和行爲 …… 298
11.20. 【外動詞和內動詞】…… 299
11.21. 內動詞和介詞 …… 302
11.22. 內動詞當外動詞用 …… 305
11.30. 【主動和被動】 '態'之名稱的解釋…… 309

11.51. 被動態的構成 …… 309
(練習九十三) …… 310
11.52. 被動態的用法 …… 310
(練習九十四) …… 311
11.53. 主動名詞和被動名詞 …… 311
11.54. 主動形容詞和被動形容詞 …… 312
11.55. 僞主動態 …… 314
11.40. 【完成動作和未完動作】 …… 315
11.41. 現在完了和時間副詞 …… 316
(練習九十五) …… 317
11.42. 完了的用法 …… 317
(練習九十六) …… 321
11.43. 未完成: 進行式的用法 …… 321
(練習九十七) …… 322
11.44. 分詞和終結方面 …… 322
(練習九十八) …… 323
11.50. 【開始·繼續·終止】 …… 324
11.60. 【長久和暫時】 瞬時和期間 …… 325
11.61. 暫時動詞和長久動詞 …… 326
11.62. 介詞的持續性 …… 328
11.70. 【習慣動作】 …… 329
1.80. 【試驗動作】 …… 351
11.90. 【各種次要的方面】 役使·重複·反身·交互 …… 331

第十二章 主語和賓語(外射動作)

12.10. 【主語和主動者】 …… 333
12.11. 賓語和受影響者 …… 334
12.12. 文法主語和文法賓語 …… 334
12.20. 【主語的種類】 …… 336
12.21. It 作主語用 …… 337
12.22. There Is …… 338
12.30. 【外射動作和賓語】 外射動作 …… 340
12.31. 直接賓語和間接賓語 …… 340
(練習九十九) …… 342
12.40. 【被動主語】 被動態動詞帶賓語 …… 342
(練習一百) …… 343

12.41. 被動的內動詞 …… 343
(練習一百零一) …… 344
12.50. 【非人稱主語】 …… 344

第十三章　動作時間

13.10. 【時間表】 現在·過去·未來 …… 346
13.20. 【現在】 現在是什麼? …… 347
13.21. 習慣動作和永遠眞理 …… 348
13.30 【未來】 未來的表現法 …… 349
13.31. Shall 和 Will …… 349
(練習一百零二) …… 351
13.32. 中文的'將'和'要' …… 352
13.33. May 和 Is to …… 353
(練習一百零三) …… 353
13.34. 代未來的現在式 …… 354
13.40. 【過去】 過去的動作是事實 …… 354
13.41. 過去的用法 …… 355
13.42. 形象化過去: '戲劇式現在' …… 356
13.43. 副句的時制 …… 357
13.50. 【不規則動詞】 …… 357
13.60. 【助動詞】 Might, Could, Would, Should 和 Ought …… 365
(練習一百零四) …… 367
13.61. 用助動詞的過去表現法 …… 368
(練習一百零五) …… 368
13.62. 代助動詞的變用詞 …… 369
(練習一百零六) …… 370
13.70. 【表時間的連詞】 …… 370
(練習一百零七) …… 372
13.80. 【時間副詞】 …… 373
(練習一百零八) …… 374
13.90. 【名詞中的時間】 …… 374

第十四章　事實和想像

14.10. 【動詞的語氣】 跟句的語氣有密切的關係 …… 375
14.11. 事實和想像 …… 375
14.12. 主觀語氣和客觀語氣 …… 375

14.20. 【虛擬語氣】時制的變換 …… 376
(練習一百零九) …… 376
14.21. 【一般假設】If He Should have, If He Have …… 377
(練習一百一十) …… 379
14.22. 假設的各種程度 …… 379
(練習一百十一) …… 381
14.23. If I Was, If I Were …… 381
14.30. 【可能語氣】…… 382

第十五章 關 係

15.10. 連詞和邏輯關係 …… 385
15.20. 【單句·複句·包孕句】…… 385
15.30. 【平列子句和附屬子句】…… 388
15.40. 【邏輯關係】…… 389
15.41. 聯合 …… 390
15.42. 對立 …… 390
15.43. 抉擇和替代 …… 392
15.44. 包括和除外 …… 393
15.45. 條件和讓步 …… 394
(練習一百十二) …… 394
15.46. 原因和結果 …… 395
15.47. 動機和目的 …… 396
15.48. 比較和一致 …… 397
15.49. 時間和邏輯關係 …… 398
15.50. 【疑問副詞和疑問代名詞】…… 400
15.60. 【標點法】邏輯標準和發音標準 …… 400
15.61. 點號 …… 401
15.62. 分號 …… 403
(練習一百十三) …… 404
15.63. 冒號 …… 404
15.64. 句號 …… 404
15.65. 感嘆號和問號 …… 405
15.661. 引號 …… 406
15.662. 省略號和連字號 …… 407
15.67 破折號和刪節號 …… 407
15.68. 圓括號和方括號 …… 409
15.70. 【疏散句和後括句】疏散句法和後括句法 …… 410

第十六章　表現法的經濟

16.10. 平易和經濟 …… 412
16.20. 【作用的變換】 …… 412
16.21. 子句變成短語 …… 413
16.22. 短語修飾語變成詞兒修飾語 …… 414
16.30. 【省略法】 輔助詞兒的省略 …… 415
16.31. 主要詞兒的省略 …… 415
16.32. 副句中的省略法 …… 216
16.33. And That …… 417
16.40. 【簡寫和縮寫】 縮寫 …… 417
16.41. 簡寫 …… 418
16.42. 單音節語 …… 418
16.50. 【表現法經濟的幾種特別用法】 格言 …… 420
16.60. 經濟和感情文字 …… 421
16.70. 經濟和商業 …… 421

形式文法概要 …… 422
索引一：項目部分 …… 431
索引二：詞語部分 …… 442

第一章 表現法的科學

1.10.* 【說什麽以及怎樣說】 諸君已經學過了三四年的英文，對于'詞類' (parts of speech) 以及詞兒† (words) 的形式 (forms) 和關係 (relations)，如單數和複數 (singular and plural)，主語和述語 (subject and predicate) 等等，大概都已懂得一些了。 現在我們要把這些不同的形式和關係作一番更普遍的研究，這就叫做英文法的研究。

你們總該聽見人家說過，文法這門功課是艱深而枯燥的吧，其實不然。 假如學習得不得法，假如單去記那些規則和界說 (rules and definitions)，那當然是艱深而枯燥的了。 但假如把那許多活的成語 (idioms) 和表現式 (forms of expressions) 拿來研究，再看看我們的一個個'觀念' (idea)，在英國人是如何地表達，這樣決不會覺得艱深或乏味了。 學習英國人這種表達觀念的方法，然後再和我們中國人的方法比較比較，這每每是有益而又非常有趣的一回事。

我們無論說什麽，總包括兩樣東西：(1) 說什麽；(2) 怎樣說。 前者叫做'意念' (**notions**)，後者叫做'意念的表現法' (**expression of the notions**)。 要知道，文法除非能把這些意念和表現法講給我們聽，那便毫無意思了。 所以我們在這本書里學習

---

*1.10. 表明第一章第一段第〇節.

†中文的'字'和英文的 word 不同，因爲 word 是言語中間一個一個觀念的表示，不像中文'字'往往是零落破碎的，不能一個個都表示整個的觀念，所以譯者以爲 word 譯爲'詞'比較來得妥當.

英文法時，要時常問自己：倘使我們有了這麼一個意念，應該怎樣把它表達出來？

1.11.* 要知道，一切文法的形式和結構 (constructions)，都不過是表達意念的工具而已。倘使我們有了'外面正在下雨'的這一個觀念，用中文表達出來是說'下雨了'或'天下雨了'，用英文便是說 It rains. It rains 和'下雨了'或'天下雨了'雖然說法不同，但意思卻完全一樣。

再仔細一看，又可看出這英文的表現法里有一個主語"it"〔它〕，而中文里沒有。再，rain〔下雨〕後加 s (讀 [z])，這在中文里又是尋不出的。但，其實這種 it 和 -s 的結構，不過是一種表達觀念或意念的工具吧了。試看下列各句，便知英文要表達'下雨'的這個概念，有種種不同的文法形式。

It rains.	下雨了.
Does it rain?	下雨了嗎?
Is it raining?	正在下雨嗎?
It is going to rain.	要下雨了.
Has it rained?	下過了雨嗎?
Did it rain (yesterday)?	(昨天)下雨的嗎?

由此可見 Is it ～ing? / It is going to ～ / Has it ～ed? / Did it ～? 並不是徒具形式的無用的變化，而是表達意念的工具。再看 He strikes me / I strike him 這兩句 (sentences)，中文只要說'他打我'，'我打他'就對了。英文要表明作爲動詞 strike 的賓語 (object) 的這兩個人，一個用 me，一個用 him；但中文只消把賓語放在動詞 (verb) 的後面，這個觀念也就表達得一樣明白了。所以中文的這種'詞序' (word-order) 和英文中

*1.11. 表明第一章第一段第一節；其餘類推.

I—me, he—him 的區別，在文法上，它們的價值或用處正是相同的。中文有時用'把'字來表達這種'賓語意念'(object-notion)，如'把門推開','把人打死','把錢搶走'(*push* open the door / *kill* the man / *rob* his money)。因此，以'把'字介紹賓語可算是中文里表達賓語意念的一種文法工具。

1.20. 〔文法便是表現法的科學〕上面我們已經說過，兩種文字可以用不同的文法工具，來表達一個相同的意念或觀念。所以學一種外國語的文法，應該很有趣味，因爲它教我們比較這兩種文字，並幫助我們以正確的外國方法表達我們的觀念。譬如以'數'(Number)的一類意念來說，它里面就含有'不定數'(indefinite number)的許多意念，如 *more than* sixty，或'六十多'，'六十餘'。有些學生往往弄錯，把它說成"sixty *more*,"而在英文里應該是 *over* sixty 或 sixty-*odd* 才對。舊式文法書里不教這個東西，因爲它們只喜歡搬弄單複數這一類的'形式'，如 girl—girl*s*; child—*children* 等等。其餘凡'詞形'(word-form)上沒有變化的，它們就一概不管了。舊文法書上又說什麼比較有三級(Three Degrees of Comparison)，如 hot—hot*ter*—hot*test*, early—early*ier*—early*iest*, 因爲詞形上有這三種變化。其實比較何止三級，簡直有千變萬化的等級，也有千變萬化的表現法，例如：

> less *hot* [不怎麼熱], not so very *hot* [不十分熱], rather *hot* [頗有點兒熱], just *hot* enough [熱得正好], too *hot* [太熱], *hot* enough to burn your fingers [熱得燙手], as *hot* as a furnace [熱得如火爐一般], so *hot* that you can hardly breathe [熱得透不過氣來]

這許多表現法，難道就不成爲英文法的一部分嗎？又如在'數'的意念里，中文有'成'(tenth)，英文有 percentage〔百分比〕：'八成五'在英文里便是 eighty-five per cent; 又，貨色打'八五

折'在英文里卻非說 fifteen per cent discount 不可. 如果這樣依一羣羣的意念學習下去,便馬上可以把主要的幾類觀念和關係 (relationships) 的一切英文表現法都學會了.*

這樣我們要研究那些舊文法書里所不載的許多東西,而且在研究 It rains / It rained / It has rained / It has been raining〔一逕下着雨〕這一類形式的變化時,切不可把它們當做空空洞洞的形式來背誦,必須當做給我們表現某一些觀念的工具才行.

1.30. 〖中英文意念及表現法的不同〗 各國語文中各有它表現意念的方法,那個對那個不對,這很難說. 總之,凡是能把觀念表達得清楚恰當的表現法,都是對的. It rains 用一個假主語,在英文里固然是對的,然而'下雨了'不用主語,在中文里又何嘗不對呢. 所以在意念和表現法上,中英文都不相同. 例如'孟子'里'白馬之白'的'白'字,又可當形容詞 (adjective),又可當名詞 (noun),但英文卻非說 the *whiteness* of the *white* horse 不可. 反之,'窮人','富人'在英文里只要說 the poor, the rich, 但中文里除'貧民','富戶'以外,還得說'貧者','富者'. 還有,'他怕'這句中文是一點兒也沒錯,然而在英文里就非加一個連接動詞,說 He *is* afraid 不可了. 這些都是在表現法上不同的地方.

1.31. 中英文不僅是表現法不同,有時連意念本身還有差別呢. 例如 I *should* think so 句中 should 所表達的一種模

* 我們當然不能把文字里所有的表現法都學得來,因爲這是辭典的一種工作. 文法書和辭典或成語書的不同,就是文法只討論表現法的格式(types)或種類,而辭典是講到個別的表現法的. 依照 Sweet 氏的說法,文法是論語文中的一般事實,而論學 (lexicology) 是論特別的事實的. (見 Henry Sweet 的 *Collected Papers*; Jespersen 所著 *Philosophy of Grammar* 頁 32 曾引此語.)

糊觀念，在中文里根本就沒有。要學這個表現法，首先要學習意念本身。這要推究于英文里'事實'(fact)和'想像'(fancy)的區別，爲要避免把 I think so 說得太確定，太像事實，所以才這樣說的。It is all right 和 It *would* be all right 中意念的區別也是如此，第二句說得比第一句婉轉，不十分確定。有許多學生從來不會運用這一類的表現法，因爲文法書從來就沒有把英文里這種事實和想像的區別教給他們過。

在另一方面，我們可以想到在英文里所找不出的中文意念。中文的'試驗動作'(tentative action)，如'打一打'，'洗一洗'用英文便難以表達，因爲英文里雖則偶爾也用 take a look〔看一看〕，have a taste〔嘗一嘗〕，但通常是沒有這種意念的。我們中國人的家族觀念很深，對於長幼，尊卑，男女之別，都極其認眞，例如'哥哥'，'弟弟'；'表兄'，'堂姊'；'姪兒'，'外甥'；'姑母'，'姨母'，'舅母'；'伯父'，'叔父'，'舅舅'，'姑丈'，這一套，在英文里也無法表明，因爲英國人並不把他們分得這樣剔透清楚，只囫圇吞棗地用 brothers, cousins, nephews, aunts, uncles 稱呼吧了。在英文里'妻兄'，'妻弟'，'夫兄'，'夫弟'都一律稱爲 brothers-in-law，有時直截了當，只用 my wife's brother, her husband's brother，根本不去攀談什麼親眷本家。

1.32. 所以，英文法應該教人把英國人的思想方法和表現法學來才對。我們應該學會說：

the *whiteness* of a *white* horse.. ...(非: the white of white horse)
over sixty .....(非: sixty more)
in three minutes.....(非: three minutes after 或 more)
the rich .....(不可老說: rich people)
the poor .....(不可老說: poor people)
He *is* afraid.....(非: He afraid)

He *becomes* tired.....(非: He tired)
I *should* think so.....(不可老說: I think so.)
It *would* be all right.....(不可老說: It is all right.)

以及 It rains (非: "rain already") 等等. 我們研究英文法的目的,就在于學習英國人的這些思想方法和表現法.

1.40. 【文法事實的形式分類法及意念分類法】 要列舉文法事實,再從而研究它們,共有兩種方法. 一種是舊法子,就是把八大詞類 (Eight Parts of Speech *or* Word-Classes) 逐類研究,先是名詞,然後代名詞 (pronouns) 等等; 以及每個詞類在形式上是怎樣地變化,例如先學名詞陰陽性 (masculine and feminine genders) 的變化 (tiger—tigress) 或單複數的變化 (child—children, mouse—mice),然後是代名詞的位(case)的變化 (he—his—him) 或單複數的變化 (this—these; that—those); 那末再學形容詞或副詞的變化 (hot—hotter—hottest, early—earlier—earliest) 和動詞的變化 (I go; you go; he goes) 等等. 這種方法可以叫做 '文法事實的形式分類法' (**formal grouping** of the grammatical facts), 憑靠這種方法,我們大都只能學到形式上和意義上的變化. 這樣的看文法,是由外而內的:由外表而到涵義,由表現法而到內容.

還有一種比較好的看法,便是由內而外,從我們所要表達的意念出發而談到它的表現法,即由涵義而到外表. 這樣我們把所有表現法的文法工具,依照它們所表達的意念或觀念而分類,如 '數和量' (Number and Quantity), '重量和價值' (Weight and Value), '修飾法' (Modification), '比較和等級' (Comparison and Degree), '動作時間' (Time of Action), '事實和想像', '關係' (Relationships) 等等. 在每一分類之下,我

們研究這許多觀念在英文里是怎樣地表達出來. 凡是表達同一類的觀念的工具,無論是形容詞,副詞 (Adverbs), 代名詞,或連詞 (Conjunctions), 都放在一起. 所以, 在'時間' (Time) 的意念之下,我們把一切表達時間的方法都拿來研究,其中包括動詞的時制 (tenses) (如 come, came, shall come), 時間副詞 (如 always, never, soon, three times a week) 以及關于時間的連詞 (如 until, since, as soon as) 等等. 在'修飾法'的意念之下,我們把所有各種的'修飾語' (modifiers) 同時舉出,無論是形容詞 (*good* work), 副詞 (*well* done), 名詞 (an *inch* wide), 無限式 (Infinitives) (nothing *to do*), 分詞 (Participles) (*boiling* water), 或'詞羣' (word-groups) (*Sunday afternoon* concert). 這一種可以叫做'意念分類法' (**notional grouping**), 各章依照'意念羣' (**notional groups**) 或'意念範疇' (**notional categories**) 加以排列.

同時我們也研究各種詞類的轉變,不過只以和這些轉變所幫助表達的意念有關聯的爲限. 比方說, 我們學習 He has returned〔他已經回來了〕這種表現法時, 並不是把它當做舊文法書里所謂'直說法,現在完了,第三身,單數' (indicative mood, present perfect, third person singular), 而是當做表達'情況' (Condition) 的一種方式, 並且和表明'動作' (Action) 的 He returned〔他回來了〕相對照. He has returned 就和 He is at home now〔他此刻在家里〕是一個意思, 而 He returned 所表達的意念卻完全不同了, 它是表達'他動身回來了'或'他回轉來了' (He took the journey home / 或 He turned back) 這麼一個意念的. 照這個樣子, 我們要處處學習怎樣去運用我們所學過的文法形式.

1.41. 編輯大綱】 本書應用這第二個新方法，就是依意念分類的法子。 我們先學八大詞類，然後看看詞兒作用的轉變（如名詞當形容詞，形容詞當名詞等等）。 這個給我們一個詞類和詞形的關係的概念，使我們熟悉各種形式上的接尾 (formal endings) 如 -cy, -ness, -ly (secrecy, kindness, suddenly) (第二章)。 以後我們學習句子的各種'語氣' (Moods)，如表明'陳述' (statements) 或'否認' (denials)，'發問'，'命令'，'懷疑'及'希望'等的各種方法 (第三章)。 其次在'事物' (Things) 的概念項下，我們學習英文里人和事物的區別，抽象和具體的東西 (abstract and concrete things)，'質詞' (mass-words)，人格化 (personification) 和性 (genders) 的區別 (第四章)。 再下去研究英文的'數'和'量'的意念 (much, many, seven per cent)，'重量'和'價值'的意念 (pound, shilling)，'距離' (Distance) 的意念 (yard, mile, within call) 以及'體積'，'形狀'和'位置' (Size, Shape and Position) (第五，六兩章)。 然後在'代表法' (Representation) (第七章) 項下，我們學習詞兒怎樣代替別的詞兒 (大都論述代名詞，不過也包括其他代表的方法，如以 I told him *to* 替代 I told him *to take the cover off*)。這以後便輪到指定事物的表現法，即'指定法' (Determination)，如 which one?, the one you saw, second, either . . . or, any old thing 等 (第八章)。 在第九章'修飾法'里所講的，是以詞兒描述或修飾別的詞兒的種種方法，以及'修飾語'與'被修飾語' (the modified) 之間的關係。 在下一章 (第十章) 我們研究'比較'和'等級'的各種表現法。 第十一章討論'動作'的許多觀念，首先就是所謂'動作方面' (Aspects of Action) 的一些意念部門 (如 *begin to* read, *keep on* read*ing*, *make*

one read 等). 英文動詞要能夠用得妥當，必須先把這些觀念弄清楚. 這以後的一章是講'外射動作' (Transitive Action) (第十二章：如主語和賓語的關係，主動態和被動態的用法，賓語的動作等)，下一章講'動作時間' (第十三章：如現在，過去，未來，隨後，同時等). 第十四章專講'事實'和'想像' (動詞的語氣) 的區別，這是依我們中國人的思想法看來覺得很奇特的. 第十五章講的是表明'關係'的各種方法 (大半論連詞及介詞，如since, because, instead of, including, unless, in accordance with, in order that). 在這一章里，我們也討論那些表明這種種關係的'標點符號' (Punctuation Marks) 的使用法. 末了一章 (第十六章) 講'表現法的經濟' (Economy of Expression)，我們把一切使表現法簡單化的方法搜集在一起，這使我們造句可以造得更平易，自然，而通馴 (idiomatic).

1.42. 【活的文法】 依照這個研究計劃，我們可以把一切在文法書里常見的材料都搜羅殆盡，但是還要更進一步，時常和英國人的思想和表現法取得密切的聯絡. 英文法這樣才得有生氣，我們讀了也滿有意思了. 在每一章的意念綱領之下，我們可以從容不迫地把一切和文法有關的英文思想法及表現法都瞭混熟了，那末才漸漸地可以學會英國人的思想方法來表達我們的意思，就好像他們用他們的本國語說出來的一樣.

第二章　詞類及其作用的轉變

2.10. 【八大詞類】 我們可以看詞兒在句中有何種'文法作用'(grammatical function)——卽它在句中盡了何種職務，而把所有的詞兒一類一類地分開。

(1) 名　詞 (*Nouns*)…… …dog, book, table, school, John, China, water, sound, work, idea, kindness, strength, anger, danger, order.
(2) 代名詞 (*Pronouns*)……I, you, he, her, who, this, those, which.
(3) 動　詞 (*Verbs*)……cut, strike, see, think, breathe, feel, know, grow, be, become, must, will, dare.
(4) 形容詞 (*Adjectives*)……good, bad, hot, red, lazy, kind, strong, angry, dangerous, orderly.
(5) 副　詞 (*Adverbs*)……how, when, why, where well, poorly, now, never, soon, suddenly, here, already.
(6) 介　詞 (*Prepositions*)‥in, out, above, under, against, toward, with, without, at, during, by.
(7) 連　詞 (*Conjunctions*)‥and, or, because, although, unless, since, both . . . and, if, then, while.
(8) 歎　詞 (*Exclamations*)‥oh! what! ah! there! look! heavens! fire! help! my purse! what a liar!

上列就是詞兒在文法上的八種類，卽所謂'八大詞類' (Eight Parts of Speech). 一個詞類就是詞兒之一種的意思. 詞兒之有種類，正如動植物之有種類一般. 例如 dog, book, China 屬于一類，cut, strike, breathe 屬于另一類，這個正和我們把兎，鼠，和松鼠放在一類，而把狐，狗，和狼放在另一類是同樣的情形.

2.11. 【界說】 '界說'的用處，在于幫助我們決定什麽是什麽，什麽便不是. 八大詞類的界說，也就是幫助我們決定一個詞兒是屬于那一類的. 這樣的界說本來不容易定，而且界說

這東西，正如文法規則一樣，往往有疏漏不正確的地方.* 不過爲實用起見，我們覺得詞兒有八類，下列八個界說是通常適用的. 我們要決定一個詞兒之屬于那一類，最好先看看它的文法作用，卽它在句中所擔任的職務.

(1) 名詞是事物的名稱.——凡物有有形的和無形的 (如 table, sound, grammar)；有有生物和無生物 (如 man, dog, pencil). 事或者是一種動作或事件 (如 a fall, a flood, a dinner, a meeting)，或者是一種情況或不可見的品性 (如 kindness, beauty, cunning, danger, poverty).

(2) 代名詞是代替名詞的.——例如在 John speaks to *his* mother, but *she* does not hear *him* 一句中，以 his, him 代 John, 以 she 代 his mother. 又如在 Take this book, don't take *that* 中，that 便是代替 that book 的一個代名詞.

(3) 動詞是敍述人或事物的動作的. (但 is, can, must, will, have 等詞兒也叫做動詞.)——所有動詞的界說，沒有一個是完善的. 通常動詞是句中主要的詞兒，句子有了它才有意思，才有生氣. 我們如只說 a good man, 這意思是死的，因爲對于'這個好人'沒有說出個所以然來；但如說 *I see* a good man, 或 The man *is* good, 加入了動詞 see 或 is, 這句子便立刻有了生氣了.

(4) 形容詞修飾名詞.——形容詞是說人或事物是個'什麼樣子'. 例如 a *sick* man 和 The man is *sick*, 這兩個 sick 都是修飾 man 的，說這'人'是個什麼樣子.

---

* 天才的語言學家 Edward Sapir 曾經說過: "All grammatical rules leak." ('一切的文法規則都有漏洞.')

(5) 副詞修飾動詞，形容詞，或其他副詞。——副詞通常是說一件事情是如何，或何時，或何地，或爲何做的。所以在 He is running *fast* / He is running *now* / He is running *there* 等句中，副詞 fast, now, there 是修飾動詞 is running 的。又如在 *very* good, *very* soon 中，副詞 very 是修飾形容詞 good 和副詞 soon 的。

(6) 介詞與其後的名詞合成介詞短語 (prepositional phrase)，以修飾別的詞兒。介詞本身則常表明其後的名詞與別的詞兒的某種關係。——凡是介詞，它後面必定附有一個名詞或'代用名詞'*(noun-equivalent)，而且兩者必合成一個介詞短語。例如在 He is *in the house* 一句中，in the house 便是介詞短語，in 是介詞，它表明'人'與'屋'的關係，這個 in the house 當形容詞用，是修飾主語 he 的。但在 He is *in* (=in the house) 一句中，這 in 便不是介詞而是形容詞了，因爲它沒有介詞的作用。又如 He talks *like mad* (=like a mad man) 一句中，介詞短語 like mad 當副詞用，是修飾動詞 talks 的。一切的介詞短語，不是當形容詞短語 (adjective phrase) 用，便是當副詞短語 (adverbial phrase) 用。

(7) 連詞是連接詞兒或詞羣的。——例如 he *and* I, this *or* that, 這 and 和 or 都是連詞，所連接的是代名詞。又如在 You may came this way *or* that way / You may go *or* you may stay / I will not come *until* you go away 等句中，這 or 和 until 都是連接詞羣的。

---

* '代用名詞' 包括 '代名詞', '名詞短語', '名詞子句' (noun clause) 等而言。

(8) 歎詞 (exclamations, 或稱 interjections) 是用以吐露感情的詞兒.——凡喜，怒，哀，樂，驚怖，興奮等情緒，都可用歎詞表出. He a gentleman! (意卽'他那里是個君子!') 和 Fire! fire! 等，正和 oh! ah! what! 一樣，都是歎詞.

【練習一】 (1) 舉出適當的形容詞來描述 a student, a lesson, a dress, eyes, song, food, face, 如 a lazy student 等等. 看誰能舉出最好的形容詞.

(2) 舉出幾個動詞來表明下列的人或物所做的是何事: child, mother, teacher, student, dog, cat, ship, water, machine, lamp.

(3) 用動詞表明你們早上喫早飯前，中飯後，放學回去，晚飯後以及睡覺以前所做的是什麼事.

(4) 將下列副詞放在簡短無訛的句子里，並說明它們所修飾的是什麼: now, quickly, never, always, already, yet, slowly, carefully, suddenly.

(5) 用下列介詞短語造句，並表明它們所修飾的是什麼: 還是當形容詞，還是當副詞用?

a. in the garden
b. into the water
c. at once
d. before long
e. for ever
f. at sunrise
g. near the desk
h. behind the wall
i. for this purpose
j. in what way?
k. for this reason
l. along the coast
m. outside the school
n. after the class
o. during dinner
p. at school
q. under the bed
r. on the tree
s. at the beginning
t. to the end
u. by no means
v. in a hurry

2.12. 【文法作用】 上面已經說過，文法作用就是詞兒在句中所盡的職務. 所以一個詞兒之屬于那一詞類要看它在句中有何種文法作用而後才能決定. 同是一個詞兒，在不同的時期，當然可以有幾種不同的作用，正如父親也可以當家庭醫師，或者妻子也可以當書記的情形一樣. 如 sleep, before 和 back 在下列各句中個有各種不同的作用.

He *sleeps*. (當動詞)
He talks in his *sleep*. (當名詞)
He walked *before*. (當副詞)
He walked *before* me. (當介詞)
He had walked a mile *before* he came to the house. (當連詞)
At the *back* of the house. (當名詞)
Back parlour. *Back* pay [欠薪]. (當形容詞)
Stand *back*! (當副詞)
To *back* up a friend [做朋友的後盾]. (當動詞)

事實上，一個詞兒同時可以有兩種作用，例如 I bought a new hat *which* you saw this morning, 這 which 既當代名詞用，代替 hat, 同時又當連詞用，把 you saw this morning 和 hat 連接起來。

2.13. 【中英文之比較】 中文字大部分可作各種不同的作用而字形毫無變化。 如：

'天' 在 '青天' (*green* or *azure sky*)..... .....中當名 詞
„ „ '天資' (*natural gift*)..... „ „ 形容詞
„ „ '天堂' (*heavenly palace*) ..... „ „ „ „ „
„ „ '天災' (*natural calamities*)..... „ „ „ „ „
„ „ '天天' (*everyday*)..... „ „ 副 詞
„ „ '天啊!' (*Heavens!*) ..... „ „ 歎 詞
„ „ '(女子) 失其所天' (直譯 a woman *loses what she heavens*)..... „ „ 動 詞

至于從前稱皇帝是 '天子' (卽 '天之子', 直譯 Son of Heaven), 而對皇帝稱 '天顏' (Your Majesty's face), 那末這 '天顏' 的 '天' 字實在就是代替代名詞 '你的' (your)。 在這各種作用上, '天' 字本身毫無變化。 我們再看下面 '白' 字的用法:一

'白' 在 '白馬之白' (*the whiteness of a white horse*).....
.....中一個當形容詞,一個當名 詞
„ „ '自白其志' (*to explain one's mind*).....中當動 詞
„ „ '得大白於天下' (*to have made clear one's position before the public*)...中當動詞性形容詞 (verbal adjective)

'白' 在 '白晝見鬼' (*to see ghosts in broad daylight*).....中當形容詞
,, ,, '白受損失' (*to meet a loss without compensation*)...中當副 詞
,, ,, '白崇禧'* (*Po Chung-hsi*) .....中當專 名

有時候，中文詞兒卻也有形式上的變化，如：

'鬧 亂 子' (*making a scandal or creating a disturbance*) 的 '子' 字
'屋 子' (*house*) ..... ,, ,, ,,
'念 頭' (*idea*).....的 '頭' 字
'來頭(大)' ([*of a decent*] *origin*) ..... ,, ,, ,,
'小 孩 兒' (*kiddie*).....的 '兒' 字
'鳥 兒' (*birdie*)..... ,, ,, ,,

但是在英文里，通例詞形隨作用的轉變而起變化。 例如：

admire (動)——admir*ation* (名)——admir*able*, admir*ing* (形)——admirab*ly*, admiring*ly* (副)

所以我們學英文時，必須記得各種詞類的意味，然後詞形才不致弄錯，用詞才會妥當。

作 用 的 意 味

2.14. 【作用的意味】 任何人要不費力便說得出正確的英語，那末在文法作用的意味上有五點是必須學習的：(1) 事物的意味 (對名詞而言)，(2) 動作的意味 (對動詞而言)，(3) 品性的意味(對形容詞而言)，(4) 情狀與方面的意味(對副詞,形容詞而言)，(5) 介詞力量的意味 (對介詞而言)。 中文對于這五種文法上的區別，並不需要一種十分鮮明的感覺，因此這些感覺在中國學生還沒有訓練出來。 例如在中文法里，一個詞兒之爲動詞或形容詞,通常是沒有關係的,但是在英國人，則 He fears (動)

* 中文 '白' 可作 '姓氏'，正如英國人的有 White 一姓相仿.

和 He is afraid (形) 這兩句之間，可就顯得有分別了。所以，中國學生必先有和英國人相同的這種感覺，然後才可以把詞類弄得頭頭是道，應付裕如呢。下列各節所舉的實例，如勤加練習，便理會到名詞，動詞，形容詞，副詞和介詞的分別了。其餘三個詞類，代名詞，連詞和歎詞，都容易認識，和中文沒有多大的差別。這些弄明白了以後，對於所見所聽的任何詞兒，便容易認識它的詞類了。

2.15. 【事物的意味】凡具體的東西，如 table 或 chair，作爲名詞看待，這是中英文相同的。但是作爲名詞看待的動作 (actions)，品性 (invisible qualities) 和情況 (condition) 都有特別的形式，這對於我們中國人的心理好像很是希奇的。試將下列各句的意義細細揣摩，便知動作名詞和品性或情況名詞，正和別的名詞一樣用法：—

	動 作 名 詞
I love books.	I love *reading*.
Have you learnt this?	Have you learnt *swimming*?
The geography lesson is difficult.	*Breathing under water* is difficult.
A pocket-knife is useful.	*Letter-writing* is useful.
He stopped the car.	She stopped *singing*.
I teach grammar.	You teach *dancing*.
The boy slept during the class.	He slept also during the *meeting*.
Then he slept before seven o'clock.	Then he slept before *going to bed*.
He is like his father in his laziness.	This is like *playing with fire*.
You learn to punctuate.	You learn *punctuation*.
We compose sentences.	We learn *composition*.
He is promoted.	We heard about his *promotion*.
You were examined.	You passed the *examination*.

This is easy to prepare. This requires no *preparation*.
You must not be afraid to repeat your sentences. *Repetition* is good for you, but don't repeat mistakes.

品性和情況的名詞

He is poor, but he enjoys his *poverty*.
Lovers are blind, but never mind the *blindness* of the lovers, so long as love lasts.
He is a good man, but his *goodness* cannot help him to pay debts.
"*Goodness*" is such a variable term. According to the servant, a "good" master is one who gives five-dollar tips. A cat that catches mice is a "good" cat for men, but a very bad one for the mice.
His handwriting was so small. I was surprised at the *smallness* of his handwriting.
Cleanliness is as important in a cook as *beauty* in women.
You choose a race-horse for his *speed*, and a cart-horse for his *strength*.
Honesty is the best policy in business, but the worst in war and politics.

2.16. 【動作和品性的意味】 在英文里，動詞和形容詞的區別非常明顯。這就是 to do 和 to be 的不同，即'做什麽動作'以及'有什麽樣的品性'的不同了。

動作	品性
He studies hard.	He is diligent.
He works hard.	He is hard-working.
He looks handsome.	He is nice-looking.
He fears me.	He is afraid of me.
He likes to sleep.	He is sleepy.
He wakes up.	He is awake.
He grows up.	He is big.
He laughs	He is happy.
He enjoys.	He is pleased with it.
It rains.	It is rainy.
The sky clears.	The sky is clear.
Day breaks.	It is bright.

Sound frightens.	Sound is fearful.
Prisoner escapes.	Prisoner is free.
Master scolds.	Master is abusive.
Servant fears.	Servant is afraid.
Man recovers.	Man is well.
Something hurts.	It is painful.
Action offends.	It is offensive.

由此可見動詞中有運動或動作的一種意味，而形容詞中有品性的一種意味，雖則兩者可以表明一個相同的概念。

【練習二】 教師可仿照上例舉出含有動詞的句子，令學生答出含有意義相當的形容詞的句子. 注意在上列各句中的形容詞之前老是用動詞 is 或動詞 to be 的其他形式. Must, will, can 等之後必須加 be，然後才接形容詞. (如不用 to be，那末在述語中必須用 feel, become, grow, get 等其他的動詞，如 feel sorry, become poor.)

舉例:

You must take care.	You must *be* careful.
You have nothing to eat.	You must *be* (或 *feel*) hungry.
He has gone.	He has *been* away.
Don't work too hard.	Don't *be* too diligent.
I shall prepare everything.	I shall *be* (或 *get*) ready

【練習三】 下列形容詞之前的空格，試填以適當的詞兒:—

1. I shall go soon, or I shall soon —— away.
2. You must prepare, or you must —— ready.
3. Has he had many things to do, or has he —— busy?
4. You mustn't forget your things, or you mustn't —— forgetful.
5. He had done too much work, and he —— very tired.
6. Let us enjoy ourselves and —— happy.
7. Please —— more careful next time.
8. He has always —— late.
9. Learn to come in time, or learn to —— punctual.

2.17. 【情狀和方面的意味】 以副詞表明'情狀'(manner)的意味，這在中文里並不新奇。 中文表現法用的'然'字，和英文中的副詞作用簡直完全一樣。 所以中文有'茫然' (vaguely, in a lost state)，'孑然' (alone)，'漠然' (coldly)，'欣然' (glad,

gladly), '霍然' (suddenly), '寂然' (silently), '啞然' (with a roar of laughter), '悚然', '凜然' (with a feeling of awe), 等等. 但'方面' (aspect) 的意味在中文里頗是新奇: 還是到了白話文興起以後才用助詞 (particles) '上', '的' (或'地') 來表明的. 比方說男女兩性的不平等, 是在那幾點上呢? 我們可以說'男女體力上, 智力上, 法律上, 經濟上的不平等' (They are unequal physically, mentally, legally, and economically). 我們可以說某人'心邪形穢' (physically and spiritually unclean), 說某女子'秀外慧中' (attractive in appearance and intelligent in mind). 如果一個小孩的父親是一個大學者, 但是面貌醜陋得很, 而他的母親卻是一個愚蠢而姣美如洋囡囡的女子, 那末這小孩'在那一方面'像父親或者像母親, 那可就有天壤之別了. 他也許腦筋像父親, 而面貌像母親, 或者也許面貌像父親而腦筋像母親的呀. 所以副詞和副詞短語所解答的是'在那一點?', '關于那一點?', '在那一方面?' 這些問題, 這種方面意念 (aspect-notion) 非常重要, 因爲它可使我們的觀念更趨確切. (形容詞也可以表達這種方面意念.)

1. You want to be independent—how? *Financially or spiritually?*
2. In what respect are men and women unequal? *Physically, mentally, socially, legally,* or *economically?* Are they equal *in brains, in looks, in courage, in patience, in jealousy, in interest, in babies?*
3. The Chinese are superior to the English *in patience,* and the English are superior to the Chinese *in political organization.*
4. Po-liang is better than Chung-ing *in arithmetic,* but Chung-ing is better than Po-liang *in old Chinese.*
5. Teh-lin is the best boy *in studies* in this class, Fu-ch'u is best *in athletics,* and Kuo-fan is best *in character.*
6. There is *physical* courage, and there is *moral* courage, the courage to say what one believes.

7. A man who dare not say what he belives is a *moral* coward.
8. Chinese officials are great men *to their familics*, but criminals *to the nation*.
9. The student is *physically* weak, but *mentally* strong.
10. Miss B—— is desirable *as a friend*, but not *as a wife*.
11. Playing violin is good *as a pastime*, but not *as a profession*.

【練習四】 試以下列各表現法造句:—

in what respect?	spiritual progress
in what way better?	intellectual laziness
in many ways worse	(laziness in thinking)
in some way useful	kind in heart
pleasant as a friend	kind in manners
bodily strong	rich in wealth
financially independent	rich in knowledge
politically free	quick in thinking
economically equal	slow in action
legally right	good at mathematics
morally wrong	great at telling lies
good as a pastime	doubtful in character
useful as a servant	laughable in conduct
charming in appearance	great in ideas
attractive in style	pleasing in tone

當然囉,大半的副詞是表明情狀,時間和地方的。方面的副詞還不甚普通,不過當做一個文法意念,這在中文里是比較地新奇一點。

2.18. 【介詞力量 (Prepositional Force) 的意味】

Go *with him* ['wiðˌim].
Go *without him* [wi'ðautˌim].
Sing *for me* [fə mi:].
Sing *for money*.
Look *at her* ['lukˌətˌə:].
Listen *to me* [tə mi:].
Away *with it* ['wiðˌit].
Run *after him* ['rʌnˌ'ɑ:ftərˌim].
Walk *behind me*.
He comes *for his* [fərˌiz] *hat*.
He recites *without any* [wi'ðautˌ'eni] *mistake*.
She died *because of* [bi'kɔzˌəv] *love*.
He died *because of her* [əvˌə:].
Get away *from them* [frəm ðəm].
Fight *against them* [ə'geinst ðəm].
Shoot *at it* ['ʃu:tˌətˌit].

Go *across the street.*
Sit *near the fire.*
Lean *upon the chair.*
Stand *against the door.*
Walk *through the house.*
Look *through the key-hole.*
Say good-bye *before leaving.*
He talks *without thinking.*
I am tired *of repeating this.*
He scolded me *for no reason.*
I am opposed *to his* [tu‿iz] *coming.*
They parted *without saying good-bye.*
Are you afraid *of being found out?*
He could not come *on account of illness.*
I have not seen him *since that time.*
You will be punished *for doing this.*
We shall fight *against opium.*

在英文里，介詞在觀念上和後面的名詞嚴密結合，正如外動詞 (transitive verbs) 在觀念上和賓語嚴密結合的情形相似。

I *fear him* [ai 'fər‿im].
I am afraid *of him* [ai əm‿ə'freid‿ɔv‿im].
Fight them ['fait ðəm].
Fight *against them* ['fait‿ə'geinst ðəm].

Of him 應該讀成一個詞兒，him 的重音 (accent) 完全取消，與 fear him 相仿。（此種取消重音的讀法在發音學上叫做 weak form〔弱式〕。）我國學生往往把這種 him, them 讀得太清楚，太重，而且讀強式 (strong form) [him] 和 [ðem]。在文法上說起來，第一個 him 和 them 是動詞的賓語，第二個 him 和 them 是介詞的賓語。介詞'統攝' (govern) 賓語，一如外動詞之統攝賓語。如介詞之後是一個動詞或形容詞，那末就應該趕快把它變成一個名詞，如 without *saying* good-bye〔不辭而別〕，before *leaving*〔動身之前〕，by his *kindness*〔承他的美意〕。

(在 for ever [fə'revə], at once [ət‿'wʌns], before long, in short, from abroad [frəm‿ə'brɔ:d], by far, like mad 等短語中，ever, once 等詞兒有些文法學家把它們當做名詞。參看 §2.11 之 (6) 及 §2.50)。

【練習五】 下列各表現法的聲調須讀得正確，並以各表現法造句. "e" 欄各介詞後試填入名詞:—

(a) before him (降調)
against them
over them
through it
because of her
one of them
all of us
many of them
after you (*you* 讀時可加重音)

(b) during the class
all over the place
since that time
in this way
against my will
in a while
above all
without doubt
beyond any question

(c) before leaving
after reading
after seeing
without knowing
before beginning
after listening
through studying
by working hard
because of having
for being
in reading

(d) for ever
at once
before long
from outside
from above

(e) instead of ——
on account of ——
the news of ——
lack of ——
for fear of ——
followed by ——
the result of ——
the cause of ——
the idea of ——

作用的轉變

2.20. 【作用的轉變】 我們已經明白，英文的詞兒的作用一有轉變，詞形往往卽發生變化 (§ 2.13)，如 bad〔惡〕，bad*ly*〔惡; 頗〕，bad*ness*〔惡，不良〕，或 admire〔歎賞〕，admir*ation*〔歎賞〕，admir*ingly*〔嘖嘖稱美〕。 我國學生對于這個旣然生疏，那末就該學習如何以及何時有這些變化。 當然有時候，也可以作用雖轉變而詞形正如中文一般地無須變得的，如 He *sleeps*

和 He talks in his *sleep*, 倘使用 in his sleeping, 反而不妥了.

2.21. 【名詞當形容詞】* 名詞可當形容詞用而詞形無任何變化, 這種情形極其普遍, 簡直出乎我們的體察以外. 在這一點, 英文與中文極其相似. 細讀下列各詞兒:—

stone wall
cannon ball
air castle
orange juice
straw hat
cloth cover
book-case
silk handkerchief
country road
dog Latin [不正確]
horse-laugh [粗鄙]
mouse-trap
fly-paper
middle-school student
college president
Shanghai paper
Newfoundland dog
West Lake Exhibition
Chen brothers [陳氏兄弟]
club fee
journey expenses
quinine tablet
cable address
motor boat
motor road
kitchen door
carriage driver
paper mill
leather factory
book company
table-cloth
sea bath
honey-bee
milkmaid
newspaper man
mail man
home country
hill-path
fire brigade
food problem
water problem
bread-and-butter question
Pacific Mail Steamship Co.
Fukien Wine and Tobacco Monopoly Bureau
University of London graduate
school-girl complexion
student days
North-China Herald Office Building

在這許多短語里, 第一個名詞常是當做修飾第二個名詞用的形容詞. 它們的關係卻極不一致: 如 stone wall 〔石牆〕意卽

* 這種名詞實在是作'修飾語' (modifiers) 用的. 參看第九章.

wall made of stone〔石頭砌的牆〕; honey-bee〔蜜蜂〕意卽 bee producing honey〔釀蜜的蜂〕; food problem〔糧食問題〕意卽 the problem of food〔糧食的問題〕; fire brigade〔救火隊〕意卽 a brigade for fighting fire〔爲救火而設的一隊人〕. 這種表現法應該多多學習,因爲它是比較簡潔,用它才可能造成更簡潔的句子. 所以 nine-o'clock arithmetic 就比 the class in arithmetic which comes at nine o'clock 簡便而自然, the Pacific Mail Steamship Co. (或 Co.'s) sailing schedule 比較 the schedule for sailing of the Pacific Mail Steamship Co. 簡便多了. 又如 He owns a paper mill 這一句英文比較 He owns a mill for manufacturing paper 好些; 又, motor roads 比較 motor-car roads 或 roads for motor cars 更其通順. 至于 a motor road 雖然在邏輯上講起來不怎麼正確,因爲路不是用馬達開的,然而倒是滿好的一個英文短語.

在這一點上,英文和中文非常相似. '旅費' 就說 journey expenses, '中國茶' 說 China tea, '蒼蠅紙' 說 fly-paper, '復旦大學校長' 說 Fu-tan University President. 而且這也往往是唯一合理的方法. 如果把 fire brigade, water pipe, geography class 和 tuberculosis doctor 說成 fiery brigade, watery pipe, geographical class 和 tubercular doctor, 那就大錯特錯了. 根本 pipe〔管子〕不是 watery〔水做的,如水的〕, class〔班級〕不是 geographical〔地理學上的〕, doctor〔醫生〕他本人也並不害着 tuberculosis〔肺病〕呀. 在別的情形之中, '名 + 名' 和 '形 + 名' 兩種形式卻都可用, 如 college student 或 collegiate student; China tea 或 Chinese tea; Japan tour 或 Japanese tour; 以及 South China 或 Southern

China. 不過用形容詞形式的時候，似乎側重描寫這東西的品性而不重在描寫這東西的本身。

2.22. 【名詞變形容詞】 除上面所說的一種極其方便的名詞當形容詞的用法以外，還有許多正常的形容詞是由名詞加上某種接尾 (endings or suffixes) 而成的。下列形容詞都是些由名詞變成的普通方式：—

gold—golden (colour)
wood—wooden (bowl)
earth—earthen (ware)
oak—oaken (chest)
person—personal (use)
verb—verbal (adjective)
nation—national (custom)
nature—natural (beauty)
pig—piggish (nature) [粗類]
sheep—sheepish (face) [貪欲]
child—childish (idea)
girl—girlish (complexion)
boy—boyish (fun)
self—selfish (motive)
man—manly (appearance)
woman—womanly (grace)
gentleman—gentlemanly (conduct)
day—daily (experience)
week—weekly (visit)
month—monthly (test)
coward—cowardly (thought)
miser—miserly (habits)

ghost—ghostly (voice)
fog—foggy (morning)
storm—stormy (sea)
cloud—cloudy (sky)
wind—windy (day)
rain—rainy (weather)
drama—dramatic (literature)
patriot—patriotic (heart)
Socrates—Socratic (dialogue)
bearded man
nine-headed bird [九頭鳥]
round-eyed baby
three-legged cat
beautiful girl
powerful man
fearful disorder
hopeful appearance
shameful look
skilful work
powerless chief
fearless enemy
hopeless case
shameless conduct

【練習六】 試就上列成語中取出幾個來造句。

2.23. 【名詞當動詞】 有些名詞可當動詞用而詞形並無變化。例如：

They *stoned* him to death.
The gun was *fired*.

Hand the money to me.
We must *back* him up with money.
We must *face* the problem squarely.
He *elbowed* his way into the hall.
Mr. Holmes [houmz] *eyed* him for a moment.
The party has been well *phototgraphed*.
The judge *questioned* the witness.
He is *named* Peter after his father.

以上各例的動詞通常都是當名詞用的。這種正常名詞所有的動詞用法是輔尋常動詞所不易表達的觀念。例如 to *eye a* man 是'睨視'; to *knife* a man 是'暗計傷人', to *doctor* a telegram 是'改竄電報'; to *monkey* with a watch 是'耍弄一隻錶'; to *ape* a man 是'效顰'。(參看:'面壁','頂天立地','盜名欺世','衣我衣,冠我冠','世人病之','春風風人','百年樹人')。

除此以外,當然還有許多詞兒,尋常是既當動詞又當名詞用的,如 a *cover*, to *cover* up / a quick *cure*, to *cure* people / some *trouble*, to *trouble* a person / no *desire*, to *desire*, 等。

2.30. 【動詞當名詞】上面我們已經學過 (§ 2.15),動作往往可作名詞看待,通常只要在動詞後面加上一個 *-ing*. 這是最普通的方法,但不是唯一的方法。我們可以說 *Talking* is easier than *acting* 或 *To talk* is easier than *to act*. 這個用 to 的形式,便叫做動詞的無限式 (infinitive); 所以叫'無限式'的,是'不加限制'的意思,因爲它所表達的是一種一般的動作而不'屬于'任何主語。'無限式'是和那些被主語所限制着的'有限式' (finite verbs) 相對而言,例如 He goes, A dog barks 中的 goes, barks 便是有限式動詞。

可是,把無限式用在以 it 當頭的句子里,卻是極其常見的。例如不說 *To talk* is easier 而說 *It* is easier *to talk*. 這好像

我們是先說 "It is easier . . . ", 然後又彷彿回答一句 What is easier?, 那末加上一個 to talk. 事實上, 說一句 *It* requires a lot of money *to build a fine house* 往往比說 *To build a fine house* requires a lot of money 容易而通順. 因此把動作當名詞用有三種表現法:

1. *Talking* is easier than *acting*.
2. *To talk* is easier than *to act*.
3. *It* is easier *to talk* than *to act*.

【練習七】 試仿照上列三種範式,將下列各句的表現方法改變一下:—

1. *Learning English* is not difficult, if you know how.
2. It is not *reading* that is difficult; it is *speaking* that is difficult.
3. *Studying immediately after lunch* is not good for digestion.
4. *Walking in the sunshine* is good for health.
5. *Fishing* is pleasant for lovers even when there is no fish.
6. *Going to town* is enjoyable when one has plenty of money.
7. *To have nothing to do* is sometimes a nuisance.
8. *Telling a lie* is more difficult than *telling the truth*.
9. It is difficult *to remember the last lie that you told*.
10. There is nothing more awful than *telling a lie to one who believes in you*.
11. There is nothing finer than *to chat with your old friends around a fire*.
12. *To call oneself a revolutionist* is one thing; *to be one* is another.

總之,動詞當名詞用的最普通的方式究竟是加 -ing, 尤其是在介詞後面, 如 after *seeing*, before *leaving* 等.

【練習八】 試完成下列各句:—

1. I like ~ing ——.
2. I dislike being —— (過去分詞).
3. I don't mind ~ing ——.
4. Think of ~ing ——.
5. She always dreams about ~ing ——.

6. His ambition is being a ——.
7. I left after ~ing ——.
8. You must be careful in ~ing ——.
9. Are you afraid of being ——?
10. What is the harm of ~ing ——?

2.31. 【動詞變名詞】 由動詞變名詞，除去上面的一種最普通的方法以外，還有許多正常的名詞是由動詞變成，或者和動詞的關係非常密切。 試將下列各名詞的動詞舉出來，當心動詞字母的拼法。

preparation	trial
dictation	denial
examination	refusal
recitation	betrayal
repetition	prayer
composition	dinner
supposition	supper
division	speech
addition	food
admission	thought
expulsion	life
compulsion	knowledge
development	belief
movement	receipt
management	success
government	loss
seizure	bath
pleasure	breath
occurrence	cloth

2.32. 【成對的名詞和動詞】 有許多最普通的動詞，都可以當名詞用而形式上無任何變化，這一層切須注意，因爲用-ing的形式用得不恰當，英文句子就造不好。

make a *promise*	have a *talk* with one
go for a *walk*	have a *quarrel*

during his *sleep*
in your *studies*
after your *work*
begin the *review*
give a *blow* (*strike*)
need more *practice*
the monthly *test*
take some *exercise*
dream a *dream*
pay a *visit*
have a hearty *laugh*
give one a *surprise*
change my *dress*
make three *jumps*
tell a *lie*
has no *push* [魄力] in him
has no *pull* [勢力] behind him
have no *say* [發言權] in the matter
in full *swing* [上軌道]

【練習九】 試就上列詞兒之中取出幾個，造成各自獨立的句子，時而作名詞用，時而作動詞用.

有一羣成對的名詞和動詞在發音上微有差別，即末尾的輔音在動詞中是'柔音' (soft) 或'有聲' (voiced)，在名詞中便是'剛音' (hard) 或'無聲' (voiceless). 在 [f]—[v] 的情形中，還可由字母的拼法上辨別，但在 [s]—[z] 和 [θ]—[ð] 的情形中，在詞形上卻無從指出.

動詞	名詞
[-z]	[-s]
use (利用) [ju:z]	use (用處) [ju:s]
abuse [ə'bju:z]	abuse [ə'bju:s]
close [klouz]	close (寺院重地或學堂的球場) [klous]
excuse [iks'kju:z]	excuse [iks'kju:s]
house [hauz]	house [haus]
advise [əd'vaiz]	advice [əd'vais]
[-v]	[-f]
halve (對分) [ha:v]	half [ha:f]
calve (生小牛) [ka:v]	calf [ka:f]
shelve (擱起檔案) [ʃelv]	shelf [ʃelf]
prove [pru:v]	proof [pru:f]
believe [bi'li:v]	belief [bi'li:f]
[-ð]	[-θ]
mouth (做嘴勞) [mauð]	mouth [mauθ]
teethe (長牙齒) [ti:ð]	teeth [ti:θ]

[z] 的讀音在 using, use it, the housing problem, the closing ceremony ['ju:ziŋ; 'ju:zit; ðə 'hauziŋ 'prɔbləm; ðə 'klouziŋ 'sɛriməni] 中最聽得清楚. 至於 practise, defense (動) 和 practice, defence (名) 的分別,那完全是拼字學上的分別,在發音上卻毫無二致,都讀 ['præktis], [di'fens]. (但許多人通常都只用 practice, defense 而不用另外兩式).

名詞和動詞還有一種普通的區別,那就是重音的移轉: 大多數作名詞用時重音在前一音節,作動詞用時重音在後一音節. 這種情形,在有幾對詞兒里已經爲一般人所公認的了. 下面所舉的是最常見的幾個實例:

動 詞 [-'-]	名 詞 ['--]
progress [prə'grɛs]	progress ['prougrɛs]
produce (生產) [prə'dju:s]	produce (產品) ['prɔdju:s]
proceed (進行) [prə'si:d]	proceeds (得利) ['prousi:dz]
present (贈送) [pri'zent]	present (贈物) ['prezn̩t]
project (凸出) [prə'dʒekt]	project (計劃) ['prɔdʒikt]
object (反對) [əb'dʒekt]	object (對象) ['ɔbdʒikt]
subject (征服) [səb'dʒekt]	subject (臣民) ['sʌbdʒikt]
increase [in'kri:s]	increase ['inkri:s]
decrease [di:'kri:s]	decrease ['di:kri:s]
conduct (行,導) [kən'dʌkt]	conduct (行爲) ['kɔndɔkt]
convert (使歸正) [kən'və:t]	convert (歸正信徒) ['kɔnvə:t]
digest (消化,爬梳) [dai'dʒest]	digest (輯要) ['daidʒest]
dislike [dis'laik]	dislike ['dislaik]
record (登記) [ri'kɔ:d]	record (記錄) ['rekɔ:d]
import [im'pɔ:t]	import ['impɔ:t]
export [eks'pɔ:t]	export ['ekspɔ:t]
rebel (反叛) [ri'bel]	rebel (叛徒) ['rebəl]
protest [prə'test]	protest ['prɔtest]

2.33. 【動詞當形容詞——'分詞'】 動詞有兩種形式,你們大概已經學過了,一是'現在分詞' (Present Participle), 一是

'過去分詞' (**Past Participle**). 所以叫做'分詞'的，是因爲這種詞兒可以分做兩種用法：一當動詞，一當形容詞。用這兩種分詞的形式，可以把任何動詞變成形容詞。

現在分詞是由動詞後加接尾 -ing 而成；過去分詞在規則動詞 (Regular Verbs) 是加接尾 -ed，但在不規則動詞 (Irregular Verbs) 則形式各各不同. 現在分詞表明主動的或未完成的動作；而過去分詞則表明被動的或已經完成的動作. *Boiling* water 是正在沸騰的開水，而 *boiled* water 是已經開過了的水，也許是熱開水，也許是冷開水. 開過了的水可以結冰，但從沒有見過沸騰着的開水會結冰的. 同樣地，a *drowning* man 是失足淹在水里正在扎掙的人，而 a *drowned* man 卻一定是已經淹死的了. A drowning man 可以喊救命，但 a drowned man 卻喊不出來了. 相仿地，a *stirring* (或 an *exciting*) speech 〔激昂的演說〕是激動人心使人興奮的演說，但是 an *excited* crowd 〔激昂的羣衆〕卻是受演說者的激昂演說所刺激起來的羣衆. 試將下面的句子及短語的區別比較一下：—

The book is *interesting*. It interests me. I am *interested* in it.
He was in his room, *preparing* to leave for Paris. He looked sad and silent, *prepared* for the worst.
Taking him for the well-known robber, they put him in prison. He was shut up in prison, *taken* for a robber.
a *heart-breaking* story.—a *heart-broken* girl. a *broken* chair.
a *growing* boy.—a *grown-up* man.
a *terrifying* noise.—a *terrified* look.
a *connecting* verb.—a *connected* speech.
suffocating air.—a *suffocated* man.
running water. a *run-away* horse.
the *preceding* paragraph. the *following* story.
a *crying* baby. *unwanted* children.

a *repeating* watch	a carefully *repeated* poem
a *printing* machine	*printed* matter

【練習十】 下列成語須細心研究. 教師先說出一個附有關係子句的表現法,令學生就口頭將其變成此類成語. 例如 (教師) a chair that rotates—(學生) a rotating chair; (教師) an animal that eats flesh—(學生) a flesh-eating animal.

rotating chair	his broken health
flesh-eating animal	flying carpet
washing-woman	man-eating savages
high-sounding speech	decided opinion
temporarily occupied areas	determined look
fast retreating enemies	a changed appearance
above-mentioned words	changing customs
well-dressed man	a long-remembered story
clean-shaved face	his delayed journey
nice-looking girl	the cancelled meeting
rapidly rising reputation	her divorced husband
a laughing face	your desired object
a beginning student	my beloved son
far-reaching scheme	an over-protected child
a subsidized local press	undeveloped resourses
dying wish	"sunkist" (sun-kissed) oranges
dying father	howling monkeys
well-disciplined boys	ill-smelling things
on-coming tide	dirty-looking things
roaring fire	well-written essays
sickening smell	a much-needed book

2.34. 【分詞的拼法】 下列各個分詞,請注意它們的拼法。A 羣是單音節的動詞,末一輔音前有一個元音字母。 B 羣是雙音節的動詞,末尾也是一樣,不過重音在第二音節。 C 羣的動詞無限式末尾有一 '默音' (silent) 的 -e, 而 D 羣的動詞是些特別的例子。

(A)

hop [hɔp]	hopping, -ed [-t]
stop [stɔp]	stopping, -ed [-t]
run [rʌn]	running
put [put]	putting
set [set]	setting
hit [hit]	hitting
quit [kwit]	quitting, -ed [-id]
chat [tʃæt]	chatting, -ed [-id]
can (裝罐頭) [kæn]	canning, -ed [-d]

(B)

begin [bi'gin]	beginning
occur [ə'kə:]	occurring, -ed [-d]
upset [ʌp'set]	upsetting
remit [ri'mit]	remitting, -ed [-id]
excel [ik'sel]	excelling, -ed [-d]
expel [iks'pel]	expelling, -ed [-d]
compel [kəm'pel]	compelling, -ed [-d]

(C)

save [seiv]	saving, saved
give [giv]	giving, given ['givn]
live [liv]	living, lived
come [kʌm]	coming, come
use [ju:z]	using, used [ju:zd]
suppose [sə'pouz]	supposing, supposed
compose [kəm'pouz]	composing, composed
believe [bi:'li:v]	believing, believed
receive [ri'si:v]	receiving, received
escape [is'keip]	escaping, escaped [-t]

(D)

lie [lai]	lying, lied *or* lain
die [dai]	dying, died
dye [dai]	dyeing, dyed
deny [di'nai]	denying, denied
reply [ri'plai]	replying, replied

travel ['trævl]	travel(l)ing, -ed
picnic ['piknik]	picnicking, picnicked [-t]
mimic ['mimik]	mimicking, mimicked [-t]

2.35. 【動詞變形容詞】 有些正常的形容詞是由動詞變成的. 最普通的是動詞加接尾-able[-əbl], 或有時加-ible[-ibl], 而變成形容詞, 其意義和中文形容詞'可愛的', '可憎的', '可憐的'等的'可～的'相仿. 附加接尾 -able, -ible, -ive 的形容詞茲舉例如下:

eat*able*	lov*able*, love*able*	act*ive*
unthink*able*	laugh*able*	talkat*ive*
unbelev*able*	terr*ible*	possess*ive*
desir*able*	permiss*ible*	relat*ive*
allow*able*	vis*ible* [可看見]	suggest*ive* [含意猥褻]
excus*able*	aud*ible* [可聽見]	extens*ive* [廣大]
change*able*	leg*ible* [可讀得]	impuls*ive* [躁急]

這些形容詞都可在 -tive 後加 -ly 或將 -able 和 -ible 的 -le 改爲 -ly 而變成副詞 (參看 § 2.42).

2.40. 【形容詞變名詞】 我們在 § 2.15 里已經說過, 像 blindness, kindness, strength, poverty 等名詞可從 blind, kind, strong, poor 等形容詞變成. 因此我們把這些不可見的品性當做獨立的名詞. 這許多名詞我們要學習, 因爲名詞可供我們造短句 短句讀起來容易. I have no *fear* of his *power* --句比較 I am not afraid though he is so powerful 說起來簡短而恰到好處. I do not know its *length* 比 I do not know how long it is 簡單. 又, I was impressed by her *kindness* 可以省去說 by her kind words, by her kind tone, by her kind looks, 或 by her kind treatment 的麻煩, 而且說了這一大長篇還未必能把我的意思完全達出. 或許我的本意是 I was

impressed by the fact that she was so kind, 這個當然以用 by her kindness 一短語比較好而且又比較容易.

試習下列成對的形容詞和名詞:—

strong—strength	brave—bravery
long—length	savage—savagery
broad—breadth	diligent—diligence
wide—width	obedient—obedience
cleanly—cleanliness	patient—patience
kind—kindness	ignorant—ignorance
cold—coldness	private—privacy
sweet—sweetness	secret—secrecy
faithful—faithfulness	rapid—rapidity
sorry—sorrow	stupid—stupidity
angry—anger	punctual—punctuality
hungry—hunger	real—reality
proud—pride	united—unity
hot—heat	festive—festivity

【練習十一】 下列各句中的形容詞,試以名詞代替,句式可任意變換:—

1. He ought to be rewarded for being so *diligent*.
2. I am not ashamed that I am *poor*. (ashamed of + n.)
3. He is a *brave* man. I admire him for it.
4. Don't you know she is famous because she is *beautiful*?
5. Everybody knows that he is *proud*.
6. His great defect is that he is so *bad-tempered*.
7. A child should learn to be *obedient*.
8. It is not a virtue to be *punctual* in China.
9. I cannot understand why he is *absent* for so long.
10. He is so *generous* that he is famous for it.
11. What we want is that we should all be *united*.

2.41. 【The Poor, The Dead 等】 英文里有一種應用 the poor, the rich, the strong, the oppressed 一類的表現法以指一類的人或事物. 這樣我們不必要說明到底是什麼東西,而這種說明的方法總比較正確一些. 我們說 the oppressed〔被壓迫

者〕時，我們是指一切受壓迫的人，不管是農，工，車夫，苦力，僕役，小販，商店夥計，新聞記者或小學教員，或者公司職員．這一類的表現法的例子如下：

The living and *the dead*.
The rich and *the poor*.
The false and *the true*.
The righteous and *the wicked*.
The meek and *the humble*.
The lame, *the halt* and *the blind*.
The modifiers and *the modified*.
The oppressors and *the oppressed*.
Turn to *the right*, to *the left*.
A search for *the unknown*.
The young ought to be housed [hauzd] and fed.
None but *the brave* deserve *the fair*.
You are trying *the impossible*.

這些表現法的意義和 those that are poor, those that are living 等相同，應用起來很方便．跟這個相同的觀念往往借用 one 一詞表達，如 the young ones, the fat ones 等等．這些和中文里'長者'，'幼者'，'適者生存'，'仁者見仁，智者見智'，'爲親者所痛，爲讎者所快'等的'～者'的意念相當．其他如'弱肉強食'，'優勝劣敗'，'存歿均感'，'富貴貧賤'，'智愚賢不肖'，'男女老少'，都是這一類．

有時，有些形容詞直接當做名詞用而形式不變，如 *Chinese* 卽 the Chinese language〔中文〕或 the Chinese people〔中國人〕的意思．You are *a dear* 比 You are dear 來得有力．還有，如 *unmentionables*〔褻衣〕一詞英國女人卽用以指 trousers〔褲子〕．參看中文的'(行)方便'，'(作)惡'，'(行)善'，'(令)尊'，'(家)嚴'，'(家)慈'，'(揭發)陰私'，'(張)長(李)短'，'(誰)是(誰)非'，'(不分)青紅皂白'，'一動(不如)一靜'等，也都是形容詞當名詞用的．英文的例見下：—

eatables [食物]
drinkables [飲料]
valuables [貴重物品]
sweets [糖食]
the French [法人]
the English [英人]

the ancients [古人]
the moderns [現代人]
(im)movables [(不)動產]
the immortals [不朽者]
the natives [本地人]
the whites and blacks [白種人與黑種人]
the white of an egg [蛋白]
the white of the eyes [眼白]
a red [赤俄,共產黨,紅軍兵士]
the green [公共草地]

2.42. 【形容詞變副詞：詞尾 -ly】 在英文里，形容詞通常加 -ly 變成副詞。我們說 complete ignorance (形→名)，但是 completely ignorant (副→形)；unusual luck (形→名)，但 unusually lucky (副→形)。又如 *beautiful* singing，但 She sings *beautifully*. 所以詞尾 -ly 是變成副詞的一種普通記號（惟參看 § 2.22 man—manly 等）。我們學英文的人用這樣的副詞修飾語時，應該記住這種變法。文章寫得好的人通常都曉得副詞的用法的。比較下列各短語：—

(形 + 名)	(副 + 形)
fearful dirt	*fearfully* dirty
awful noise	*awfully** noisy
total ignorance	*totally* ignorant
sudden illness	*suddenly* ill
great surprise	*greatly* surprised
unspeakable joy	*unspeakably* joyful
supreme happiness	*supremely* happy
gradual increase	*gradually* increasing
fatal wound	*fatally* wounded
moral responsibility	*morally* responsible
blissful ignorance	*blissfully* ignorant
rightful place	*rightfully* there
wrong accusation	*wrongly* accused

Hard, dead, fast 等詞可以當副詞用，不加 -ly，如 run *fast*, *dead* tired, *dead* asleep, work *hard*. Hardly (副) 的

* 此字在此處意即 terribly, 應讀 ['ɔ:fuli], 但在 "Awfully sorry" (非常抱歉) 中已失去'可怕'的意義，祇相當于 very, 讀音應作 ['ɔ:fli].

意義和 hard 完全不同,等於 almost not〔殆不〕. 它的意義實在是否定的 (negative): I can *hardly* hear you = I *almost* can*not* hear you (and you must talk louder).

That is *hardly* enough (=*not quite enough*).
I *hardly* think so (=*I almost do not think so*).
I can *hardly* believe it (=*it is difficult to believe*).
There's *hardly* a soul there (=*almost no one there*).

Scarcely 和 hardly 的意思一樣.

【練習十二】 試以下列成語造句:—

1. think clearly
2. act quickly
3. feel keenly
4. walk slowly
5. turn quickly
6. can hardly believe
7. hardly believable
8. utterly useless
9. certainly right
10. easily the first
11. probably there
12. possibly true
13. am dead aganist [極力反對]
14. dead drunk [泥醉]
15. dead tired [疲極]
16. scarcely enough
17. hopelessly ill
18. desperately poor
19. entirely wrong
20. greatly mistaken
21. awfully busy
22. terribly busy
23. divinely beautiful
24. shockingly bad

2.43. 【Knowingly, Decidedly 等】 分詞也可以加 -ly 而成副詞. 細讀下列各句:

1. You are *undoubtedly* right.
2. He is *decidedly* wrong.
3. Cases of malaria are becoming *increasingly* frequent.
4. He answered *knowingly* (=in a knowing manner).
5. He is *admittedly* (或 *confessedly*) a thief.
6. We saw an *amazingly* clever magician.
7. The people were all talking *confusedly*.
8. Eat *sparingly* (=don't eat too much).

9. The letter was *surprisingly* well written (=I did not think he could write it so well).

"-ed" 在 "t", "d" 以外的輔音之後通常讀 [d] 或 [t], 這 "e" 沒有音; 但在這種分詞加 -ly 的情形之中,這 "e" 在 -edly [-idli] 中卻一律有音, 所以 confused [kən'fju:zd], marked [ma:kt], 但 confusedly [kən'fju:zidli], markedly ['ma:k-idli], 如 markedly different 〔顯然不同〕.*

2.50. 【介詞當形容詞】 在英文里那些叫做介詞的短短的詞兒很有用處,一個人的文字語言要得通馴(卽合乎習慣語法), 必須先學會介詞的用法. 譬如 put the dress on 比 wear the dress 通馴, put the light out 比 extinguish the light 常用. 以下的例都是介詞當形容詞用的:—

The light is *out*.
The game is *on* (=being played now).
The meeting is *off* (=cancelled).
His mind is *off* (=crazy).
We are *off* at last.
Is he *in* (=in the house)?
No, he is *out* (=not at home).
Dinner is *over* (=finished).
I am *through* with you (=I will have no more to do with you).
She is *up* (=She has got up from bed).
Is the meeting *over* (=finished) now?

有幾個形容詞是往往當介詞用的. 我們可以說 I cannot do it *like* you, 和 I do not talk *like* that, 其中 like 是介詞, 而 like you, like that 是作用和副詞一樣的介詞短語. (又,

* 參看: I have *learned* [lə:nd] this, 但 a *learned* ['lə:nid] scholar; I *cursed* [kə:st] him, 但 a *cursed* ['kə:sid] bird.

It is *worth* ten dollars 中的 worth 雖是形容詞，但實在含有介詞的力量)。卽在 It looks *like* going to rain 和 He is *like* his father 兩句中，這 like 的形容詞的作用仍然非常顯明。這種 like 我們可以稱它是'介詞性形容詞'，卽有介詞的權力可以統攝名詞的一個形容詞。* 又如 near 一詞也往往當形容詞用(He is *nearer* to us)，以及當介詞性形容詞 (The man *near* her, He is *nearer* us)。† 反之，far 一詞決不能當介詞用，*far* from here, *far from* it，但決無 *far it*. 于此可見一國的語文是慣用法 (usage) 的產品，而非邏輯的常繹，所以學文法時我們的工作應以仔細觀察語文的許多活的事實爲根據，而不可迷信抽象的文法規則。

2.51. 【副詞和介詞當名詞】

The *ups and downs* (=rises and falls) of fortune or landscape.
Have a *down* (=prejudice or dislike) on a person.
Know all the *ins and outs* (=true details).
Go into *whys and wherefores* (=reasons) of it.
We know neither our *whence* nor our *whither* (origin and destiny).
Compare the *pros* and *cons* (拉丁文介詞=*for* and *against*).
Once is enough. For this *once*.
The *outside*. The *inside*. The *above*.

注意像 *for ever, at once, before long, in short, by far, from above, from under* 這一類短語中 *ever, long* 等詞當作名詞看待 (§ 2.18).

2.52. 【副詞·介詞·連詞】 英文里的介詞，連詞和歎詞(通常也可加入副詞) 等詞類，形式上是沒有變化的。因此在這些詞兒里，作用的轉變並不牽及到形式上來。

---

* 參看: Fowler 著 *Modern English Usage*, p. 325, 又 *Pocket Oxford Dictionary* 中 "like" 一條.

† 參看 *Pocket Oxford Dictionary* 中 "near" 一條.

He walked *before*. (副)
He walked *before* me. (介)
He had walked a mile *before* he came to the house. (連)

此處 before 意義和形式都還是一樣。我們只有從它的作用上才可以看出它在這三句里的慣用法的不同。許多副詞和介詞可以交相替用，還有少數又可當連詞用。這個在詞形上既無變化，我們中國學生當然不感到何種困難。

He stood *outside* the door. He stood *outside*.
Mr. P—— was sitting *above*. He was sitting *above* me.
Soon the ship went *under*. She went *under* the water.
Mr. Y—— was walking *in front of* me. He was walking *in front*.
He has left *since*. He has left *since* Monday morning. He has left *since* a message came for him.

2.60. 【幾個有趣的複合詞】我們趁這個研究詞兒的作用和組織的變化時，注意某幾個複合詞，該是很有趣的事吧。在這種複合詞中，整個的結合可以當做爲某一特定的文法作用而造成的詞兒，各個詞類本身並無任何變化。這又是英文和中文極其相似的一點。如 a three-foot-ladder[1]〔三腳梯〕，go-to-meeting coat[2]〔參加宴會時穿的服裝〕，a happy-go-lucky policy[3]〔隨遇而安的政策〕，此處的 happy, go, lucky 等詞兒這樣連接的方法決非普通結合所能爲功的。其他極端的實例如 the never-to-be-forgotten affair[4]〔永世不忘的事〕，with an I-turn-the-crank-of-the-Universe air[5]〔排起我能旋轉乾坤的架子來(天地間唯我獨尊)〕，以及 a comfortable as-it-was-in-

1. [ə 'θri:'fut'lædə]
2. ['gəutə'mi:tiŋ 'kəut]
3. [ə 'hæpigə'lʌki 'pɔləsi]
4. [ðə 'nevətəbifə'gɔtn ə'fɛə]
5. [wið ən ai'tə:nðə'kræŋkəvðə'ju:nivə:s 'ɛə]

the-beginning-is-now-and-ever-shall-be feeling[6]〔一種天長地久的安逸的情緒〕(極言其安全的一種情緒),和 the-dog-in-the-manger attitude[7]〔狗佔馬糟的態度〕(自己用不着的東西又不肯給人用的一種態度,心術壞的態度)。此外如 pickpocket,[8] tooth-pick[9] 正如中文的'扒手','牙籤', well-to-do[10] (形) 和 ne'er-do-wells[11] (名) 正如中文的'小康','無賴', bread-and-butter marriage[12], 如中文的'酒肉朋友','柴米夫妻'。(參看中文俗語中'不管三七廿一地幹它一下','口蜜腹劍的小人','這人滿口的仁義道德,但是一肚皮的男盜女娼',以及有一種女人罵人時所用的'殺千刀'等等。)事實上,這種結合的構成,在英文里比在中文里還要來得自由些呢。

形 容 詞

commonplace 平凡,庸碌
matter-of-fact 實事求是
first-rate 第一等,最好
up-to-date 流行,時新,時髦
out-of-date 過時的,不時髦
five-act (play) 五幕劇
tell-tale (face) 做賊心虛之貌
snow-white (dress) 雪白衣裳
fifty-fifty (basis) 平分條件
out-of-door (exercise) 戶外運動
dead-alive (half dead and half alive) 半生不死
lighter-than-air (machine) = air-ship 飛船
heavier-than-air (machine) = aeroplane 機
peace-at-any-price (policy) 不顧一切之主和政策
the-king-can-do-no-wrong (young man) 相信皇上無不是之青年
eighteen-shillings-a-week (income) 週薪十八先令
hand-to-hand (fight) 肉搏
every-man-for-himself (scuffle) 人自爲戰
life-and-death (struggle) 殊死戰
do-what-you-can-and-take-what-you-need (policy) 各盡所能各取所需之政策

6. [ə ˈkʌmfətəbl əzitˈwɔzinðəbiˈginiŋˈizˈnauəndˈevəʃlˈbiː ˈfiːliŋ]
7. [ðəˈdɔginðəˈmeindʒər ˈætitjuːd]
8. [ˈpikˈpɔkit]
9. [ˈtuːθpik]
10. [ˈwéltəˈduː]
11. [ˈnɛəduːˈwelz]
12. [ˈbrédnˈbʌtə ˈmæridʒ]

名詞

a cut-throat 凶漢
a pickpocket 扒手
a pastime 消遣
a make-believe 自欺欺人之事
a stop-gap 權宜之計
your own lookout 自作打算
a Godsend 天送來
an eyesore 眼中釘
a die-hard 死守黨
an at-home 在家接客之茶會
a wash-out 大敗
quick turnovers 貨物現銷,翻轉的快
no give-and-take (=no exchange) 無交易
the goings-on (=proceedings) 手續,「步驟
the whereabouts (人之) 下落
and what-not 其他一切之物,等等
mother-of-pearl 螺鈿
too many shall-nots shall not 太多
the also-rans (賽馬時) 未得彩的跑馬

副詞

outdoors 戶外
indoors 戶內
downstairs 樓下
upstairs 樓上
maybe 也許
offhand 信手拈來,爽而
underhand 卑劣,陰險
beforehand 事前,預先
willy-nilly (=whether he will or not) 無論願否

動詞

out-distance 越過
ear-mark 加耳號,指撥
dumbfound 使目瞪口呆
backbite 背後毀謗
double-cross 以詭計賣去
cross-question 訊問,對詰
visé, visa ['vi:zei] (*p p.* viséd 或 visé'd, visa'd) 簽證
O.K. (*p p.* O.K.'d) 認可
a hen-pecked husband 怕老婆,北雞司「晨
Mr. Solmes'd him (=called him Mr. Solmes) 叫他 Mr. Solmes

第三章　句的語氣

3.10. 【句是什麽?】 我們如果說 a red rose, 這個不成一句 (sentence), 因爲我們覺得這一羣的詞兒只說了個'什麽'而沒有說出個'怎麽樣'來. '這朵紅玫瑰'怎麽樣呢? 可是, 如果說 The rose *is* red, 我們就覺得說出了個'怎麽樣'來, 而意思也完全了. 因此我們說 The rose is red 是一句, 而 a red rose 便不是一句. 同樣地, 像 Here's a red rose / The red rose *smells* sweet 或 Her face *is* like a red rose, 也都各成一句, 因爲每句的意思在本身都已經完全了. 所以在句子當中, 總要有了動詞(如 is, smell), 整個句子才有生氣. 反之, 在 a red rose 里, 意思是死的, 因爲它沒有動詞.

不過, 假使有人突然告訴你, 說你家里房子燒掉了, 你自然而然地要喊一聲 "What!"〔什麽!〕. 這一聲驚訝之中沒有動詞, 可是我們並不覺得 What! 是一個意思不完全的表現法咧. 那個首先看見火着了的人總該叫一聲 "Fire!"〔起火了!〕, 而樓上的人一聽見也一定要喊一聲 "Help!"〔救命哪!〕. 這些都是獨立完整的表現法, 意思都表達得明明白白的. 我們不應該因爲 Fire! 或 What! 沒有動詞而說它們不是句子. 文法是爲語文而設, 不是語文爲文法而設的. 活的語文不是像學校里的練習題那樣的呆板. 在實際的談話之中, 我們所用的表現法往往沒有動詞而意思卻依然完整無缺. 有時候, 動詞省略了, 不說出來; 不過這句話也不一定完全靠得住. 爲了文法的關係, 我們雖然不妨說 Fire! 乃是把 There is a fire 一句縮短了; 但這在心理學上卻說不過去: 我們喊 "Fire!" 時, 實在是只要教人家去注

意那個火. 我們的意思也許是 There is a fire, 但也許是 Let everybody go and fight the fire! 〔大家去救火呀!〕, 或者我們是說 Oh! now my property is all gone, and what shall I do? 〔哎喲喲! 我的家產都完了咧, 怎麼辦呢?〕. 我們實在的意思就只是 fire 這一個詞兒. 又如 a red rose 通常是不成一句的, 但是人家問你 "What have you got in your hand?" 〔你手里拏着什麼東西?〕, 那末你回答一句 "A red rose" 〔一朵紅玫瑰〕, 這不是一句滿好, 滿明白而滿完全的回答嗎? 再, 如果你和朋友約定星期六上午再碰頭, 那末分手時可以對他說:

All right.
或——All right. Saturday morning at ten.
或——All right. Saturday morning at ten in the North Station [北站] and no mistake [別弄錯了].

這些都是'刮刮叫'的英語, 雖則寫起英文來通常要想法子把適當的動詞補了進去. 下列各句都是'口語英文' (Colloquial English) 的表現法, 它們都屬于這一類:—

Your turn. (=Now it is your turn.)
Next! (=Next boy, stand up, etc.)
Splendid! (=That's good! Well done!)
How so? (=How can it be?)
A drink? (=Do you want a drink?)
Nothing doing. (=I will never do it.)
My mistake. (=It's my mistake; it's not your fault.)
Light, please. (=Please turn on the light.)
Danger ahead! (=Drive slowly.)
The idea! (=How can you, he, etc. think of such a thing?)

既然英語中有這種口語的表現法, 我們就應該這樣說: 句子不過是一個意思完全而能夠獨立的表現法吧了. 任何一個意思完全而能獨立的表現法, 都可以叫做句子.

3.11. 【有限式動詞 (Finite Verb) 的重要】 可是上面所說的情形,都還是例外,通常一句中必定含有一個動詞. 人家問一句 "What have you got there?", 你回答他 "A red rose", 這是一個非常完全的句子. 不過在平時,憑空地說出 a red rose 來,人家便莫名其妙,因此不成其爲句子. 同樣地, Soochow-Nanking 不是一句,不過是一羣的詞兒. I go from Soochow to Nanking 才是一句,因爲這個有限式動詞 (§ 2.30) 使這一句有了生氣,把不相聯絡的部分合成一個整個兒.

我們必須記得: 每句里要用一個動詞. 因爲這是英文里一個重要的習慣,而我們中國學生往往把它忘記了.* 光是形容詞或分詞 (即動詞變形容詞) 說不出一件什麽事情來. 我們說 He dies (動詞) 是可以的,但不可說 He dead (形容詞). 必須說 He *is* dead. 又如 The boy playing in the garden 也不成一句, 必須說 The boy *is playing* in the garden.

【練習十三】 試就下列各句中補入 *am, is, are, feel, become, get, grow* 這一類的動詞, 時制用現在式 (present) 或過去式 (past), 請自行斟酌:—

1. —— you fifteen years old?
2. I —— sick for a long time.
3. My father —— very angry with me.
4. Soon we —— very tired.
5. The baby cries when it —— hungry.
6. The students —— returning from school.
7. Her sister —— more beautiful than she.
8. The girl's toy —— broken, and she —— very sorry.
9. She —— weaker and weaker on account of her illness.

---

* 因爲中文句法上有一個特點,便是用靜性形容詞表明動性的甚至動態的敍述時,這個形容詞往往成爲述語的全部,在形式上便沒有動詞了,例如 '山高月小,(水落石出)', '桃紅柳綠, 春光明媚', '他現在的身體很好', '我的父親五十歲了', 以及 '紅了櫻桃,綠了芭蕉' 等等.

句・短語・子句

3.20. 【主語·述語·本動詞】 任何句子分析起來，都有一個主語 (subject) 和一個述語 (predicate). 我們所談到的'什麽'，就是主語；對于那主語所說的'怎麽樣'，就是述語. 所以在 The rose is red 一句里，rose 是主語，is red 是述語. 在 Open your books, 主語 you 省略了，open your books 整個是述語. 在述語里，重要的詞兒每每是本動詞 (Principal Verb). 上面這 is 和 open 便是這兩句述語中的本動詞.

【練習十四】 指出下列各句中的述語和本動詞:—

1. The kite flies in the air. (回答 "What about the kite?' [風箏怎麽樣?] 的便是述語)
2. What makes the steam-engine run?
3. George O'Brien knocked the fellow down.
4. Please show him the way.

3.21. 【直接賓語和間接賓語】 有些句子的述語里，除本動詞外，還有本動詞的賓語. 如上節第一句，動詞 flies 〔飛〕沒有賓語，第二句里 steam-engine 〔汽機〕就是動詞 makes 〔使〕的賓語. 第三句里，fellow 〔人〕是動詞 knocked 〔打〕的賓語. 而第四句則有兩個賓語:一是 show him 〔指示他〕的 him 〔他〕，一是 show the way 〔指示路徑〕的 way 〔路徑〕. 這一句的意思和 Please show the way *to* him 是一樣. 給一樣東西給人，或者爲人 (有時爲物) 做一件事情，那末這東西或事情是'直接賓語' (Direct Object)，而接收這東西或事情的人便是'間接賓語' (Indirect Object). 試舉出下列各句中的直接賓語和間接賓語:—

1. Give me that book, please.
2. Tell your mother everything you have done.
3. Will you return me the money I lent you?
4. Miss Yang paid her friend a visit last month.
5. Will you do me a favour?
6. His father bought him a new hat.
7. My brother made me a kite.

3.22. 【句法: 修飾語和連詞】 上面說過，一句的主要成分是主語，本動詞，有時還有賓語。 這個很明白，容易記得。 一切的句子，不拘怎樣的長，都是這樣構成的。 有時候句子之所以是很長很長的，是因爲添加了許多詞兒或詞羣，去修飾主語，動詞或賓語，再用連詞把這幾羣的詞兒連起來。 所以一句可以分做五個部分: (1) 主語; (2) 本動詞; (3) 賓語; (4) 修飾語; (5) 連詞。 例如:

"The dirty boy plucked a beautiful red rose in your garden this morning, and was caught."

一句便可以分析如下:—

主語——boy.
第一動詞——plucked.
第二動詞——was caught.
第一動詞的賓語——rose.
主語的修飾語——the, dirty.
第一動詞的修飾語——in your garden, this morning.
賓語的修飾語——a, beautiful, red.
連接兩個動詞的連詞——and.

要記得，形容詞，副詞和介詞短語常常當做修飾語用。 歎詞當做句子中的獨立部分看待，如 *Ah!* here he is. 英文句法的確是如此簡單，我們只要把句子的這五個部分記住，那末關於英文句法便更加容易了解了。

【練習十五】 試將下列各句中的主語，本動詞，賓語，修飾語和連詞（如有連詞時）指出，並說明修飾語所修飾的是那些詞兒。 例如在 The carpenter paints the

door red 句中，red 是修飾賓語 door 的. 在 My *uncle* grew *angry* 句中，angry 是修飾主語 uncle 的，在 *He* was considered *lost* (=*They considered him lost.*) 句中，lost 是修飾主語 he 的. 所以述語中的詞兒也可以修飾主語.

1. Columb s discovered America by luck.
2. Magellan sailed around the world.
3. Magellan made the first sailing trip around the world.
4. He got angry with me, and called me an impossible fool.
5. The sun rises in the morning and sets in the evening.
6. He left home for a long time, and was considered dead by hi family.
7. Spell your words correctly, and copy them with ink, not with pencil.
8. Meet me at ten o'clock tomorrow morning.
9. I saw him crossing the street.
10. He was seen walking with Miss C——.
11. The detective came too late, and found the thief gone and the room quite empty.

3.23. 【短語和子句】 凡句子中的一部分，里面有主語有述語的，叫做'子句' (clause)；沒有主語和述語的，叫做'短語' (phrase). 所以子句在結構上和獨立句相仿；實際上子句便是句子當中的一句，短語只是沒有任何有限式動詞的一羣詞兒而已. 子句常時藉連詞把它和句子的其他部分連接起來. 細讀下列各子句 (斜體字)，並注意導引子句的連詞；然後再指出各子句中的主語和本動詞: —

1. *If you do not find him*, come back and tell me.
2. He was on his way back, *when he met Mr. Atkinson.*
3. I shall always remember *how he treated me, as long as I live.*
4. *That he was killed* is certain.
5. *Why he went away* nobody knows.

短語或是介詞短語 (以介詞起頭，如 in the garden, by his family)，或是無限式短語 ("to" 後接動詞，如 to see it, to be seen)，或是分詞短語 (以分詞起頭，如 crossing a street, taken

for a robber), 或者是不含有限式動詞的任何詞兒的結合. 例如 as soon as (連詞), once upon a time (副詞), on account of (介詞) 便是這一類的短語.

短語和子句也當名詞,形容詞或副詞用,其用法正如一個個的詞兒. 通常是當名詞或修飾語(形容詞或副詞)用. 名詞子句將來在十二章中論述,其他各種當修飾語(無限式短語,介詞短語,分詞短語,及關係子句)則在'修飾法'的那個重要的一章(第九章)里論述.

句 的 語 氣

3.30. 【句的語氣】 研究英文句子,有一個方法,便是學習如何以各種語氣來表達句子的意思,例如詢問的語氣,肯定的語氣,否認的語氣,命令的語氣,以及表明懷疑,希望,願望,允許等的語氣. 句的語氣倒底有多少種類,這個很難說: 我們的心境或情緒有多少變化,便有多少語氣. 不過,爲便利起見,不妨把語氣分爲下列五大類: (1) 肯定 (**Affirmation**); (2) 否定 (**Negation**); (3) 疑問 (**Interrogation**); (4) 可能語氣 (**Potential Moods**) (關于命令,願望,允許等); (5) 感情吐露 (或感歎) (**Emotional Utterances or Exclamations**). 研究這些句子的語氣教我們懂得: (1) 是如何陳述一件事實; (2) 是如何否認一件事實; (3) 是如何提出一個疑問; (4) 是如何表現願望,假設或其他是與不是事實的事情; (5) 在感情激動之下如何用英文表示感歎.

3.31. 【中英文之比較:中文的助詞】 外國人學中文,他也得先研究中文句子的各種語氣. 英文里大部分用動詞所表達的那些句子的不同語氣,在中文里大多數是用'語助詞' (modal particles——卽與'實字'相對立的一種'虛字') 來表達. 如中文用'嗎','麼'表疑問的語氣,用'呢','哩'表不信,反駁,或不同

意的疑問，用'了'表完成的意味，用'吧'或'罷'表最後決定或命令，提議等等。這些助詞常見于句末。有時候這些語氣在句首或句中也用連詞或副詞來表達，如表明不相信的'難道'，表明讓步的'卻'，表明假設或推測的'料想'，'總'等等。例如：—

你也要去嗎?	Are you going, too?	(疑問)
他何必這樣呢?	Then why should he do so?	(反駁)
十二點了.	It's twelve o'clock already	(完成)
我早已知道了.	I knew it long ago	(過去)
走罷.	Let's go. Be gone!	(決定)
算了罷.	Have done with it!	(算了)
難道他沒看見我麼?	Could it be that he didn't see me?	(不信)
他卻有點難過.	He did feel a little ashamed	(讓步)
料想他總不至如此罷.	I don't think he is as bad as that	(揣測)

肯 定

3.40. 【肯定: I Do; I Am】 肯定或陳述一件事實是句子的最普遍的方式。所以如 He goes / It rains / The child is pleased / 或 I have been away 這一類簡單的句子，都是肯定或陳述一件事的。在英文里，陳述事件時所用的詞兒，以動詞爲要緊。例如在 He *is* a thief 句中，眞正重要的肯定敍述的詞兒便是這個動詞 is，在 He *sells* his house 句中肯定的便是動詞 sells. 從肯定語氣的觀點看來，動詞 is 和 sells 代表動詞的兩大類，卽：(1) 行爲動詞 (**the Verbs of Doing**)；(2) 存在動詞 (**the Verbs of Being**)。其實，英文動詞差不多全部當做行爲動詞看待，只有動詞 "to be" 的各種形式 (如 is, was, are, were) 是當做表明'存在'的動詞看待。這完全是英國人的一種思想方法，中國學生還不十分熟悉。所以任何動詞都可以動詞 "do" (以及它的各種變式: does, did, doing) 來代替。例

如人家問 "Does he sell his house?", 我們每每回答一句 "Yes, he *does*." 這個情形可以應用到任何行爲動詞上去. 試習下列各陳述句:—

(A) 行爲動詞:

I *believe* in him. Indeed I *do* ['du:].
Tsu-fah *comes* to borrow money again. He always *does* ['dʌz].
You *wear* a straw hat in winter. You ought to know that it is not proper to *do* ['du:] that. You never see people *doing* ['du:iŋ] it except yourself.
Did you *meet* him?—— Yes, I *did* ['did].
Did you *speak* with him?—— No, I *didn't* ['didnt].
Shall I *bring* you today's papers? ——Please *do* ['du:].
I don't *like* geography. Really I *don't* ['dount].
You are the only one that *likes* my writing. Others *don't* ['dount].
Do you *promise* to take her for your wife?——I *do* ['du:].

(B) 動詞 "to be" (後接形容詞或分詞):

Do you think he *is* a real scholar?——I don't think he *is* ['iz].
Some of them *are* asleep, and some *are not* [a: 'not].
I suspected that he *was* in love, and now I know he *is* ['iz].
You say that she *is* the daughter of a cook. Well, what if she *is* ['iz].
I admire great speakers. I like to *be* ['bi:] one myself.

注意 "to be" 的各種形式以及虛字 "to do" 的各式普通都用弱式,而且不重讀,惟有這種作代替動詞用的 "to be", "to do" 卻都用強式,而且要重讀.

【練習十六】 將上列各句反覆誦讀,然後教師先說出第一部分,讓學生在口頭上補足第二部分.

3.41. 【Can, Will, Have, Must 等】 就上節所講的看來,可見得要作一種肯定,否定或疑問,我們就用得着 "do" 和 "be" 兩個詞兒. "To do" 和 "to be" 叫做 '助動詞' (auxiliary

or helping verbs). 事實上，各式各樣的肯定句，否定句及疑問句，都要靠這些助詞來造成. 其他的助動詞，如 have, will, can, may, must, dare, need 等也是常用的，其用處和 do 與 be 一樣. 試誦讀下列各句，讀時 can, must 等詞兒須加重音：—

Can ['kæn] he or *can* ['kæn] he not get the things ready?——Yes, he *can* ['kæn].
My wife does not want me to go, but I *must* ['mʌst].
You are free to go. You *may* ['mei] if you want to.
He thinks I have not yet prepared my lesson, but I *have* ['hæv]

3.42. 【肯定回答】 肯定的答句中通常用"yes". 不過回答起來往往不宜祇用一個禿頭禿腦的"yes". 各國語文里都有表示同意的各種方法，而且在禮貌上，我們回答人家的問話，除一個"yes"而外，也應該再加一些字眼. 如下列各例：—

May I see this book?.....*Certainly. Of course.*
Can I have a cigarette? .....*Why, certainly.*
May I smoke here? .....*Please do.*
Could you let me talk with you for a moment?.....*With pleasure.*
Shall I shut the door? .....*If you please.*
So I have to take care of her? .....*Quite so.*
Am I to hand in the exercises tomorrow?.....*Exactly.*
You will do everything I wish? .....*Absolutely.*
And she is your sister's daughter?.....*Quite right. You are right.*
Does he know you are living here?.....*I think so.*
Can I stay in school during the spring vacation? .....*Yes, if you like.*
Shall I tell her to come and see you?.....*By all means. Yes, if she wants to.*

【練習十七】 教師先提出問句，使學生用上列成語作爲答句.

3.43. 【限制斷言(Qualified Assertion)】 我們爲講究禮貌以及注意表現法的正確起見，都應該常常引用 I think, I am

afraid, it seems〔我想(我以爲),我恐怕,好像(是)〕等,表明我們的斷言是加以限制的。比方說,'你'所'以爲'是壞人的那個人,未必便眞是一個壞人,而'好像'是對的事情也許是對的,也許不對。像 it seems, I think, I believe (以及美國語的 I guess), 常插入句中,當做限制語 (**qualifying phrases**) 用,或在句首,或在句中,或在句末。

I think I can do it myself.
This can do you good, *I think*.
That is, *I think*, too much for me.
I don't think she will come by six.

He is gone, *I believe*.
I believe he is gone.
I believe I'd better go.
Then *you don't believe* it is true?

It seems she is unhappy.
She is unhappy, *it seems*.
She *seems to* be unhappy.
It seems to me that she is unhappy.
You *seem to* think.....
It doesn't seem to be of any use to any one.
They *seem to* like each other.

Apparently, they like each other.
How old *do you think* I am?——You are eighteen, *I suppose*?
Can you come to dine with us?——No, *I am afraid* I can't.
You have been to Nanking, *if I am not mistaken*.

注意: '我想他不來了' 切不可依中文字的順序說成 "*I think* he will *not* come", 必須照英文的習慣說 *I don't think* he will come (參看第四句),這又是中英文在思想法上不同的一點。

【練習十八】 用上列成語各造一句.

3.44. 【強調斷言 (Emphatic Assertion)】 有時候,我們要加強一句陳述或斷言的語調。這個或用動詞 do 的一種特別用法,或者用某些副詞,或者用雙重否定詞 (double negatives) (§3.45), 或者用疑問式的肯定 (interrogative affirmation)

的一種方法 (§3.46),都可以辦得到。 I *do* feel sorry for him 〔我實在替他可惜〕便是 I feel sorry for him 的一種強調的說法。 其他的例如下:—

Do tell me ['du: tel mi:] everything you know; otherwise I cannot help you.
'Tisn't (=It isn't) that he doesn't know it. He *does know* it [hi: 'dʌz nou it], but he does not want to let people know.
Well, I confess I *did go* [ai 'did gou] to the gambling house.
You need not lie to me. You *did go* [ju: 'did gou] to that place, and many people saw you there.

在這種地方的 do 或 did 總是讀重音的 (平常在疑問句及否定句中 do 或 did 大都讀輕音),而後面的動詞因鄰近的關係而失去了它原有的重音。 這一種強調,英國女人特別喜歡用,即使沒有什麽了不得的強調的意思,也要用它。 例如:—

Please *do write* me often [pli:z 'du: rait mi: 'ɔ:fn].
I *do hope* [ai 'du: houp] that you will quit drinking.
I *do fear* [ai 'du: fiə] something is wrong, dear.
Do be kind ['du: bi: 'kaind] to this poor little boy.

有時只要動詞讀重音也可以表示強調。 有時候用各種副詞。 I am sure 一短語,因爲用得多了,已經減少了強調的力量,以致 *I am sure* you will find him —句實在並沒有像 You will find him 這一句簡短的直言陳述來得確實。 通常陳述句越短越有力。 I dare say 的語勢更加弱了,簡直就是'很可能' (It is quite possible) 或'大概是對的' (You are probably right) 的意思而已。 美國人專門喜歡用 You bet, 或 You bet your life, 或者用一種拉長了聲調的 Sure (即 [ʃ—u—ə]),當做斷言或肯定的一種工具。

You *are* funny. (以强音或重音表明强調)
Do I look like a banker only? I *am* a banker. (出于自命不凡的商人之口)

You ask me whether I am going to see the show? *You bet* I am. (或用下列任何一式:) *Why, of course*, I am. *Certainly* I am. *Sure* I am.
You are *indeed* funny. You are *really* funny.
May I have your dictionary for a moment?——(1) *Why, certainly.* (2) *Certainly.* (3) *Of course.*
I am sure you will like the book.

No doubt,
There is no doubt,
Undoubtedly,
Beyond a doubt,
Beyond any doubt,
Beyond all question,
Without any question,
} **he is the greatest living author in China.**

As sure as eggs is eggs. (=Undoubtedly.) [確實,無疑,的的確確] (斷言的普通方式,注意 is, 非 are)

【練習十九】 試以下列各副詞或副詞短語造句: undoubtedly, unquestionably, decidedly, no doubt, beyond any question, indeed, certainly, I am sure 等.

3.45. 【英文默說法 (Reticence) 和雙重否定詞】 英國人是沈默寡言的民族,他們說起話來有許多斂藏的方式,這在別國語言里或許要用些強有力的副詞來表達. Not half bad 〔着實不錯,不壞〕就等于美國人所用的 Isn't that lovely? / Isn't that grand?, 或等于法國人所用 *ravissant* [ravisɑ̃] (=ravishing, deligthful, 消魂的,怡情的),而和中文的'好極了'相當. 依照英文語言學的一位權威的說法, She is rather good-looking (直譯'還好看') 在英國人嘴里簡直是一句極口誇讚女人容貌的話. 法國人用 *extrêmement* [ɛkstrɛ:mɛmɑ̃] (=extremely, 極) 和 *infiniment* [ɛ̃finimɑ̃] (=infinitely, 無窮) 的地方,英國人只用 very 或 rather 或 pretty.* 雙重否定詞的

* Otto Jespersen 著 *Growth and Structure of the English Language*, p. 2.

用法往往是表強調的這些斂藏的方式之一。*By no means bad* 就是 rather good indeed 的意思，*not half a bad* fellow 就是 quite a nice fellow 的意思。He did*n't half* swear=He swore violently. A *not un*distinguished guest=a very distinguished guest; He was *by no means un*welcome=He was greatly welcome. 試將下列各短語運用在句子里：—

there is no one but knows (=*every one knows*)
not inferior (=*quite up to the mark*)
spent no small amount (=*spent a great deal*)
was not indifferent to (=*did care for*)
a not too clean shirt (=*dirty shirt*)
none too kind (=*rather unkind*)
none too good for him (=*rather bad for him*)

中文里也有'未可厚非' (not to be blamed too much, 或 quite excusable) 或 '不爲無故' (not without reason, with good reason) 一類的表現法。這種雙重否定詞的用法有時非常達意而有用，不過到底有點兒兜圈子，有時或反而覺得矯揉做作，不十分自然。

3.46. 【反問肯定 (Affirmation by a Retort Question)】這種提出一個極其明顯的問題，來確定一件事情的方法，在各國語言中都是極其普通的。例如甲問乙："Do you love her?" 這麼一句，那末最有力的一句回答，該是 "Do I love her?" 這一句反問的力量就是 '何必問得？難道我不愛自己嗎?' (Is it necessary to ask? Do I love myself?) 還有，我們常常把斷言或肯定的句子用一種簡單的問句的形式來表出，如 Isn't it pretty? 〔美不美?〕，意卽 How pretty it is! 〔多麼美呀!〕這一種問句實在是一種感歎句。加于句首的 why 一詞，也

只是當做強調的一種工具，意卽 Of course / Naturally / It is not necessary to ask / Why do you ask that question?

If he should lose, *why*, he has millions in the foreign banks, and can go and live in the foreign concessions [租界].

If the people protest, *why*, I can say I am carrying out Dr. Sun's program of national reconstruction.

If the other generals accuse me of "squeeze" [括地皮], *why*, *don't they* do the same?

Why, of course. Take all you want. I would be only too glad to help you.

Why does he ask about me? *Doesn't he* know me?

(母親問:) *Haven't I* nursed him from his childhood, fed him, cared for him, and brought him up, and given him a chance in life? *Haven't I* sacrificed my whole life for him? And now you ask, "*Do I* love him?"

How dare you say such a thing against your own mother?

Am I the boss, or *is he* the boss? (How dare he interfere with my business?) [到底我是'老大', 他是'老大'? (他竟敢來干涉我的事?)]

否 定

3.50. 【否定】 英文的否定語氣，正如肯定語氣一樣，也大都是靠助動詞 do, be, can, shall, may, must 等加副詞 *not* 的用法。 否定句依靠 do 的地方，還要更多于肯定句呢。 事實上，do not (以及 did not, does not) 是最常用的一種形式。 中國學生最初學英文時就必須學這種形式，中文的'他不知道','他不來'切不可翻成 He not knows / He not comes. 其困難在于忘記了用這個 do 以及同時在動詞形式上所生的變化。 我們說:

肯定語氣	否定語氣
I *come* (*go*, *play*).	I *do* not *come* (*go*, *play*).
I *came* (*went*, *played*).	I *did* not *come* (*go*, *play*).
He *comes* (*goes*, *plays*).	He does not *come* (*go*, *play*).

Cannot, are not, will not, must not 等等形式並無什麼困難。Can not 是 cannot 的強調形式。Came→did come, comes→does come 等變化也發生于疑問句中，所以下列三種形式可供練習：—

現在	過去
(A) 肯定句：He comes	(A) 肯定句：He *came*.
(B) 疑問句：Does he *come*	(B) 疑問句：*Did* he *come*?
(C) 否定句：He does not *come*.	(C) 否定句：He *did* not *come*.

又，注意說 (1) He *need* not come / He *dare* not come, 但 (2) He needs *to* come / He dares *to* come, 以及 (3) *Dare* he *come*? / *Need* he *come*? / 或 Does he *dare to* come? / Does he *need to* come?

【練習二十】 試口述下列各句作爲練習，直至能自然出口無誤爲止。再將下列各句仿照 (A) (B) (C) 三式變換：—

1. He knows that I am here
2. They saw me on Nanking Road.
3. He heard the shot.
4. You spoke to that fellow on the way.
5. They all ran away when the police came.
6. The teacher saw me, but did not see him. (The teacher did not —— me, but —— him).

3.51. 【Aren't, isn't, Mustn't 等】 關于助動詞加 not 的讀音，須勤加練習。有些學生讀了許多年的英文，而不知道這些簡短的形式怎樣才讀得不錯，因此把發音弄得亂七八糟。

Not 這個詞兒，如果不縮成 n't 而和助動詞連在一起時，決不可'讀含糊音' (slurred)，每每仍舊保存"短 o"音 [ɔ]，讀 [nɔt]. Can not 讀 [kæn nɔt]，兩 [n] 合成一個長 [n] 音，但 cannot 卻只有一個 [n] 音，讀 ['kænɔt]. Ain't 作 is not, are not, am not, have not 的縮寫式 (contracted forms) 只見于陋語 (vulgar speech) 中，通常讀書人不用此式.

	慢讀時作	快讀時作	例 句
mustn't	['mʌsnt],	['mʌsn],	You *mustn't* say so.
don't	[dount],	[doun],	I *don't* know.
doesn't	['dʌznt],	['dʌzn],	That *doesn't* matter.
isn't	['iznt],	['izn],	That *isn't* true.
wasn't	['wɔznt],	['wɔzn],	I *wasn't* there.
aren't	[ɑ:nt],	[ɑ:n],	They *aren't* so bad.
weren't	[wə:nt],	[wən],	We *weren't* going to do it.
can't	[kɑ:nt],	[kɑ:n],	I *can't* do it. (Can't 美國音讀 [kænt])
won't	[wount],	[woun],	He *won't* tell me.
shan't	[ʃɑ:nt],	[ʃən],	You *shan't* go away yet.
needn't	['ni:dnt],	[ni:nn],	You *needn't* be afraid.
didn't	['didnt],	[dinn],	That *didn't* do any good.
wouldn't	['wudnt],	[wunn],	It *wouldn't* be wise to take such a step.
shouldn't	['ʃudnt],	[ʃunn],	Why *shouldn't* he go?
couldn't	['kudnt],	[kunn],	That *couldn't* be done.
ain't	[eint],	[ein],	"I *ain't* done nothing wrong by speaking to the gentleman," said Liza, the flower girl.

在 You mustn't do a thing like that 句中，mustn't ['mʌsn] 讀起來比 must not ['mʌs(t) nɔt] 容易而且好聽些. 所以這些縮寫式的讀音非常重要，要多多學習.

【練習二十一】 練習下列各句的讀音：—

1. She *won't* ask me for money.
2. It *couldn't* be true that he was a traitor.
3. I *shan't* do it, anyhow

4. Repetition is good, but you *mustn't* repeat mistakes.
5. You can write poems, *can't* you?
6. *Isn't* he your bosom friend?
7. They *needn't* go to his office now.
8. *Didn't* your brother tell you so?
9. Some boys are studying, and some *aren't*.
10. *Wasn't* it a good idea to go to the Taishan Mountain and look at the sunrise there?
11. Miss Wang *doesn't* want to play volley-ball.
12. You like to have a sea bath, *don't* you?

3.52. 【No ～, Not a ～, Not Any ～, Nothing 等】 我們通常說 There is *no* one, 但 There is *not any* one, 又 I have *no* money, 但 I *cannot* pay. 因此 no 在名詞之前當形容詞用，而 not 則當副詞用. 有名詞時最好用 no. 說 There is *no* one 比說 There is *not any* one 好些. 用 no 的形式往往更其加強語調. 所以 That is *no* easy task 的語調就比 That is *not an* easy task 強些. 照這樣子，我們還有 no good, no fun, no use 等等普通的表現法. 如:—

The pen is *no good*.	It is *no use* talking (或 to talk).
That's *no fun*.	Talking is *no use*.
This camera is *no use*.	It's *no go*. [無濟于事,不行]

This camera is *no use* 的表現力比較 This camera is *not of any use* 更強. 雖然有些作家寫文章很當心，喜歡用 This camera is *of* no use, 但決沒有人把 That's *no fun* 說成 That's *of* no fun. 我們當然可以不說 I do *not* know *anything*, 或 I do *not* know *anybody*, 而說 I know *nothing*, 或 I know *nobody*. 後兩句比較短些，說起來更加容易.

【練習二十二】 試將下列各句中的否定詞改用 no, nobody, nothing, none, 句法可任意變換:—

1. I have not received any answer from him.
2. I have not seen any Chinese in this city.

3. They do not know any way to solve the problem.
4. He doesn't have money to pay me.
5. I tell you I do not have any lover.
6. I asked him but he could not tell me anything.
7. Don't tell this to anybody (any one).
8. This fountain pen cannot be of any use to me.
9. Is this watch any good? (作否定的回答)
10. Does any one know of your coming? (同上)

3.53. 【Few, a Few, Little, a Little】 在英文里，few 和 little 的意義是否定的，而 a few 和 a little 的意義卻是肯定的。如果你跑來向我借錢，我說 "I have *little* money" 時，這就表示我沒有錢借給你。但如我說 "Yes, I have *a little*"，意思就是我願把所有的一點兒錢借給你。I have *little* time for you 意卽 I have not much time for you, 或甚至和 I have no time for you 差不多。He talks *a little* English 應該譯做'他會講一點英文'，但 He talks *little* English 卻是'他英文不大會講'的意思。細讀下列各句:—

You have *little* time left. You'd better hurry up.
I have *a little* time left. What can I do for you?
He knows *a little* French, but does not talk about it.
She knows *little*, but she talks a whole lot.
There is *little* use talking. He will never listen to you.
Oh, it has *a little* use. It will make him know that I do not approve.
I saw *a few* people there, and had a good talk with them
I saw *few* people there, as most of them had gone away.

3.54. 【否定回答中的"No"】 英文里有一種特別的習慣，就是句子本身是否定的時候，句首一定要用 no, 卽使在中文里有時是用'是'或'對'的時候，也是如此。比方說，一個人犯了殺人的嫌疑，法官審判時問他'你沒有把這個人弄死嗎?'，這在中文

里回答起來，如果那人不是他殺的，自然要說'是的，沒有'，如果人是他殺的，那末就該說'不，是我把他弄死的'。可是在英文里回答 "Didn't you kill the man?" 這句問話時，殺了的便說 "*Yes*" 或 "*Yes*, I killed him"，沒有殺便說 "*No*" 或 "*No*, I did not kill him." 設若這個人的確沒有殺人而依照中文的意念來回答一聲 "*Yes*"，那可糟糕了。所以英文句子凡有 not 的，前面都是用 No，切不可用 Yes。像 *Yes*, he will not come 這一類的英文句子簡直是不通到極點了。

(問) Isn't he your brother?
(答) (Yes, he is.) No, he is not.
(問) Have you not got your book?
(答) (Yes, I've got it.) No, I haven't.
(問) You are not going away tomorrow, are you?
(答) No, I am not going. (注意非 *Yes*, I am not going.)
(問) And you don't mind missing this trip?
(答) No, I don't mind. (注意非 *Yes*, I don't mind.)

3.55. 【強調否定】要造成着重的否定詞有種種方法，例如用某些短語，用反問句(如在強調肯定句中)，或者有時用一種明知是不可能的陳述。因爲着重的否定詞非常有用，所以這些短語至少要學得一些。下列各句是些最普通的例子：—

Tsung-chang feels *not the least bit* sorry for his brother's death.
He is *not at all* sorry.
He is *by no means* sorry.
Far from it. (He is *far from being* sorry).
Most certainly not.
Absolutely not.
He does *not* remember *at all* when or how the watch was lost.
I *cannot possibly* allow you to do that.
That watch has *no earthly* use for me.
He has*n't* got *a blessed* ['blesid] penny.
Not a single man remained.

He didn't understand *a single* word of it.
There is *none whatsoever*.
None of your impudence!
None of your nonsense!
He is *not a bit* ashamed.

【練習二十三】 試就上列成語中取出幾個來造句.

有時用一種明知故昧的問句表明否定的語氣，如：—

He a gentleman? (What nonsense that is!)
Am I my brother's keeper? (Is that my duty?)
Chang failed in mathematics? (Chang is the best student in mathematics.)
Chiang an honest man? (You know jolly well he isn't.)
Can the Dragon King be short of treasures? (He is famous for his treasures.)

有些明明是肯定句，卻實在含有否定的力量，特別是常用的 I should worry 這一句，意卽 What do I care? (=That does not worry me)〔我滿不在乎〕. 又如 Catch me going to the church 暗含'我決不去做禮拜，你休想看見我到教堂里去'的意思. 這個和中文的'你聽他的話!'(意卽'你別相信他的話')以及'我怕他!'(意卽'我決不怕他').

3.56. 【"I ain't got nothing"】 在英文陋語里，常常可以聽見 I ain't got nothing, I don't never want no help from nobody, He can't do nothing without my help 這一類的句子. 這種兩個否定詞的結合，看起來意義好像應該是正面的或肯定的(正如代數里的兩個負號變成一個正號一樣)，其實不是，這不過是英文中加強否定語調的一種方法而已. (例如蕭伯訥的'賣花女'中那個賣花女說的話便多此例). He can't do nothing 實在是 He can do nothing 的意思. 這種否定詞的重複，在說者不過是盡力想把否定的意義說得明白，生恐用一個

否定詞，人家或許聽不清楚.* 不過在高等社會人士的談話中，這種重複否定詞是用不來的.

反之，在各別的否定短語或子句中，要得意思更加明白，那末把 not 重複一遍，倒是非常必要的. 比方說: He would*n't* come to your house, *not even* the King himself should a k him to/He would *never* take opium, *not even* as a medicine/He would *not* take a bath, *not even* if you offer him all the chocolates in the world. 同樣地，在 He cannot write a single decent Chinese essay, *neither* in peh-hua〔白話〕, *nor* in the literary language〔文言〕這一句里，用 neither . . . nor 大概要比用 either . . . or 來得明白，雖則用 either . . . or 也沒有錯.

3.57. 【條件否定】 上節所講的在否定子句或短語中這種 not 的重複，在英文里極其常見. 假如有人請你替他寫一封英文信，而你雖然當時事情忙得很，卻又不便回絕他，那末你當然要回他一句 "*Not now*, I am afraid" (參看北京話的'現在不'). 這叫做'條件否定'或'局部否定' (**Conditional Negation or Partial Negation**). 以下再舉一些例子:—

(九月里的一天早晨的問答) Who will come and take a sea bath with me?——*Not I.* (= Others may go, but not I.)

Didn't he give the fellow some money also?——*Not he!* (=He is a miser.)

Are you going on the same boat with him?——*Not if* I can help it. (=I will not go on the same boat, if I can avoid it.)

Hasn't he published a book of poems?——*Not any* that I know of.

Will the foreigners never be friendly to China?——Some of them, yes, but *not all.* 或: *Not until* you show them a big navy.

* Jespersen: *Philosophy of Grammar*, p. 333.

Will Japan ever stop her aggressions on China?——No, no, *not until* we take measures of actual resistance.

Are you never going to take a little vacation?——*Not until* I finish this book of mine.

Let us start the bonfire now.——*Not so soon*. Wait till the guests have all come.

【練習二十四】 試以下列成語造句: Not now, not I, not so soon, not if, not that, not until.

"All that glitters is not gold" 〔凡閃閃發光的未必都是金子(中看未必中用)〕這句諺語的結構,其奇特的地方只有英文里才有,如果照字面上看起來,好像是'凡閃閃發光的都不是金子',其實是 *Not all* that glitters is gold 這麽一句的意思。

疑 問

3.60. 【疑問】 以上我們講肯定句和否定句的時候,已經說過,問句往往當做強調的斷言或否認的一種形式。還有如 He came 和 Did he come? 這些形式必須多多練習 (§ 3.50)。現在我們講到問句,它有五要類: (1) 只將主語和動詞的順序顛倒一下; (2) 加助動詞; (3) 用疑問代名詞或疑問副詞 (who?, what?, which?, when?, where?, why?, how?); (4) 用過節問句 (**tag-question**); (5) 只用疑問聲調 (questioning tone) 而不調換詞序,也不用疑問詞.* 其中除第五類外,其餘都用'動詞在主語前'的詞序 (或稱'倒置詞序')。

* 雖然如此劃分,卻千萬不可把這五類當做丸藥一般教學生硬吞下去。一有了這種呆記公式的精神,文法便索然無味了。要緊的是教學生知道如何利用每種方式來表達我們的觀念。例如英國人決沒有一個會意識到有這五類的分別的。所以學生僅僅曉得有這些種類,于他還是無用:要在使用它們來表達活的意思的那種能力之中,才顯得出它們的用處來哩.

(1) *Knowest thou* that I am the King of Persia?
(2) *Do you know* that the president has resigned?
(3) *When* did he resign? *Which* president?
(4) So he has resigned, *has he*?
(5) He has resigned? (句末的一個音節用升調'↗').

第一式在古代英文里（例如在'聖經'里）用得非常之多，在近代英文里則改用第二式。有助動詞 can, must 等時，就是依第一類的方法用 Can you?, Must I?, Will he? 等等。

3.61. 【**Will You?, Won't You?**】我們發出肯定問句，希望得到否定的回答，以及發出否定的問句，希望得到肯定的回答，這都是很自然的事。尤以在否定的問句中爲然，這種情形在各國語言中都有。如中文的'豈不是?'含有'是'的意思，'豈有此理!'就是'決無此理!'的意思。不過在實際的慣用法上，這種否定問句，往往因語言的不同而有差別。英文里的 Won't you? 就比中文的'(你)不～嗎?'用起來多得多了。英文里說 Won't you sit down? 是請人家坐，而中文里說一句'不坐一會嗎?'卻是隱隱地暗示人家好走了。所以，我們極常聽見 Won't you have some cakes? / Won't you come with me? / Won't you be so kind as to lend me that book? 這一類的表現法。在這些句子里，通常的形式當然是用 Will you?

【練習二十五】試以下列諸成語造成句子：

Won't you . . . ?
Can't you see that . . . ?
Don't you know that . . . ?
Didn't he say that . . . ?
Why don't you . . . ?
Why did you . . . ?
How could you . . . ?
Aren't you ever . . . ?
Didn't I tell you . . . ?
Didn't you see . . . ?
How is it that . . . ?
Why isn't he . . . ?
Couldn't you . . . ?
Why hasn't she . . . ?
Can't the letter . . . ?
Didn't it . . . ?

3.62.【過節問句 (Tag-Question)】 過節問句,在中英文里都有. You are fifteen years old, *aren't you?* 在心理學上以及文法上都和中文的'你十五歲,是不是?'相同. 這種問句實則是附在陳述句(肯定的和否定的)後面的問句. 從心理學一方面講起來,這句含有'我已經多少相信你是十五歲,但還不敢十分確定'的意思. 又如 He has arrived already, *hasn't he?* 的涵義也就是'我曉得他已經來了,祇還沒有十分的把握'; 所以和 Has he arrived yet? 的意思完全不同. 這種過節問句有時當做一種婉轉的命令,如 Take this away, *will you?*; 有時含有譏諷的意思,如 So you think you are going to get away with it, *don't you?* 〔你以爲這樣就逃得了嗎,是不是?〕(=你休想這樣輕易逃走了); 或者如 So you killed your husband quite innocently, *didn't you?* (我不信你是無罪的).

可是有兩點必須注意: (1) 過節問句中所用的助動詞一定要和前一陳述句中的助動詞相同. He has arrived already, isn't it? 好像和中文的'他來了,是不是?'完全相似,其實是大錯特錯,這 isn't it? 要改爲 hasn't he?, 卽 He *has* arrived already, *hasn't* he? (2) 如果前面一句陳述是肯定的,那末過節問句一定要用否定的,反之亦然.

【練習二十六】 試在下列各句後附以過節問句:—

1. You are going to town this afternoon, ...?
2. They have told you about my coming, ...?
3. You wouldn't want to be late, ...?
4. You don't mind my seeing this letter, ... ?
5. You will keep this secret, ...?
6. He can come by himself, ...?
7. She may decide for herself, ...?
8. You were together with him at college, ...?

9. He suggested this idea to you, ...?
10. You are not going to publish this, ...?

3.63. 【聲調疑問句 (**Tonal Interrogation**) 以及疑問聲調】 問句里還有一種通常是表明驚訝的方式，就是保存原有肯定或否定句的形式，而在句末用一種向上提高的疑問聲調，The president has resigned? ([ðə 'prezidənt‿hæz ri'zaind 末一音節 -'zaind 讀升調) 表明說者對於這消息覺得有點兒驚訝. 在別的情形之下，這種句子祇表示注意或親熱的態度，Yes? 或 Well? 意卽'說下去，把你要說的話告訴我'. Oh, papa, you are going to buy me a sailing boat? Really? Yes? No? [(!)'ou pə'pɑ:!↗ ‖ (?) ju: ɑ: 'gouiŋ tə 'bai mi: ə 'seiliŋ 'bout?↗ |—| (?) 'riəli?↗ |—| (?) 'jes?↗ |—| (?) 'nou?↗ |—|] 這一種詢問的方式簡直教做爸爸的抵擋不住哩.

在英文的問句里，聲調通常越到句末越高，Are you there? 一句讀起來是 [(?)ɑ: ju: 'ðɛə?↗], [ɑ:] 音讀得低，[ju:] 音最高，而 ['ðɛə] 是先低而後漸漸高上去. 不過也有例外. (1) 有疑問詞的問句，如 What is it all about? [(?) 'wɔts‿it‿'ɔ:l‿ə'baut?↘ |—|] 讀起來句末一音節如在陳述句中一樣低下去(卽讀降調). (2) 以 or not 煞尾的問句則起初保持升調，一直到最後的 or not 又低了下去，如: Will you pay me or not? [(?)(') wil‿ju: 'pei mi:↗ | ɔ: 'nɔt?↘ |—|]. (3) 陳述句後附有過節問句時，陳述句照常讀降調，而過節問句本身讀升調.

I. What do you want (降)? [(?) 'wɔt də ju: (或 dju:) 'wɔnt?↘ |—|]
II. Do you want anything (升)? [(?) d ju: 'wɔnt‿'eniθiŋ?↗ |—|]

III. You want something (降), don't you (升)? [ju: 'wɔnt 'sʌmθiŋ ↘ || (?) 'dount∫u:?↗ |—|]

IV. Do you want something (升) or not (降)? [(?) d ju: 'wɔnt 'sʌmθiŋ↗ | ɔ: 'nɔt? ↘ |—|]

3.64. 【間接問句和名詞子句】 我們往往不是眞正提出一句問話，而只是敍述一句問話，如 He asked me *why I came late*. 在這種'間接問句'里，主語和動詞的順序不必像在普通問句里那樣地顚倒。

直接問句	間接問句
Who *are you*?	I know who *you are*.
Where *is he*?	I don't know where *he is*.
Why *didn't he come*?	The teacher asked why *he didn't come*.
What *did he say*?	I didn't hear what *he said*.
What *shall I do*?	The student asked *what he should do*.

照這樣，我們就有許多冠以 what, who, why, how, where, when 等疑問詞的'名詞子句' (**noun clause**). 又, whether 和 if 這兩個詞兒也往往用得着，如 Mr. Li asked *whether* (或 *if*) he might join us / I wish to find out *whether* (或 *if*) he is still there / See *if* you can do it by yourself. 如只就文法而論，那末這些名詞子句都好像當做一個個的詞兒用，就是當做一個名詞看待. 例如:—

He has done it. *How he did it* does not concern us.

Whether we are going to have a good or bad government depends on ourselves entirely.

How old she is is not for me to ask.

像 Find out *what is the trouble* (=what the trouble is) 句中的這種詞序，不妨認爲正常的 (非倒置的), what 當主語, is 當動詞 (參看: Find out *who is there*). 但如 Find out *how*

is that to be done (不用 how that is done) 以及 *How old is she* is not for me to ask 這類句子，認眞說起來是不對的，雖則有許多英文作家也常犯這種毛病.

間接問句而用直接問句的形式的，卻極其少見，如: The servant opened the door and told me his master was out. He said the master had left word to say that he would be at the club from four to half past five this afternoon, and *would I* be willing to go and meet him there.

【練習二十七】 試以下列成語及名詞子句造句:—

1. Ask whether.
2. I don't know if.
3. I don't see how.
4. Go and see if.
5. Can't understand why.
6. He can't remember when.
7. Don't know why.
8. How or when he escaped.
9. Who has broken the window.
10. Who is in the room.
11. What that fellow's name is.
12. How long this meeting will be.
13. When the train is to arrive.
14. When the boat is leaving.
15. Whether this is true or not.
16. If the rain has stopped.
17. If dinner is ready.

可 能 語 氣

3.70. 【可能語氣】 有一種句子是表明'命令', '願望', 或推測'的，只說什麼事'也許是'實在而不是說一定實在，或者要

想做什麽事而不是做的是什麽事。這種句子用得着 may, can, must, will, shall, dare, need, ought 一類的助動詞。這些助動詞有的在前幾段（肯定,否定,和疑問）里講過。這並非說這些可能句就不是肯定或否定的句子,但是句子當中的確有這麽一種,非仔細研究不可。什麽事'是'實在的,以及什麽事'也許是'實在的,這其間的區別極其重要,凡僅僅是'願望'或'可能'的事,應該避免把它說得好像是實事。例如'我希望你來'一句,我所希望的是'你來',但是你來不來我當然不能代你確定,你也許來,也許不來,你或者可以來,或者不能來。這一類的句子在本書內都叫做'可能句',因爲它們都是表明或許發生,或者可能的事情。即如上面'我希望你來'這一句,有些初學英文的人往往說成 I hope *you come*, 其實應該說 I hope *you will come*. 因爲 you come 是表明實在的動作,而 you will come 才是表明可能的事實。

3.71. 【命令·請求·提議等等】有時我們要人家做一件什麽事。這不一定都用命令口氣;有時或者是謙恭的請求,或者是友誼的勸告,或者是虔誠的願望。當然囉,最簡單的形式還是直接命令,例如: Go and fetch water! 這種句子總是對聽者而發,主語 you 通常是——雖然不都是——省略了。有時候,尤其是同時有兩三個人接受命令,我們要加上這個 you, 如: *You* wash the floor, and *you* (指另一人) clean the window. 倘是人數更多或者更不同,那末通常用 shall, should, is to, are to 等。例如: The third-year boys *are to* come in first and take the front rows, the second-year boys *shall* march in when the bell rings, and the first-year boys *will* follow after them. 如果連說話的人也包括在內,平常是用 let us

(let's), 如 *Let's* have a game, 或者更和婉一點,說: *Let's* have a game, *shall we?*

可是,實際上,直接命令很少用,即使對於僕役,也甯可說得溫和一點. 因此命令,請求,或婉轉的提議這三者之間很難劃出一道鴻溝來. 我們對用人說: *Will you* bring me some cold water? 或 *Will you* look after the baby? Will you? 和 Will you please? 大概是最普通的形式. 但如我們要請一個醫生到家里來,即 Will you? 還嫌過於像命令口氣,通常改說: *Can you* come to my house now?, 或者說 *Could you* come to my house now?, 那就更好了, (因爲語氣更加間接一點).

作爲友誼的忠告的,大概普通是用 You have better 或 You had better (go). 當我們用虛擬詞的形式 (subjunctive forms) should, would, could, might 的時候,語氣總比較更加間接,不怎麽像是命令. 有一種極其間接的方法,就是用 I should, 如 *I shouldn't* reply to him at all, (if I were you).

【練習二十八】 試以下列短語造句,以表明命令,請求或忠告:—

1. will you?
2. will you please?
3. you + 動詞
4. will some of you?
5. may I trouble you to?
6. would you care to?
7. can you?
8. could you?
9. you should
10. you ought to
11. the boy shall
12. you had (you'd) better (附加不用 to 的不定法)
13. you have (you've) better
14. will you be so kind as to?
15. try to

3.72. 【"Shall" 和 "Will"】 Shall 和 Will 的用法,有些學生感到困難. 其實這個很簡單,只要明白了下面這兩種事實,便一點也不覺得什麽困難了.

(1) **I shall, We shall** 表明單純未來 (simple future .

(2) **He will, It will, You will** 亦復表明單純未來 (並表明願望).

It will rain 僅僅是 *It is going to* rain 的意思，絲毫沒有願望的觀念在內，*I shall* be very busy 也就是 *I am going to* be very busy 的意思. 否則 shall 總是表明命令，而 will 總是表明願望的. 比方說，一個人失足落在黃浦江里，他心里該有 "Nobody *will* save me and I shall be drowned" 〔沒有人來救我，我要淹死了〕這麼一個念頭，而跳進黃浦江里去自殺的人便是 "Nobody *shall* save me; I will be drowned" 〔沒有人肯搭救我 (意卽幫我忙，解除我的煩惱)；我情願死了〕的存心了. Shall 和 Will 的用法見下表:—

單純未來		命令: 常用 "shall"
I shall	We shall	
You will	You will	願望: 常用 "will"
He will	They will	

我們中國學生應該常時學習 I shall, We shall, Shall I?, Shall we?, 把它們的意思弄明白了. 例如:—

I shall be too tired to write this evening.
I am afraid *I shall* be late.
We shall not be back for supper.
Shall I show you how it is done?
Shall I bring you a hot water bag?
Shall we go and ask him?

問句中用 Will I?, 這未免太沒意思了，我們只要心里情願了，難道還要問自己是否願意嗎?

可是 You will 當作一種命令式，有時比 You shall 更強，如：*You will* pack out at once〔你給我滾蛋〕。此處 You will 卽我知道你要照我所吩咐的做去，不得違拗。又，英國人有許多地方因爲表現法的經濟的關係，往往用 I'll 代 I shall，如：*I'll* (實卽 *I shall*) not be able to go.

【練習二十九】將下列各句中的 be going to, want to, wish to 等改用 will 和 shall：—

1. I am going to tell you everything.
2. I do not want to be disobeyed.
3. It is going to be Thursday tomorrow.
4. We are going to stay until midnight.
5. They are going to stay till morning.
6. Are we going to have plenty to eat?
7. Am I going to have my pay this week-end?
8. I told him not to go, but he wants to go.

3.73. 【希望和願望】在英文里，希望(hope)和願望(wish)稍有差別。通常我們所'希望'的是'可以'(may)或者'將要'(will)發生的事；但是我們所'願望'的是十分靠不住的，這種靠不住的事'或許'(might)或者'會'(could)發生。所以用 *hope* 時常附以 will, may, can, 而用 wish 時常附以 were, could, would, 或者用動詞的虛擬過去式 (subjunctive past).

I hope you *will* come.
I hope you *will* be satisfied.
I hope they *can* agree with us.
I wish I *were* dead, (but I am alive).
I wish I *could* help you, (but I can't).
I wish you *would* not talk like that.
Do you know who sent the letter? —— I wish I *knew* (卽 I don't know).
I wish you *could* see him fighting against the whole bunch of them.

I hope it *isn't* true.
I wish it *were* true, (but it is not).

在 I wish to, I hope to 之後所用的動詞當然都是無限式.

什麼是事實以及什麼祇是願望或欲望,這在英國人的思想法里迥然不同. 在願望的情形中,動詞每每用無限式,即使在平常看起來要用過去或者要加 -*s* 的時候,也是如此. 例如: He commanded that the witness *tell* (非 told) everything he knew before the court 和 Our *wish* was that he *leave* (非 leaves) the city. 又如 God *save* (非 saves) the king! 和 Long *live* (非 lives) the republic! 還有一種表明願望的普通方法,是用 may, 如在 *May* God bless you! / *May* you live to repent this! 等句中. 如果願望的是一件未曾發生過的事,往往藉感歎的詞句加 if 來表達: *If* I only had more money! / *If* I could only see her face once more! / *If* I only knew!

【練習三十】 用下列各短語造句:—

1. I hope you will (can).....
2. I wish you would.....
3. I wish I could.....
4. I wish I had.....
5. The master wishes to.....
6. Let us hope that.....
7. The mother hopes to.....
8. If my father would.....
9. If I could.....
10. If I only had.....

3.74. 【准許・禁止・義務等】 英文里准與不准的表現法非常簡單,和中文里的相彷彿. May 和 can 都是表明准許和禁止 (permission and prohibition) 的,但准與不准 (allowed to, not allowed to) 的觀念極其嚴格的時候,卻只可用 may, 不可用 can.

May (*Can*) I go out, sir?
May (*Can*) I go now?
You *may* (*can*) go.

You *may not* (=are not allowed to) tell it to others.
Passengers *may not* (=are not allowed to) smoke in their cabins.
Students *may* (=are allowed to) pay their tuitions in instalments [分期繳費].

表明'義務' (obligation) 的各種觀念是用 must, have to, should, is to, is supposed to, is expected to 以及 ought to. Ought (由 "owe" 而來) 所表明的責任 (duty) 觀念較多,但也往往可以表明一種'理論假設' (theoretical assumption) (即'論理應該如此') 或'推測' (conjecture) 的觀念. 這許多詞兒的慣用法,茲舉例如下:

You *must* (not) tell him.
Must you go now? Do you *have to* go?
Must you tell him everything? (It is unnecessary and foolish to do so.)
You *should* be more careful.
You *ought to* tell him, (which you don't).
Mr. Ellis *ought to* know, (he is an expert [專家]).
I thought that *ought to* be all right, (but it turned out to be otherwise).
You *ought to* be ashamed of yourself, (but you are not).
You *are* not *supposed to* talk in class.
He *is to* (=*is expected to*) arrive tomorrow.
You *are expected to* hand in your compositions.
You *are to* go and fetch him.
He *is supposed to* be here already, (but he is late).
You *are* not *supposed to* know, (but I tell you secretly).

說起來很有趣,現在通常多用 is to (am to 等) 和 has to (have to 等) 來表明'義務'的觀念,尤其是用于過去和未來的時制. 我們不可說 He *must* go yesterday, 應該說 He *had to* go yesterday; 也不可說 He *will must* go tomorrow, 應該說 He *will have to* go tomorrow. Is to 意即 is expected to 或 is supposed to, 往往指未來所要做的事. 因此有下列三種形式:

(過去) He *had to* pay. We *were to* meet that day.
(現在) He *has to* (=*must*) pay. We *are to* meet often.
(未來) He *will have to* pay. We *are to* meet this afternoon.

The Prince *was to* visit the Capital on the 12th 一句是說在那時候太子還沒有訪遊那個城,不過已經準備好了在十二號那天去訪遊的.

【練習三十一】 試以 had to, has to, will have to, are supposed to, is expected to, ought to, was to, were to, is to 等成語造句. 再以 must 造成數句,將其改成過去或未來時制,試看此種表現法應如何變換.

3.75. 【推測和可能 (Possibility)】 May, can, must 用起來另外還有一種意味,卽'推測'的意味. 假如有人失去了一件東西,那東西究竟是誰偸去的,可以作種種推測,如下例:—

Who *can* it be?
It *cannot* be Mr. Y——, for he was not in the room.
Can it be the cook?
It *may* be the cook's nephew who was here alone.
It *may* be he, or it *may* be a burglar.
No, it *cannot* be the cook or his nephew, and there were no burglars here. It *must* be the policeman

因此有 Can it be? (又 It cannot be), It may be, 和 It must be 這三種形式. 關于 can, 可比較中文'會不會是他?'的'會'字; 關于 must, 可比較'一定是巡警'的'一定'兩字. Must 用起來往往含有這種意味. 如:—

You *must* be very hungry now.
He *must* be dying now.
That *must* be the real reason why he came here. now.
If C—— is your father's class-mate, he *must* be well over forty
I will go and take his place. He *must* be getting tired now.
I think they *must* be brother and sister, for they look very much alike.
We didn't wait for you long. I knew something *must* have kept you.

英文 "possibility" 〔可能〕和 "probability" 〔蓋然〕這兩種表現法在中文里本來沒有，直至最近幾年才有 '～之可能'，'～之可能性' 的成語，probability 只有在哲學里譯爲 '蓋然(性)'，然而語體文里簡直不用 probable 和 probably 直到現在還沒有相當譯語（只有時勉強用 '大約'，'大概' 代替，不過還不能把這意念完全表達出來）。不過這兩種表現法在英文里卻非常重要，我們學英文時很早就要學習怎樣用法。

【練習三十二】 (1) 試用下列各短語造成句子:—

It may or it may not be.....　　It is probable that .....
You may or may not.....　　Probably. Possibly.
It is possible that.....　　The people are likely to.....

(2) 討論某人缺席之可能理由，用 Can it be that?, It may be that, It must be because 等造句.

(3) 句中再用 must, 作爲猜測之意.

3.76 【純粹假設: Would, Should, Could, Might】 Would, should, could, might 這些詞兒，不妨假定它們是 will, shall, can, may 的過去形。但其實它們所表明的卻完全是另外一類的意念。例如: If you put your finger in the fire, what *would* happen? Your finger *would* get burnt, *wouldn't it?* 這件事在任何時都是眞的。所以這一種陳述可以叫做 '一般假設' (**general supposition**)。

每當我們把一件事當做一般假設或純粹假設 (**pure supposition**) 時，我們都用 would, should, could, might. He *can* do it 是的的確確說他能夠做 (事實)，但 He *could* do it 卻是說我以爲他能做 (I suppose that he can do it)，雖則他沒有做過 又如. China is not strong, but China *could* be strong,

if she should have gained her political and territorial integrity / You have not burnt down the whole house this time, but you *might* have, so next time be more careful 等都是表明純粹假設而非事實. 假設當然也可以是眞的. 我如說 "Mr. P—— *may* be sick", 這是一種可能的事實. 但如說 "Mr. P—— *might* be sick, for I haven't seen him for the last few days", 這完全是我個人的假設, 卽純粹假設. 所以 may 與 might 的分別, 完全在於說者的意向, 與當時的實際情形毫無關係.

這種事實與想像的區別(第十四章內有詳細的論述,可參看)極其重要,要多多學習,因爲中文文法里沒有這一種東西. 許多中國學生所以不會用 I should think, I should like, Would you?, Could you? 這一類極其通馴的表現法的,就是因爲他們不懂得一般假設或純粹假設的觀念. 可是英文要講得好的話,那末把 I should like, Could you? 等用得適當,也是首要的條件之一. 村夫俗子喜歡把事實陳述得非常直率,而讀書人對于不十分清楚的事情決不會說得太確定的. 例如 It *would be* all right 一句就比 It *is* all right 說起來高雅一點. *Could you* come to my house? 也比較 *Can you* come to my house? 客氣而婉轉,因爲這好像是說 Could you come, if I should ask you?, 把它當作一種假設的事情. 這一句的口氣不像說 Can you come or can you not? 時把它當做一種事實的問句那麼直接.

What *will* you do now? (What are you going to do?)——事實的問句
What *would* you do, (if you were in my place)?——假設
Can you do it? (Are you able to do it)?——事實

Could you do it, (if I should ask you)?——假設

Suppose you put water over the fire, what *would* happen? *Would* the fire get wet?

Suppose you put oil into the fire, what *would* happen? You *might* burn down the whole house, *might* you not?

Look out! you may fall down. 回答: But I don't (fall down). 答辯: But you *might*.

I should like to see you try. (I suppose I like.)

I should think he feels rather ashamed of it.

Would you have tea or coffee? What *would* you rather have, tea or coffee? (婉轉的問句)

Why don't you do it? 回答: I suppose I *could* do it, but I don't want to.

Will you help him? He is short of money. 回答: I *would* if I *could* (but the fact is, I can't). [只要我有力量, 我總肯幫忙, (但事實上我沒有力量). 參看文言 '固所願也,其奈力不逮何?', '心有餘而力不足.']

You *should* help him if you *could*. And I believe you *could* if you *would*. (You *will* not, that's why you say you *can't*). [如果你有力量, 你該幫幫他的忙. 我相信, 只要你肯, 一定可以幫得來的,(因爲你不肯, 所以你說不能). 參看中文文言 '非不能也, 是不爲也.']

3.77. 【虛擬子句 (Subjunctive Clause)】 我們常用 if 表明一種條件的說法, 如 *If* it rains, *If* he comes 等. If he *comes* 和 If he *should come* 之間的差別, 正如 Can you come? 和 Could you come? 兩者的不同.

Tell him to wait *if he comes*. (It is quite possible that he will come.)

Tell him I am not at home, *if he should come*. (He seldom comes, and I don't wish to see him.)

If he is there, tell him to come at once. (He may be there.)

If he should be there again, bring him to me. (He has been there once, and I have told him not to go there again, but if he should do so, bring him to me.)

If I am elected, send me a telegram.

If I were (should be) *you*, I would resign at once.

一件事還是把它當做一種可能的事實呢，還是當做一種純粹假設，這完全看說者的意思而定。所以 if . . . is, if . . . comes 等形式用于比較似乎眞實的假設，而 if . . . should 則用于表明比較近于理論的假設。此外還有 If he *come* (非 comes), If you *be* (非 are) 等形式，這種動詞是虛擬語氣 (subjunctive mood)；其意義和 if he should come, if he should be 相同。因此，當假設明明是非眞實的時候，我們甚至要用動詞的過去形，如 if I *knew*, if I *were* (意卽 I don't know, I am not)。茲將各種形式列表如下：—

1.	If he comes.	If I am.
2.	If he come.	If I be.
3.	If he should come.	If I should be.
4.	Should he come.	Should I be.
5.	If he came.	If I were.

2 至 4 三式的意義實際上完全相等。關于動詞變化的更詳細的研究 (if he had come 等)，參看十三，十四兩章。

我們可以把 'if 子句' 用在句末，這種用法是英文所特有的。在中文里本來沒有這種句法，一直到數年前實行 '語體歐化' 以後才用了起來。比方現在我們可以說 '此人野心很大，倘是我的推料不錯' ("This man has great personal ambition, if I am not mistaken in my judgment")。這種句法是由口語的風格中來的。這 'if 子句' 好比一種 '回想' (**after-thought**)；說起來比較容易，比較通俗，比較接近我們的思想法，因爲不到這一句的陳述的末了，我們往往還想不到這個 'if 子句'。

【練習三十三】 Should 往往用于 if 之後。試以 if . . . should 之結構多造數句。倘常如用此結構，則句中另一部分卽用 would.

感 情 吐 露

3.80. 【感情吐露】 一切的詞兒，都有感情的效能，這種效能因說者，聽者，以及說話時的情形和聲調等而有種種不同. 丈夫出門去了半年然後回來的時候，那末親愛的妻子嘴里喊出一聲 "Oh, Johnny", 可以把千言萬語都說不盡的心思訴說出來，這種意思大概最老練的演說家也沒有這種本事能用言語把它表達出來哩. 有時候，'救世軍'* 的會員說得舌敝脣焦也不能感化過來的醉漢，或許聽了這一聲 "Oh, Johnny", 反而可以清醒了哩. 所以，感情吐露有一種價值，這種價值與句子的長短或文法的完全不完全都毫無關係. 通常感情吐露都是簡短的，而且恰到好處，能把許多文法特點表現出來.

我們在興奮的辰光，通常是把浮在心頭最緊要的幾個詞兒說了出來. 這一類普通的表現法，如 Oh! / Ah! / Amen! ['ɑ:-'men]〔亞們（耶穌教祈禱終時之結語，意即 '心願如此')〕/ Well! / What? 戰壕里的兵士一看見那敵人放起毒氣，要想給他伙伴一個警告，這時他自然只能直截了當喊出 Gas! Gas! 其他用一個名詞的感歎句，如 An iceberg! / A whale! / A shark! / Hot cross-buns!†〔剛出籠的熱饅頭!〕/ The police! / The proctor! / A great idea!〔好主意!〕/ My pistol! / My purse! 只有動詞而沒有主語的感歎句，如 Forward march!

---

* '救世軍' (Salvation Army) 是基督教的一派，以教化衆庶，救濟貧窮爲宗旨，其組織採用軍隊制度，創於西元 1877 年，創立人爲美國牧師 William Booth (1829—1912).

† 印有十字架之甜麵包或甜餅，通常于耶穌受難日（復活節前之星期五）食之.

〔開步走!〕 / Halt!〔立定!〕 / Rest!〔少息!〕 / Shoot! / Raining!; 只有主語而略去動詞的，如 Well, I never! (heard of or saw such a thing) / He dead? 還有些只用一個形容詞或副詞表明的感歎句，如 How silly! / Excellent! / Fine! / Good! / Very good! / Gorgeous! / Marvellous! / Now! / Never again! 另外又有些表明一種情境或一個很短的短語，如 A man in the water! / The pity of it! / One a penny! 有幾個感歎句完全是聲音，如 Tut! / Pshaw! / La, la! / Hurrah! / Whoop! / Z—z—z—z—z 等等.

此外有幾種特別用于感歎的文法形式，應加注意：用 That, To, If 起頭的，以及用疑問的詞兒(而主語和動詞的順序並不顛倒):—

(1) *That* you, too, should turn against me!
Oh, God! *that* bread should be so dear,
And flesh and blood so cheap!
(2) *To think* that I shall never see you again!
To think you could be so ungrateful!
(3) *If* the rain would only stop!
If I could go to see him now!
(4) *How* beautiful! *How* beautiful that is!
What fun! *What* happiness!
What a sight! *What* a poet!
What to do? *What* to say?

3.81. 【詈詞】 英國人罵起人來也正如中國人一樣的多，雖則他們另有詈罵的方式. '詈詞' (swear-words) 所表明的意義往往非其他工具所能傳達的那樣有力. 一個英國的師長拿 "You pack of consumptive little Maltese monkeys!" 〔(意譯) 你們這羣活像瑪爾泰島上的猴子的癆病鬼!〕 這麼一句罵他

的部下，部下馬上就服服貼貼聽從他的命令了．罵男人 "a dirty dog"，罵女人 "a cat"，都可以省掉用許多很長的形容詞的麻煩，("a dirty dog" 相當于中文的'狗 × 的'，'狗娘養的'；"a cat" 相當于中文的 '婊子'，'賤人')．最要緊的一層就是：罵人要罵得得當，而且要和當時的環境恰巧相稱．

罵人原本是極其粗鄙的事，可是在我們中國語言里面，很粗濁難聽的話仍然出于我們尊輩長上之口，並無顧忌．所以我們學英文，至少也應該學習幾個有效而比較文雅一點的詈罵的方式．有些方便而又不十分粗俗的詈詞，如：Bother! / Bother it!/ Botheration!〔討厭！討厭得很！〕/Dash it (all)!〔該死！糟糕！〕/ Hang it (all)!〔該死！〕/ The cursed ——!〔可惡的～！，"畜生"〕/ You blasted fool!〔傻瓜！〕/ I'm blowed (或 damned, 或 dashed) if I know!〔我絕對不知道（我如果知道，我不姓～！）〕/ That blessed son of yours!〔你那個寶貝兒子！〕/ By (St.) George!〔斷然，的確〕/ By Jove (=Jupiter)!〔必定，誓必〕等等，即在基督教徒聽來，也並不覺得十分不入耳，又如 Ye gods!〔天呀！〕與 Great heavens!〔奇哉！怪哉！噯呀！〕女人們可以用一些比較温和的方式，如 Dear me! / Oh dear! / Oh my! / My goodness! / Good gracious!〔皆'呵呀！''噯呀呀！'之意〕等．至于 damned 這個詞兒（如 a *damned* thing, *damn* it!）以及它的'俚語形式'(slang form) darned 通常不可在女人面前罵了出來；雖則在某些社會里面極其通用無忌，雖則聖保羅 (St. Paul) 在聖經里也屢次用到這個詞兒．但在極其託熟的一班人中間，有時這個通俗的 damned 不妨稍微隨便用到它．我們可以用

dash 來代替 damn; 用 bloody (*bloody* nuisance, all *bloody* fine, *bloody* quick) 的地方,可以用 blessed 代替 (如 not a *blessed* cent, 但 *awful* ['ɔ:ful] nuisance, *awfully* ['ɔ:fli] good, I'm *awfully* ['ɔ:fli] sorry).

詈詞的戒律也不時變換,依照人們的信仰而改變. 例如現在的人不復相信有地獄,不再怕地獄里的火煉了,所以用 "To the hell with ——!" 便毫無關係,因爲人聽了心里不像從前人聽了那樣的難堪. 指着上帝罵人,通常是不可以的,雖則天主教把人逐出教門時所用的正式呪文里,像這種詈詞可以尋得出最長的例子來.

第四章　人與事物及其性

4.10. 【事物的種類】 本章所論述的是涉及以名詞表現事物種類的那些英文意念。 前面已經說過 (§ 2.15), 英文的名詞或指有形的東西 (*talles*, *chairs*), 或指無形的東西 (*air*, *noise*, *possibility*, *power*), 或指半有形半無形的東西 (*government*, *applause*, *happiness*, *middle*, *end*). 它們或者指具體的東西 (*table*, *chair*), 或者指一種動作或事件 (*promotion*, *examination*, the *fall* of a government), 或者指一種情況 (*poverty*, *danger*, *prosperity*) 或品性 (*kindness*, *stupidity*, *thinness*). 從英文法的觀點看起來, 這些都當做名詞看待。 此外還應該再加上名詞子句, 如: *That he is dead* is certain / *How much he took* nobody knows. 所以英文的 things 里所包括的意念比中文的 '事物' (=things and events) 多些, 因爲 '事物' 不能把抽象的 '品性' (如 *kindness*, *thinness*) 包括在內。

這些名詞的分類法, 文法學家各有不同, 大半是依它們的意義而分的, 如 '專名', '公名', '物質名詞'。 我們不久便可以明白, 像這種籠統呆板的區別決不容易成立, 或者不十分合乎邏輯。而且, 我們不必把一切的名詞放在任何分類的系統里, 也可以考慮名詞是屬于那些意念不同的種種類別, 英國人正是這樣的分法。 下列的這種區別, 我們必須弄個明白。

(1) 程序和結果 (Process and Result).....*heating*: *heat*.　　[*coins*.
(2) 抽象和具體 (Abstract and Concrete)...*food*: *food-stuffs* / *money*:
(3) 公名和專名 (Common and Proper).....*people*: *Chinese*.
(4) 集合名詞 (Collectives).....*army*, *clergy*, *class*.
(5) 質　　詞 (Mass-Words) .....*paper*, *water*, *milk*.
(6) 人和事物 (Persons and Things) .....*writer*: *inkstand*.

程序和結果

4.20. 【程序和結果】 比方在 the *building* of a *building*, the *painting* of a *painting* 這一類的短語之中，這第一個 building 或 painting 指明一種程序，而第二個指明那種程序所生的結果。 一個含有動作或運動的意味，一個卻沒有這種運動的意味。 參看中文的 '他所畫的畫' 和 '佩帶' (=君子所佩，"what a gentleman carries", 卽寶石，腰帶，佩劍等)。 在英文字彙里面，這一類的區別很多，我們應該考實名詞是否指的一種程序或動作，抑或是否僅指一件事物，情況或品性 (這個或是或不是那程序的結果)。 比較下列各名詞:—

動 作	非動作 (事物·品性·情況)
wedding day	his *marriage* (指結果)
heating	*heat*
allowing	*allowance* (=money allowed) [津貼]
immunization	*immunity* from disease [免疫]
differentiation, distinction	*difference*
presentation	*present* (=thing presented) [贈品]
identification	*identity* of person
impregnation	*pregnancy* [懷孕] (指情況)
conception, conceiving	*concept* (=idea) [觀念]
deception	*deceit*
toleration	*tolerance*
recording	*record* (=what is recor'ed) [記錄]
investigation	*findings* (investigation [調查] 的結果)

4.21. 【指結果的 '程序詞' (Process-Words)】 可是指明程序的詞兒，往往用以指明那程序的結果，這也是很自然的事。 The *improvement* (improving) of the country [國家情形的改善] 的意義當然可以轉移到 the improvement actually made

〔實際的改良或改善的地方〕上去，如 I noticed many *improvements* (=things added, etc.) The *destination* (destining) of a boat's voyage〔航程的終點〕的意義當然可以轉移到 the port to which the boat sails or is destined〔船所駛向或趨向的港口〕，如 The *destination* is Amoy〔目的地是廈門〕. 又如烤鵝或炙肉的皮，因爲嚼起來格格的響 (crackles)，所以這種皮就叫做 *crackling*，長袍的襯里因爲是用來襯在里面 (used for lining the inside)，所以叫做 lining. 其餘的實例如下:—

程序詞	所指的結果	舉 例
washing	.....things to be washed	(*this week's washing*) [這一星期洗的衣服]
gathering	.....crowd gathered	(*a large gathering*) [很大的集會]
following	.....group of followers	(*a large following* [從者衆多]
division	.....an army unit	(*the division commander*) [師長]
distinction	.....fame and honour	(*a man of distinction*) [名人]
description	.....type, kind	(*people of every description*) [各式人等]
information	...informed news	(*information leaked out*) [消息洩漏出去]

這種意義上的轉變很普通，在文法上並無何種困難. 但是這種分別不可不注意. 一所屋子里的熱水汀不暖，只可說 The *heating* of a house is bad, 不可說 The *heat* is bad〔熱氣不好〕，又，譬如歌聲極其刺耳，這是由于唱得不好 (The *singing* is atrocious)，不能錯怪了歌曲 (song) 本身，說是 The *song* is atrocious〔歌曲極其刺耳〕.

【練習三十四】 試說明下列各句中斜體字所指的是動作還是非動作:—

1. During Wilson's second *administration*, America entered the World War.
2. You lack *imagination* (=imaginative power).
3. A lady's *accomplishments* are: tinkling the piano and speaking a few French phrases, etc.

4. Supply is influenced by *consumption* (=consuming).
5. He is a victim of *consumption* (=tuberculosis).
6. *Fertilization*: *fertility*. *Communication*: *community*.
   Imprisonment: *prison*. *Education*: *knowledge*.

抽象名詞和具體名詞

4.30. 【抽象名詞和具體名詞】 抽象名詞是代表抽象的觀念的. 如中文 '福', '祿', '壽' ("good fortune", "official position", "longevity") 的意思便是抽象的觀念, 而 '百子千孫', '出將入相', '年逾古稀' ("having a hundred children and a thousand grand-children", "being prime ministers at court and generals in the field", "living to seventy years of age") 便是和 '福', '祿', '壽' 相當的具體的觀念. 具體的觀念可以改變, 而抽象的意念仍然保存; 例如現在的人不再把 '百子千孫' 和 '福' 合而爲一了; 如果有人只拿到五十元的月薪而要教育七個兒子七個女兒, 他大概要叫苦連天, 自認晦氣, 以爲是受了天譴哩.

因爲中文在意念和幻想上都是極其具體的, 所以中國學生常常不懂得英文名詞的抽象的意念. 倘使和中文比較起來, 那是英文富于抽象的詞兒了. 例如 "age" 是 '年齡' (=*year-year*), 但 "size" 的抽象觀念, 中文卻用 '大小' (=*big-small*) 這兩個更具體的詞兒來表達. 代表抽象名詞的詞尾 '~性' 字, 如 '伸縮性' (=*extend-shrink-character*, "elasticity"), '可分性' (=*may-divide-character*, "divisibility"), 還是近年來受了西洋文化的影響的一種文字上的革新. 因此, 如 '這篇小品文的內容和形式都很完美' 一句決不可說 "The essay is perfect *in form and*

conient" (抽象的形式和內容),必須說 "*Its form* and *contents* are perfect" (具體的形式和內容). 這一種分別,中國學生之難于把握,有如許多人往往把 church 〔教堂〕(具體的) 和 religion 〔宗教〕(抽象的) 簡直分不清楚的情形相仿. 他們都以爲耶穌站在教堂窗子的外面 (*outside* the church window), 向那些在教堂里面禱告着的青年喊道 '讓小孩子到我這里來' ("Suffer the little children to come unto me") (新約聖經馬可福音第十章第十四節),這是決不可能的事,以爲招呼他們出了教堂好像便是叛離了宗教哩.

下列各句中斜體字指抽象的觀念,黑體字指具體的觀念.

A rosy **cheek** is the **sign** of good *health*.

Eating three bowls is surely good *appetite*.

This young man is full of ideas, but he lacks *experience*. I had once a very funny **experience** with him. We went together to see his uncle and get some money from him, and when we **arrived**, he told his uncle to go to the devil.

China is backward in *communication*. She should have more **roads, railways and aeroplanes**

You have too many **churches**, but no *religion*.

You cannot have *justice*, when there **are** too many **clever lawyers**.

Our **politicians** have no *statesmanship*, and our **diplomats** do not understand *diplomacy*. They may be busy the whole day attending **luncheons, dinners**, and making high-sounding, silly **speeches**, but **luncheons** and **dinners** are not *statesmanship*, and fine **speeches** are not *diplomacy*.

Maurice Maeterlinck is against *war* in principle (抽象的 '戰爭'), but he fought in the **war against Germany**, when the latter invaded Belgium.

One can worship *woman* (抽象的 '女人') and hate **woman** (具體的 '女人').

You are against **Wu Pei-fu**, so you are the enemy of the *unification of China*!

You are criticizing the present **government**, so you are a reactionary and an enemy of the *revolution*.

You do not love *me* (無形的'我'), you love only my **money**. (參看: '人財兩空', '風吹鴨蛋殼, 財去人安樂'.)

4.31. 【具體意義的抽象詞 (Abstract-Words)】 在英文里,同一個詞兒往往可以有兩種意義,一是具體的,一是抽象的. 試比較下列各例:—

抽象的意義	具體的意義
He has both *youth* [年輕] and *beauty*.	Our *youths* (=young men) [青年] are corrupt.
That's the *beauty* [美,美點] of the poem.	Isn't she a *beauty* (=beautiful woman) [美人]?
Life [生命,人生] is short.	Many *lives* [性命] have been lost.
We love the teacher for her *kindness* [仁慈,親切].	Thank him for his *kindnesses* (acts of kindness, 種種優待,關切,照顧).
That man has no *brains* [腦筋] (=He is stupid).	He has a big *brain* [腦袋] (=He has a big head).
She is proud of her *looks* [容貌].	She gave him a *look* [看了他一眼].
He is keen in *observation* [觀察].	He makes this *observation* [批評].
With an *air* [樣子] of satisfaction.	The fresh country *air* [空氣].

抽象名詞既極少有可以計數的,我們往往可以看出用單數是指抽象的而非具體的觀念. 例如說 "Dr. Lim* has many *systems*, but no *system*", 這第二個 system 指的是做事時的一種抽象的系統習慣. 同樣地,下列各名詞的複數用在此處是表明具體的觀念:—

Impurities in the water……impure substances [不潔之物].
The *pleasures* of an old man……forms of pleasure [賞心樂事].
Accused of *cruelties* to his wife……cruel acts [虐待的行爲].
Several *possibilities* exist……possible ways [可能的方法].

* 中國方音中只粵閩一帶有以聲母 [m] 收音的,如'林'=Lim; '三'=sam. 官音則概從 [n].

Youthful *follies*..... foolish acts, habits [愚笨的行爲或習慣].

Communication *facilities*.....railways, trains, boats [交通的利器 (如鐵路,舟,車等)].

4.32. 【**A Piece of Folly, a Fit of Anger 等**】 可是,並不是所有的抽象名詞都可以指具體的事物的. 遇有疑惑時,常常可用另一種方法以表達相當的具體觀念. 如'三件傢具'不可說 three *furnitures*, 卻常時可以用 three *pieces* of furniture, 又如'兩起傳染病'不可說 two *infections*, 但可以用 two *cases* of infection. 在我們中國人的心理,如果說 "a *piece* of good luck"〔一塊福氣〕,好像是很奇怪,但是英國人的確常用這一短語以表明一件幸運的事情或事件 (a lucky event or accident). 所以這種 *piece*, *bit*, *case*, *form*, *act* 等詞兒加某種抽象名詞的用法,應該仔細學習:—

A *piece* of good luck, learned nonsense, folly.
Some *bits* of scandal, information, news.
A *fit* of fever, hysteria, anger.
A sudden *attack* of madness, fever.
Several *cases* of theft, malaria, typhoid, criminal neglect.
This strange *form* of pleasure, punishment, corruption.
His *acts* of kindness, cruelty, generosity.
A *stroke* of good fortune.
An *instance* (*example*) of his selfishness, pride, carelessness.

【練習三十五】 試在句中用 case, example, act, form, instance, piece, 等,後加抽象名詞.

公名和專名

4.40. 【公名和專名】 名詞分做公名和專名,這是最普通的分類法. 例如 Ningpo〔甯波〕, Mencius〔孟子〕, Chinese

〔中國人〕, Arnold Bennett 〔亞諾德·貝尼特〕是專名; man 〔人〕, book 〔書〕, table 〔桌〕, story 〔故事〕, city 〔城〕是公名. 依照一些文法書的說法, 專名是某人或某物所特有的名稱, 而公名是一類的人或物所公有的名稱. 任何桌子都可以叫做桌子, 任何城都可以叫做城, 然而只有一個城叫甯波, 只有一個人叫孟子. 這種定義上的區別大概是有用的, 不過這其間要劃一道鴻溝, 卻是不可能的事. 任何 negro 〔黑人〕豈不是都可以叫做 negro 嗎? 那末 negro 是公名呢, 還是專名? Chinese 當然適用于一類的人, 而且中國人之中姓林的 (Lin) 也有許多, 可是 Chinese 和 Lin 都算是專名. 如果 Chinese 算是專名了, 那末 yellow race 〔黃種〕爲什麼又算是公名呢? 還有 moon, sun, earth 〔月, 日, 地球〕還是公名, 還是專名? 又, 如果因爲年年有冬季夏季便認爲 summer, winter (以小寫字母起頭) 是公名, 那末十二月名如 January, February 等以及一星期七天的名字如 Sunday, Monday 等爲什麼又像專名一樣地用大寫字母起頭呢?

所以專名和公名的區別只不過是相對的. 我們覺得專名是比較精確, 比較特別, 比較虛設的, 而公名是不怎麼精確, 不怎麼特別, 不怎麼虛設的. (切記凡名都是虛設的.) 我們抽的香烟叫 Craven "A", 爲什麼不可以叫 Creighton "X", 這也毫無理由. 所以, 名字完全是虛設的. China sea 可作公名, 意卽 '中國的領海', 但如果決定用 China Sea (都用大寫字母) 〔中國海〕* 指 '南海' 的話, 那就是給它取一個比較精確的名字, 給它定一個比較精確的意義. 又如, 開明書店有一本英文文法書叫做

*China Sea ('中國海')——指台灣海峽以南, 直至印度支那半島, 菲律濱羣島和婆羅洲間的海面. 外人即以此名稱中國的 '南海'.

Kaiming English Grammar〔開明英文文法〕,便是著者給這本書定一個比較精確,特別而虛設的名字.

4.41. 【專名和大寫字母】 書寫時專名必須以大寫字母(capital letter)起頭. 我們可寫 a college dean〔大學學監〕, the kings of Europe〔歐洲的國王〕, 或 a municipality〔市區〕, 但是指明 the Dean〔學監先生(專指大學校內學監)〕, the King of England〔英王〕或 the Municipality of Shanghai〔上海市〕作爲專名時,便用大寫字母起頭了. 遇有專名或公名不能確定時,慣用法往往不同. 一個名字當做專名看時用大寫字母,否則用小寫字母. 如 *N*orth China〔華北〕, 但 *n*orthern China 或 *N*orthern China / the *f*ar East〔遠東〕, 或 the *F*ar East / *w*estern Europe〔西歐〕, 或 *W*estern Europe / the *o*rient〔東亞〕或 the *O*rient / Chinese classics〔四書五經之類〕或 the Chinese *C*lassics. 有許多詞兒,本來是專名,但是現在已經變成了公名,所以寫時用小寫字母,如 china〔瓷器〕, champagne[1]〔香檳酒〕, italics[2]〔意大利體〕, boycott[3]〔排貨運動〕, cynic[4]〔犬儒,憤世嫉俗之人〕. 由專名而成的形容詞和動詞通常也用大寫字母起頭: Chinese, European, Anglicize〔變爲英國風;化爲英語〕, Romanize (又作 romanize)〔羅馬字拼音,使作拉丁風〕.

---

[1] champagne < Champagne (法國東北部之地名). [2] 即英文字體中之斜體字, itatics < Italy. [3] boycott < Captain Boycott (1832—97): 愛爾蘭之地產經紀人,曾與愛爾蘭農民所組之土地同盟發生衝突,農民相約不爲之工作,與之斷絕一切往來. [4] cynic < the Cynics: 希臘哲學家之一派,爲蘇格拉底之徒 Antisthenes 所創,創立期約在紀元前四百年;該派主義乖僻輕藐,蔑視社會一切慣例,甚且于博愛亦不置意,人因嘲之曰'犬儒'.

集合詞和質詞

4.50. 【集合詞或'羣名'(Group-Names)】 名詞中有一類是指一羣的人或物的總稱,這可以叫做'集合詞'或'集合名詞'(Collective Nouns). 集合名詞可作單數(指一羣或一個集團),或作複數(指許多個體或單位). 例如, The Government *have* 或 *has* . . . / There *is* 或 *are* a flock of sheep / The whole staff *resign* 或 *resigns*. 有幾個集合詞,在中文里沒有相等的詞兒,如 the *crew* of a ship 意卽'船中機師水手的總稱', the *faculty* of a department 是'一系的全體教員', the *staff* of a company 指'公司的全部職員'. 又,我們說到一個人的 hair〔頭髮〕時是指他滿頭的頭髮, the shot〔(槍礮的)一發〕是指從槍礮里一次發射出來的全部子彈. 其他如 people, nation, troop〔隊,軍隊〕, army〔軍〕, clergy〔牧師或僧侶的總稱〕, family, clan, society, library, cattle, sheep, fish 等. 這些詞兒的'數'的用法,參看 §5.22.

4.51. 【質詞】 Air, copper, wood, alcohol, milk 等詞兒又自成一類,叫做'質詞'(Mass-Words*). 它們不可以數計,因爲單數複數一概沒有. 在具體名詞當中,這些詞兒,在沒有

*"Mass-word" 一術語最初由 Jespersen 提出,因此詞很容易從 collectives 劃分出來,這兩個術語通常還亂不分. 依照 Jespersen 的意見,兩者間最重要的分別就是: collectives 是單複數都有,而 mass-words 是單複數都沒有. Jespersen 的這種分法好像是關于數的. 可是,在本書里,這個術語並不用以包括 health [健康] 和 happiness [幸福] 這一類的抽象名詞 (Jespersen 所謂 "immaterial mass-words", 無形體的質詞), 因爲 health 和 happiness 並無'質'之可言,而且在這里數也不是分類法的唯一根據.

數的區別以及用時往往不加冠詞 a 或 the 這兩點上，是和抽象名詞（如 politeness, wealth）最相像了。我們只要說 *Milk* is healthy food 或 You should take *milk*, 而不用 a milk, 這個正和我們說 *Health* is *happiness*〔健康卽幸福〕或 That gives me *happiness*〔那個給我幸福〕而不用 a health, a happiness 的情形一樣。當我們指定某件事物時，那當然在質詞之前可以用 the, 如 *the* air, *the* milk, 正如說 *the* health or *the* happiness of the family 時相同。這些詞兒的'數'的用法，參看 § 5.11.

人·物·人格化

4.60. 【人和物】英文法里有一種最重要的區別，便是人和物的區別。也許有人以爲有生物與無生物的區別（把動物和人放在一類）比較合理一點，但是在英文里，我們明明喜歡把人當做宇宙間萬物之靈的生物，而把他另外形成一類。所以凡生物，無論有生或無生，都偶爾可以'人格化'(personification) 來加以尊稱，因此藉詞藻的修飾把它們和人類站在同等的地位。

這種辨別人稱與非人稱的東西 (personal and impersonal objects) 的最顯明而又最普通的實例，便是代名詞中用 he, she, him, her, his 代人而以 it, its 代動物和東西。不過這個也有許多是看各人的興趣而有不同的。例如非我們男人所十分了解的或者我們不覺得有什麼興趣的 child〔小孩〕，我們往往以 it 指他，但是小孩子自己的母親卻少有這種情形。同樣地，喜歡養貓或養狗的人，因爲和它的關係很密切，往往用 he 或 she 指它而不用 it. 此外如：—

指人： *who, somebody, anybody, everybody, nobody, some one, any one, every one, no one* (或拼作 *someone, anyone, everyone, no-one*).
指物： *what* (代), *which* (代), *something, anything, everything, nothing.*

有些詞兒可以人物兩用. 如代名詞 all, each, one, none 以及形容詞 what, which.

人	動物和東西
All are dead.	*All* is lost.
I know *all* of them.	I know *all* (=everything).
Each goes his own way.	*Each* has a tail.
The clever *ones* keep silent.	The bird eats all the good *ones* (apples).
None of them was there.	There is *none* left.
What a singer ['siŋə]!	*What* nonsense!
Which person do you mean?	*Which* story is most interesting?

4.61. 【Who, Which 與 That】 關係代名詞的用法各有不同. Who 與 whom 只可用之于人, which 只可用之于事物, 而 that 兩者都可以用. 因此, that 用起來常是最妥當的, 因爲用了不會有什麽錯誤.

【練習三十六】 (A) 試以下列短語造句:—

1. all who
2. those who
3. people who
4. every one who
5. any one who
6. anything which
7. the house which
8. the book which
9. the things that (which)
10. the horse that (which)
11. the men that (who)
12. the boys that (who)

(B) 試將下列各句中的 that 用 who, whom, which 替代:—

1. The man *that* says this is a liar.
2. Those *that* are afraid need not come.
3. I like fried fish *that* looks brown and crisp.
4. I like a girl *that* dresses neatly.
5. A wife may fail you, but a good cigarette (is one *that*) never fails.
6. Your friends may fail you, but a good wife (is one *that*) never fails.

7. The man *that* fishes is called a fisherman.
8. The line and hook *that* the fisherman uses is called a fishing-line.
9. A rubber is the thing *that* is used to rub off pencil marks. It means sometimes a person *that* does the rubbing.
10. A robber is one *that* robs, and a thief is one *that* steals.
11. The person *that* you see sitting next to Mr. Y—— is my cousin.

4.62. 【Whose 與 Of Which】 跟 who 與 which 的情形一樣，whose 通常用之于人，of which 用之于物. 有些作家用 whose 只許代人而不許代別的東西. 但是這種限制對于文字的明白或便利上既都無益處，而且在文字的歷史上也不正確.* 往往用了 of which 反而把結構弄得非常累贅，不明白，不愉快，如 "This is a place the people, customs and geographical position *of which* I know nothing about". 這一句如果改成 "This is a country *whose* people, customs and geographical position I know nothing about", 那當然更加明白而平易了. 第一式在文法上是對的，但是在風格上到底不無可議之處. 所以，我們至少應該說兩種方式都可以用.

【練習三十七】 將下列各句中的 of which, of whom 改用 whose 代替:—

1. The detective picked up a small, square box, the cover *of which* was made of fine wrought-silver, and the inside *of which* bore the initials "B. W. H."
2. I was introduced to a man the name *of whom* was familiar to me.
3. The cripple was made the referee of the games the rules *of which* he was entirely ignorant of.
4. We then entered the old castle the walls *of which* were moss-grown and covered with ivy.

---

* 參看 *Modern English Usage*, pp. 727—728.

5. I received a letter the handwriting *of which* looked like that of my dead brother.
6. I got a book the corner of the cover *of which* was slightly damaged.

4.63. 【人格化】 人格化卽把一個動物或一件東西當做人一般看待，其種類之繁多，其情形之普遍，都出乎我們意料之外。(a) 老子說：'天地不仁，以萬物爲芻狗。 聖人不仁，以百姓爲芻狗' ["Heaven-and-earth is unkind: it (he?) treats the creation like dummy-dogs. The sage is unkind: he treats the people like dummy-dogs"]，他是把 '天地' (heaven-and-earth) 加以人格化，認爲它的待萬物可以仁，可以不仁，正如聖人之待百姓一般。 英國人也往往把 Nature, Heaven, Fate, the Furies, Fortune, Justice, Liberty 等加以人格化。 這些實例之中有的要溯源于希臘的傳說，而英國人說到 Justice 〔正直，公道〕 或 Liberty 〔自由〕 的時候，他們心目中往往眞有個女神的影像哩。 其所以應該是女神 (goddess) 而非神 (god) 的，這在中國人的心理或許以爲是奇怪的。*

有些年老的作家，他們寫文章時喜歡把 Knowledge, Hope, Despair, Humanity, Courage, Patience 用大寫字母，但這在現代已經不時髦了。

下列人格化的形式是比較普通，比較有用的。 (b) 談到國家或船時用 she 和 her。 (c) The world, the people, posterity,

*參看老子的 '有名爲萬物之母' [The Named is the *mother* (非 father) of all things]。 不過中文因爲近二十年來受了西洋文字的影響，已經也多仿用了，如 '母校'，'姊妹篇'。 可是英文里也不是完全一律的，如 *Mother* Earth [萬物發生之地]，*mother*-tongue [本國語]，Necessity is the *mother* of invention [需要爲發明之母]，這都是用女性的 *mother*，然而 *father*land [祖國，故鄉] 卻是用男性的 father 的。

China's womanhood 等詞兒作單數主語時和人身動詞 (personal verbs) 如 know, regret, remember, agree 等用在一起. (d) 加 's 的人稱領位式 (personal possessive form) 和非人稱的東西連用,如用 the *clock's* hands, the *river's* mouth 以代 the hands of the clock, the mouth of the river 或 the river mouth; 用 the *cloud's* colour 以代 the colour of the cloud. 這最後的一式 (d) 通常用時應該避免,除非在特殊的短語里,如 "*China's* sorrow" (指 the Yellow River, 黃河), out of *harm's* way〔避禍遠害〕, for *convenience'* sake〔爲便利計〕(比較 for my sake〔爲我的原故〕), the *day's* work〔白天的工作〕, a good *night's* sleep〔一夜的安眠〕, at a *minute's* (或 *moment's*) notice〔立刻通知〕. 這些例子實在是爲求表現法的經濟而造成的簡便短語 (正如上面所討論的 whose), 並沒有什麼人格化的提示.

(a) 1. As *Fate* would have it, he came home that evening to meet his death.
2. *Fortune* smiled on him, and he became the most popular novelist of the day.

(b) 3. France was asking America to cancel *her* war debts.
4. *She* (the ship) was going at 12 knots an hour.

(c) 5. The world shall long *remember* what the people lived through during the Great War.
6. China's womanhood *is taking* the matter very much in *her* own hands.

(d) 7. Mr. H—— was lying at *death's* door.
8. Let us say, for *argument's* sake, that he was cheated by others.

【練習三十八】 用下列短語造句:—

1. For convenience' sake.
2. Tomorrow's work.
3. The day's earnings.
4. Five minutes' rest.
5. For goodness' sake.
6. China's foreign debts.
7. His heart's desire.
8. The whole world knows.

（注意：關于人格化，非自己有把握認爲極其正當時，不可用它，因爲人格化用起來不容易，濫用了便覺得淡而無味. 如要用 the mountain's top, the car's wheels, the river's mouth, the road's corner, 不如還是簡單的用 mountain top, car wheels, river mouth, road corner. 如要用 China's army, 不如還是說 the Chinese army 比較容易而且妥當. She 和 her 的用法要特別加以限制.）

Sex 和 Gender 的區別

4.70. 【Sex 和 Gender 的區別】 Sex 和 Gender 都譯做'性', sex (性) 的區別在英文法上叫做 gender. 自然的性 (natural sex) 和文法上的性 (grammatical gender) 不必一定都是相同的，而且詞兒的性 (gender) 在各時期間以及在各國文字里都不相同. 例如德文里作 maiden 和 woman 解釋的 *das Maedchen*[1], *das Weib*[2] 屬於中性 (neuter gender), 古英文里可用 girl 兼指男女兩性的青年. 在現代的德文里，sun 仍然算是陰性 (feminine gender), moon 算是陽性 (masculine gender), 正和中文'太陽','太陰'的意義相反. 還有一件事很奇怪，就是我們中國人說起來都是男女有別，然而在文字里'他'卻沒有分出男女來，同時西洋人口口聲聲說男女平等，反而堅持着 he 和 she 的區別. 中文里用'她'代 she (用'他'指定代 he) 和'牠'(或'它') 代 it, 還只是近二十年 (1917) 的事. 因爲有了這兩個新字，中文寫起來反而多了指陰性的 they 的'她們'以及指中性的 they 的'牠們'(或'它們')，這兩個詞兒在英文里卻表達不出. 在歐洲各國文字之中，英文把一切無用的性的區別 (如古英文里 mouth 陽性，tongue 陰性，eye 中性，以及現代法文及德文里同樣荒謬的性別，如德文里咖啡是陽性，牛奶是陰性，小刀是

[1] 讀如 [das 'mɛ:dtçən]; [2] 讀如 [das vaip].

中性）掃除了，在這一方面和中文最相似，因爲這些性別的意義，即使教現代的文法學大家解釋，他們也說不出個什麼道理來.

4.71. 【陽性·陰性·通性 (Common Gender)·中性】 詞兒或是陽性（男性），或是陰性（女性），或者可以屬于通性（陰陽兩性），或者可以屬于中性（非陰非陽）. 我們要注意，如 stone, paper, pencil, water 等當然可以作爲無性的看待，而 frogs, teachers, workers 和 students 應該作爲兩性的看待，雖則這在文法上毫無分別. 還要注意除 he 以外的代名詞（即 we, they, I, you）用時可以沒有性別，通性用起來實在是最方便的一種. 因爲女人做 senators, judges, parliament members〔參議員，法官，國會議員〕的漸漸多起來，最好的廚司和裁縫 (cooks and tailors) 都是男人而非女人，所以這些詞兒最好還是讓它們列在通性里. 凡遇到需要加以區別的時候，往往可以加某種區別的詞兒，如 *male* cook, *female* cook, *man*-servant, *maid*-servant, *boy* student, *girl* student, *boy* friend, *girl* friend, *woman* governor, *female* judge, *lady* teacher 等. Man 這個詞兒代表全人類，所以可用于通性，如 her part in *man's* (=mankind's) history of progress〔在人類進步史上她所盡的本分〕和 no *man* can tell〔沒有人知道〕. 此外通性的的例子如：cousin, parent, relative, lover, author (雖則指女作家也可用 authoress), worker, journalist〔新聞記者〕, reporter〔採訪員〕, editor, doctor (doctress 則大都用于詼諧的意味), missionary〔傳教士〕, nurse〔看護婦〕(也有'男看護'，即'看護生': male nurse), fool, neighbour, barber, hair-dresser, secretary, chairman (現代英文里還有 chairwoman) 等等. 這些詞兒往往可以加上 woman (如 *woman* doctor, *woman*

worker), 而 lady 這個詞兒只限于高等社會 (如 *lady* doctor, *lady* teacher, *lady* scientist). 又, girl 用于少女, 如 *girl* reporter, *girl* worker, *girl* cousin (和 *boy* cousin 對稱).

4.72. 【兩性的人和動物】 兩性的人和動物,當然也各有不同的詞兒. 就動物的情形而論,例如 frogs, snakes, flies, 和 grasshoppers, 我們不消用不同的詞兒以表明性別, 而那些比較和我們接近的動物, 如 bull, cow, cock, hen 等, 我們卻有不同的詞兒, 以表明它們的雌雄公母. 當我們要用這些指一性的詞兒來包括兩性時, 唯一的方法是兩個都用, 如 ten brothers and sisters (=7 brothers and 3 sisters, 或 3 brothers and 7 sisters, 或其他任何數目的結合). 有些常見的例子如下:—

陽 性		陰 性	陽 性		陰 性
king		queen	dog		bitch
father		mother	he-goat		she-goat
brother		sister	cock		hen
uncle		aunt	peacock		peahen
nephew		niece	bull, ox		cow
gentleman		lady	drake		duck
landlord		landlady	gander		goose
prince	>	princess	ram		ewe
count (earl)	>	countess	stallion		mare
duke	>	duchess	lion	>	lioness
baron	>	baroness	tiger	>	tigress
Jew	>	Jewess	hero	>	heroine
master	>	mistress	he-devil		she-devil
actor	>	actress	bridegroom	<	bride
god	>	goddess	widower	<	widow
heir	>	heiress	monk		nun
emperor	>	empress	bachelor		(old) maid
negro	>	negress	lad		lass

第五章 數和量

5.10. 【數和量的意念】 東西有的數得來（如 boy, book, ship, school），有的數不來（如 water, air, fame, honesty）。這在各國文字都是一樣。 無論中英文，"one water"〔一水〕，"two water"〔二水〕都是不通的。 可是，凡數不來的東西，我們可以把'量'或'額'表達出來，如"much water"〔許多水〕，"a little water"〔一點兒水〕，"a great deal of water"〔許許多多的水〕，"a basin (或 basinful) of water"〔一盆水〕。 *One* boy, *two* boys 所表現的差別叫做'數'(Number)，而 *much* water, *little* water 所表現的差別叫做'量'(Quantity).

可是在中文的'多'，'少'這兩個意念里，並沒有這種數和量的區別存在。 如'僧多粥少'便是不管僧之可數以及粥之不可數的分別的。 但是在英文里，'僧多'必須說 "*many* monks"（非 "much monks"），'粥少'必須說 "*little* congee"（非 "few congee"）.

數	量
many dollars, cents	*much* money
many weeks, days	*much* time
many books, stories	*much* reading
many beads	*much* thinking
three more chances 還有三個機會	*little* chance (possibility)希望很少
too few lessons	*too little* grammar
a few sick men 幾個病人	*a little* pain, sickness 一點兒病痛
two or three dishes 兩三盤菜	*not much* food
many good qualities 許多好品性	*a great deal of* pride 意譯'極其驕'之
a number of cups	*a big quantity of* tea
a large number of letters	*a big quantity of* mail 大宗郵件
three volumes, copies	*a little* history, poetry

但是在英文里，也有幾個詞兒是數量不分的．如 "some", "a lot of", "more", "no" 等，在數和量的詞兒上都可以用．例如：—

數	量
some days, weeks 幾天，幾星期	*some* time 一些時間
some rooms 一些房間	*some* space 些少地位
some books, lessons	*some* knowledge, grammar
some chances	*some* possibility, chance
some good dishes 一些好菜	*some* food
a lot of showers 陣雨多	*a lot of* rain 雨水多
lots of tables	*lots of* wood
more ships	*more* speed 速力加大
less shipwrecks 船舶遭難(的事件)少	*less* danger 危險少
no lamp	*no* light

【練習三十九】 試用下列材料造句：—

many, too many, not many, not much, a great deal of, no little, a great number of, a good deal of, a little less, some more

ink, rain, sunshine, chances, beautiful girls, noise, pride, bowls, food, money, kindness, good luck, harm, danger, light.

5.11. 【質詞：Grains of Sand, Bushels of Rice 等】 除了可數而通常也的確是數的東西以外，還有一羣東西是可數然而通常不數的．譬如我們吃的米哪，女人頭上的頭髮哪，還有小孩子頑的沙哪，雖然可以一粒粒地或一根根地數，可是通常並不特地去數它，比方說 You eat *a great deal of rice* / She has beautiful *hair* / There's *a large quantity of sand*. 可是一定要數的時候，就是一定要把數目表達出來的時候，那末可以說 a grain of rice, a piece of hair, three grains of sand. 這些詞兒可以叫做 '可數質詞' (Countable Mass-Words).

其次我們要談到那些眞正不能數只好用量器去計算分量的質詞. 有時候 '雨點', '水點' (the drops of rain, drops of water) 還數得出有幾點幾滴,然而盆裏或河裏的水有多少點滴,卻沒有人數得過來. 但是我們可以用量器來計算水的分量,正如量米,沙,水果那一類的質詞一樣. 例如說 a bushel of rice or sand [一斗米或沙], a pint [paint] of water [一品脫水]. 以下所列量的表現法很有用處:—

One *pint*=品脫 (流質量名,約二玻璃杯額). A *picul*=擔,石.
One *gallon* (8 pints) = 咖喻 (八品脫). A *bushel*=斗.
Three *inches* of snowfall or rainfall=雪積三(英)寸,雨量三(英)寸之高.
One *ampère*=安培 (電流强度的實用單位).
One *volt*=伏特 (電壓的單位: 譬如 220 伏特的電燈泡只用 100 伏特的電流,便不會怎麼亮,因爲電壓不够高的緣故).
One *watt*=瓦,瓦特 (電力之工率單位,即一 ampère 電流在一 volt 電壓之下所表的工作率, 等于 10^7 ergs 每秒, 或等于 0.00134 馬力: 譬如一只 220 伏特的燈泡是通用于 220 伏特的電壓的, 但是 70 瓦特的燈泡卻只有這麼多的亮光,大約合一百支光. 所以同在一個城市里,瓦特量通常是一定相同的, 而電力的大小卻各有不同).
Thirty-two *candle power(s)*=三十二支光 (燭力).
Fifteen *horse-power(s)*=十五馬力 (h.p.) (一馬力=工率的一種單位,等于一秒鐘內把 550 磅舉高至一英尺的功).

Tons of money 一大堆錢,整千整萬
Heaps of work 一大堆工作
Piles of letters 一大堆信
Lots of rice 許多米
A *lot* of time 許多時間
A *quantity* of paper 多少紙
A big *amount* (數額) of money 大宗款項
An *ocean* of printing type 一片茫「茫的活字
A *mountain* of printing paper 堆牀疊架的印刷紙
A *sea* of faces 人山人海
A *shower* of criticism 一陣批評
A *wilderness* (遍野) of sweets 糖果極多
A *world* of trouble 極多麻煩,無窮「麻煩
A *mouthful* of water 一口水
A *handful* (一把) of men 幾個人
A *spoonful* of salt 一湯匙鹽
A *jugful* of water 一瓶水
A *basketful* of flowers 一籃花
A *tumblerful* of milk (一玻璃杯) 一杯牛奶
A *tin* of tomato soup 一罐番茄湯
A *bag* of clothing 一袋衣服
A *pack* of letters 一束信

A *package* of things —包東西
A *packet* of presents —捆禮物
A *sack* of flour —袋麵粉
A *jar* of honey —瓶蜜
A *pot* of tea —壺茶
A *bunch* of grapes —束葡萄

這許多詞兒當中，當然有些也可以用于可數的東西，如 a *lag* of letters, beans, or fruits. "*A* lot of", "*a* pile of", "*an* ocean of" 以及 "lots of", "piles of", "oceans of", 都是一樣用法，意義簡直無甚差別。關於集合詞，參看 §5.23. 重量的表現法，參看 §6.20, 體積和距離的表現法，參看 §6.40.

【練習四十】 試以 "a number of" 及 "a quantity of" 兩表現法造成數句，並指明意義上之對立.

5.12. 【抽象名詞: **Piece of Luck**】 我們在上面(§4.32)已經說過，抽象名詞加上 case, instance, form, piece, bit, act 一類的詞兒，便可以變成具體的。所以抽象的 "information" 〔消息〕數不來，然而 "*pieces* of information" 〔一件件的新聞〕便數得來了。又，"foolishness" 〔傻氣〕或 "malaria" 〔瘧疾〕也是數不來的，然而 "*acts* of foolishness (或 folly)" 〔幾件傻事〕, "*cases* of malaria" 〔幾起瘧疾病症〕可就數得來了。不然，抽象名詞都當做質詞用，如 a great deal of kindness, much kindness, no little care, no little trouble 等.

【練習四十一】 試以 instances, cases, forms, acts, piece, bit 等詞與 punishment, pleasure, theft, typhoid fever, nonsense, trouble, divorce, marriage, jealousy, poverty, disloyalty dishonesty 一類的詞兒連用.

單數和複數

5.20. 【複數詞尾: -s 和 -es】 在英文里，'單數' 和 '複數' 是有分別的。一件東西叫單數，不止一件叫複數。上面已經

說過，質詞和抽象名詞只有量而無數，所以不在這數的研究範圍以內. 在現在，大部分的英文名詞都是用 *-s* (或 *-es*) 作爲複數的記號. 所以凡有 *-s* (或 *-es*) 的複數，可以叫做 '規則複數' (**regular plurals**)，而不加 *-s* (或 *-es*) 的可以叫做 '不規則複數' (**irregular plurals**).

這個 *-s* 詞尾普通都讀 [-z] 音. 只有在 [-p, -t, -k] 後面讀 [-ps, -ts, -ks]，因爲 [p, t, k] 是 '氣母' (**breathed or voiceless consonants**)，只有 '氣' (breath) 而無 '聲' (voice)，如果讀時加聲再加一個 [z] 音，那便不自然了. 名詞末尾如有 [-s, -z, -ʃ, -ʒ, tʃ, -dʒ]，變複數時加 *-es*，讀 [-iz]，卽在原來的詞兒上加一個音節，讀 [-siz, -ziz, -ʃiz, -ʒiz, -tʃiz, -dʒiz]. 這是因爲 [s-z, z-z, ʃ-z] 等連起來讀很不容易的原故. 如果名詞以元音收尾，那末無論加 *-s* 或 *-es*，一律讀 [-z]. 下列各詞的讀音，須練習讀得正確：—

[-z]			
fees	rows	dimes	pails
eyes	days	wives	miles
rickshas	boys	bulbs	
twos	tins	sobs	[-dz]*
heroes	hens	tubs	hands
potatoes	songs	dogs	birds
laws	things	legs	beds
	dames	girls	kinds

*注意 [-dz]，[-ts] 都不可分開讀成兩個音 [-d→z]，[-t→s]，這 [dz]，[ts] 都已經形成一個破擦氣母 (affricate consonant). 發出這兩個破裂音 [d]，[t] 之後，隨卽便接上摩擦音 [z]，[s]，好像是把它們合起來的一樣. 試練習 "That's it" ['ðætsˌit] 及 "bird's-eye view" ['bə:dzai'vju:]，便可揣摩到這 [dz]，[ts] 的發音了. 中國字 '蔡'，'曹' 都含有 [ts] 音，只不過是送氣的 (aspirate). [dz] 有時讀的快簡直和 [z] 差不多，因此 "ri*des*" [raidz] 讀得快時便和 "ri*se*" [raiz] 分不開來，除了細聽上下文的意思，在這兩個詞兒本身簡直好像沒有什麼分別.

[-ps]	[-ks]	voices	wishes
cups	weeks		
caps	books	[-ziz]	[-tʃiz]
tips	mistakes	noses	churches
heaps	marks	roses	matches
	cakes	phrases	torches
[-ts]*		causes	watches
seats	[-siz]	noises	
cats	cases		[-dʒiz]
carts	faces	[-ʃiz]	ages
streets	laces	ashes	edges
hearts	classes	dishes	pages
students	boxes	bushes	judges
moments	courses	fishes	bridges

名詞以 [-s, -θ, -f] 收音的，這些氣母因爲受了 [z] 的影響，往往——但並不老是——變成 '聲母' (**voiced consonants**) [-z, -ð, -v]. 這種發音上的變化有時在拼法上指明出來，有時不指明出來. [ð] 是 this, thee 的 th 的音，和 [z] 很相近.

[-s — -ziz]	[-f — -vz]
house—houses	wife—wives
	life—lives
[-θ — -ðz]	knife—knives
bath—baths	self—selves
path—paths	shelf—shelves
youth—youths	calf—calves
oath—oaths	leaf—leaves
mouth—mouths	thief—thieves
wreath—wreaths	loaf—loaves
cloth [-ɔ(:)-]—clothes [-ou-]	staff [-ɑ:-]—staves [-ei-]

複數 clothes〔衣服〕, staves〔桶板〕是由單數 cloth〔布帛〕, staff〔竿，杖〕的意義生出，但和原來的意義不同了. 不過一切詞尾和這相同的詞兒，並不是都有這種發音上的變化的. 如：—

[-siz]: *horses, cases, races, courses.*
[-θs]: *hearths* [hɑ:θs], *heaths, months, tenths.*
[-fs]: *roofs, proofs, chiefs, safes, strifes.*

"Tru*ths*" 〔眞理，事實〕和 "ɐar*ths*" 〔土 (rocks 之對)；塵芥，污物〕的讀音在慣用法上仍然不一致：[tru:ðz], [ə:ðz] 和 [tru:θs], [ə:θs] 都可以讀.

5.21. 【**Boys, Ladies, Pianos, Potatoes**】 以 *-y* 和 *-o* 收尾的名詞的複數形，寫起來有時用 *-ys*, *-os*, 有時用 *-ies*, *-oes*. 那些以 *-y* 收尾的名詞，其複數形倒還有規則可循，可是以 *-o* 收尾的名詞，要變成複數，那便雜亂無章了，所以遇有疑惑時，最好還是查查字典看.

"-ys" [*y* 在元音之後]: *boys, toys, days, trays.* (又, *pulleys, whys*).
"-ies" [*y* 在輔音之後]: *ladies, stories, kiddies, flies, duties, armies.*
"-os" [*o* 在元音之後]: *bamboos, Hindoos, taboos, folios, curios, embryos, portfolios* [bæm'bu:z, 'hin'du:z, tə'bu:z, 'fouliouz, 'kjuəriouz, 'embriouz, pɔ:t'fouliouz].
[很長的詞兒]: *generalissimos, archipelagos, manifestos, negritos* [ˌdʒenərə'lisimouz, 'ɑ:ki'peligouz, ˌmæni'festouz, ni'gri:touz].
[外來語形的詞兒]: *pianos, solos, photos, grottos, fiascos, albinos* ['pjænouz, 'soulouz, 'foutouz, 'grɔtouz, fi'æskouz, æl'bainouz].
[專名]: *Romeos, Galileos, Neros* ['roumiouz, ˌgæli'leiouz, 'niərouz].
"-oes" [熟名詞的複數]: *potatoes, heroes, negroes, mosquitoes, buffaloes* [pə'teitouz, 'hiərouz, 'ni:grouz, məs'ki:touz, 'bʌfəlouz]

英文的拼法在這種地方照常是無情無理的，然而除了依隨習慣法以外也沒有其他辦法.

5.22. 不規則複數: Fish, Dozen 和 Alumni】 以上各節所講的複數可以當做規則複數看. 英文里還有些不是加 *-s* (或 *-es*) 的,或者什麽也不用加上去.

(*a*) 不規則的變化:

tooth—teeth *goose—geese* *ox—oxen* *brother—brethren*
foot—feet *mouse—mice* *child—children* (brothers)

(*b*) 無變化:

3,000 *cattle.*
450 *sheep.*
A lot of *fish, salmon, trout.*
Keep *fowl, sheep, swine.*
Shoot 20 *snipe, wild duck, deer.*
Three *dozen* [形] apples.
Three *dozen* [名] of apples.——但: *dozens* of them, did it *dozens* of times, pack it in *dozens.*
Three *score* and ten (=seventy).
Three *hundred* [形] bottles.
Take three *hundred* [名].——但: have seen *hundreds* of them, *hundreds* and *thousands.*

這些詞兒大半是保存原來的單數形,因爲是當做集合詞 (如 cattle〔牲口〕, fish〔魚〕, three dozen〔三打〕都是當做整個兒的),或者當做質詞 (如 snipe〔鷸〕, duck〔鴨〕, deer〔鹿〕的肉 [flesh] 供我們食用,而'肉'是質詞) 看待. 這些詞兒如果不當做這樣看時,便可用加 *-s* (或 *-es*) 的複數形 (如 some *fishes*, *ducks*, or *fowls*〔鷄〕in the backyard). 以我們人類自私的心理,對于這些獸物只想到它們的肉,而忘記了它們也是個別的生物. 這一層在 "fish, flesh and fowl"〔魚,肉,鷄鴨等〕一成語內特別顯而易見. Cattle, swine, sheep 當做集合詞用時從來不加 *-s*. Dozen, score, hundred, thousand 用于數目的詞

兒以後時，通常不加 *-s* (如 five dozen, a few hundred, 但 dozens, hundreds).

(*e*) 外來語的複數 (音標見腳注，規則複數的注音從略)：

拉 丁

alumnus……alumni
datum……data
medium……media
stratum……strata
genius……genii
(作'精靈'解時複數是 genii; 但作'天才'解時複數是 geniuses.)
formula……formulæ (或 formulas)
index……indices (或 indexes)
appendix……appendices (或 appendixes)
series……series
species……species
apparatus……apparatus (或 apparatuses)

希伯來

cherub……cherubim (或 cherubs)
seraph……seraphim (或 seraphs)

希 臘

analysis……analyses
thesis……theses
crisis……crises
hypothesis……hypotheses
(注意：單數 *-sis* 讀 [-sis], 複數 *-ses* 讀 [-si:z].)
phenomenon……phenomena
criterion……criteria (或 criterions)

法

bureau……bureux
monsieur……messieurs
madam(e)……mesdames

俄

Bolshevik……Bolsheviki (或 Bolsheviks)
Menshevik……Mensheviki (或 Mensheviks)

【拉丁】[ə'lʌmnəs]—[ə'lʌmnai], ['deitəm]—['deitə], ['mi:diəm]—['mi:diə], ['streitəm]—['streitə], ['dʒi:niəs]—['dʒi:niai] ['fə:mjulə]—['fɔ:mjuli:], ['indeks]—['indisi:z], [ə'pendiks]—[ə'pendisi:z], ['siəri:z]—['siəri:z], ['spi:ʃi:z]—['spi.ʃi:z], [ˌæpə'reitəs]—[ˌæpə'reitəs]. 【希伯來】['tʃerəb]—['tʃerubim], ['seraf]—['serafim]. 【希臘】[ə'næləsis]—[ə'næləsi:z], ['θi:sis]—['θi:si:z], ['kraisis]—['kraisi.z], [hai'pɔθisis]—[hai'pɔθisi:z], [fi'nɔminən]—[fi'nɔminə], [krai'tiəriən]—[krai'tiəriə]. 【法】[bju(ə)'rou]—[bju(ə)'rouz], [mə'sjə: / məsjə]—['mesjəz / 'mesəz], ['mædəm, mæ'dɑ:m / (madam)]—mei'dɑ:m / (mɑdam)]. 【俄】['bɔlʃivik]—[ˌbɔlʃi'vi:ki]. ['menʃevik]—[ˌmenʃe'vi:ki].

5.23. 【集合詞: Government Have 和 Government Has】上面已經說過 (§4.50), 集合名詞可以當做單數 (一羣) 看,或者當做複數 (許多個體) 看. 集合詞當然還可以有複數,如 "the different *nations*" 〔各國〕, "all the *classes*" 〔(全校) 各級〕, "the European *Governments*" 〔歐洲(各國)政府〕. 不過奇特的是,單數集合詞既可作單數,又可作複數. 因此, *There are* a group of boys 或 *There is* a group of boys 都可說,這完全看我們想到的還是這一羣呢,還是這一羣里面的那些孩子. The class *elect* him as representative 比 The class *elects* him as representative 好些,因爲選他的人是這一級的學生. 在另一方面, The class *is* represented by him 卻又比 The class *are* represented by him 好些,因爲他所代表的是全級. 細讀下列各句:—

The train (死的東西) *arrives* (決非 *arrive*).
The library (死的東西) *was* burnt (非 *were*).
There *are* (或 *is*) a class of words called "collectives".
The family *have* (或 *has*) moved out.
The Jewish tribe *are* (或 *is*) a wandering race.
The people *are* standing in the rain. [指 '民族' 或 '(一國) 國民' 時複數用 "peoples"]
The Chinese nation *is* becoming westernized.
Look at the crowd. *They* must number over 10,000.
If you let the other class know, *they* will laugh at you.
One thousand *people*. Twelve *clergy*. Twenty *police*. Six hundred *sheep*.

總之,要記得的一層,是前後要一致,不可自相矛盾. 例如 "The Cabinet *has* decided at *their* last meeting" 或 "The Cabinet *have* decided at *its* last meeting" 都不行,雖則爲了心理上的變化,或者由于疏忽,這種錯誤是很自然而且常見的.

當我們指一羣里的各個個體的時候，總還是加上 "the members of" 等詞兒，意思容易弄得明白些.

【練習四十二】 試用下列集合詞及表現法造句:—

1. *The members of* the class.
2. *The members of* the church.
3. *The members of* the family.
4. A *group* of people, students, children.
5. A *flock* of sheep, geese.
6. A *herd* of cattle.
7. A *pack* of thieves, fools, rascals, monkeys, hounds.
8. A *bunch* of ne'er-do-wells, fools, green-horns.
9. A *gang* of thieves, ruffians, politicians.
10. A *party* of travellers, guests, visitors.
11. A *set* of instruments, papers, books.
12. A *suit* of clothing, a *suite* of rooms.
13. A *swarm* of bees, insects, ants, beggars.
14. An *army* of beggars, workers, troops.
15. A *troop* of monkeys, soldiers, fighters.
16. A *crowd* of spectators, men and women.
17. A *troupe* or *company* of actors, acrobats, magicians.
18. A *caravan* of camels, merchants across the desert.
19. A *batch* of returned students, graduates (of the same year).

5.24. 【心理意向 (Psychological Intent): **Three Weeks is Heaps of Time**】 我們說 "Five dollars *is* too dear", 或 "Ten minutes *is* enough", 或 "Three years *is* too long for an engagement" 的時候，我們用的實在是一種 '集合的' 意義，所以用單數極對，這就是英文的'常理'(commonsense)已經戰勝了文法的荒謬. 同樣地，我們可以說:—

Three weeks **is** heaps of time.
Another *three days* **was** wasted.
Every *five minutes* he dropped in once.
Take **any** *three* of them.
Before *three days* **was** passed, the landlord came again.

Take **that** *three dollars* and buy yourself a new straw hat.
Their honeymoon lasted only seventeen days. But **that** wonderful *two weeks and half* (或 two-weeks-and-half) **was** the happiest time of her life.

在"mother and child"〔母女倆兒〕這表現法里，這概念實在是'集合的'，雖則後面很少用單數動詞。下列各表現法都是這一類：—

They are **a** second *Romeo and Juliet* [一對情侶]
He is **a** second (*Dr.*) *Jekyll and* (*Mr.*) *Hyde* [二重人格].
The husband and wife [夫妻] look like *brother and sister* [兄妹,姊弟].
This *ball and socket* [關節] **is** broken.
He was riding in **a** *coach-and-four* (horses) [四匹馬的馬車].
Hand me **that** *cup and saucer* [附有茶托的茶杯].
Bread and butter [牛油麵包] **is** a kind of food.
The **whole** *bag and baggage* [箱兒籠兒] **was** thrown out into the street.
Peace and security **is** what we want.
Sympathy and understanding **is** (或 **are**) required.
Six and six **is** (或 **are**) twelve.

5.25. 【一般單數 (Generic Singular)】 我們說 "*Man* is mortal" 的時候，是把這個 man 當做'類詞' (class-word) 用，意即 "*All men* are mortal". 這個 man 是代表全人類的。這種地方，通常用冠詞 the，但有時也可以用 a，而意義仍然相同。例如'大學畢業生沒有事做，沒有飯吃，比比皆然'這一句，隨便說 "The university graduate *has* nowhere to earn *his* living"，或 "The university graduates *have* nowhere to earn *their* living" 都可以。細讀下列各句：

There is nothing to be proud of for *the teacher* to cram ever so many grammatical rules and definitions into *the student's* head.
The Chinese student of English **is** often **misled** by the English spelling.

The student often **remembers** *his* marks and **forgets** about *his* studies.

Everything has been done for the comfort of *the traveller.*

The policeman **is supposed** to be courteous to *the public.*

The King Ching of Ch'i [齊景公] says, "If *the king* **is** not like a king, *the minister* **is** not like a minister, *the father* **is** not like a father, and *the son* **is** not like a son, how am I going to **get** anything to eat, even if the people have rice?" ['信如君不君,臣不臣,父不父,子不子,雖有粟,吾得而食諸?']

Mencius says, "If *the ruler* **regards** *the minister* (或 *ministers*) as dust and grass, then *the minister* (或 *ministers*) **will regard** *the ruler* as *his* (或 *their*) enemy." ['君之視臣如土芥,則臣視君如寇讎.']

The Chinese woman **is** never **oppressed** by *the man* (或 *the men*), but by *her* own sex.

The life of *the Chinese daughter-in-law* is a pretty hard one.

The fox is a night prowling animal.

【練習四十三】 試用下列表現法以指全類事物:—

1. a (或 the) son's duty
2. the smoker's throat (irritation due to smoking)
3. an (或 the) actor's life
4. a (或 the) child's teeth
5. the scientist's method
6. the Englishman in China
7. the student's studies
8. the use of the diploma
9. the ass's ['æsiz] ears
10. the cat's-paws
11. the foreigner in China
12. the modern girl
13. the rickshaw coolie

5.26. 【自然複數 (Natural Plurals)】 東西有的是天然成雙的: 例如 trousers〔褲〕是指兩只褲管併成的衣着, scales〔天平〕是指用兩只天平盤做成的秤, scissors〔翦刀〕是指用兩片刀口翦柄做成的用具; 又如 measles, ashes, suds〔麻疹, 灰, 肥皂水〕是因爲數量多的關係,所以這些詞兒都是加 -s 用複數用慣了的. 這一類成對成套的東西容易分開的時候,那末當然也可以偶爾用單數形,如 a shoe (但不可用 a trouser), 以及 a wave, a bubble (但不可用 a sud). 這些都是極其自然的.

如果把它們當做一件東西說的時候，通常是說 a pair of scissors a pair of breeches〔一把翦刀，一條短褲〕。此外如：—

pincers 鉗子	preparations 部署，籌備	proceeds 贏利
forceps 外科鉗子	embers 灰燼	earnings 收入
tongs 火鉗	remains 遺骸	belongings 所有物件
bellows 風箱	arms 兵器	surroundings 周圍
compasses 圓規	colours 大旗	grounds 宅地
spectacles 眼鏡	bowels 腸肚	contents 內容
cross-roads 十字街	intestines 腸	assets 房產
arrangements 設備，接洽	lungs 肺臟	odds and ends 零碎什物

'動身時的準備'一語很少用 "the *preparation* (或 *arrangement*) for a departure"，應該用 *preparations* 或 *arrangements*，因爲要準備的事情自然多得很。(在另一方面，'房間里的佈置'，'功課的準備'卻用 "the *arrangement* of a room"，"the *preparation* for tomorrow's lessons"，因爲這意義明明是指單數的)。'個人的收入或財產'，'公司或商店的生財'要說 "a person's *earnings* or *belongings*"，"a company's *assets*"，因爲'薪水'，'財產'等通常是多數的，所以用複數形也是理所當然。

注意下列複數形的當然用法：—

shake hands with＝握手
change places with＝易地而居
be (或 make) friends with＝交友
be quits with＝兩相抵消，兩無負欠
rub shoulders with＝耳鬢廝磨

關于以 *-ics* 收尾的學科的名稱，如 physics, mathematics, ethics, classics, metaphysics, esthetics 等，在慣用法上沒有一定的規矩。這些名詞用起來可作單數，又可作複數，如 Mathematics *is* 或 *are*. 但通常，指學科時當單數用，指明一種比較普遍的意義時當複數用。例如：

Physics is changing our conceptions of the universe.
Mathematics is easy to teach when you can make it interesting to the students. [數學(指學科本身)]
His *mathematics* are all wrong. [數學(指數字和算法)]
The *acoustics* of the hall are very bad. [音響學(指建築物中傳導明晰音響的各種性質)]
The *ethics* of the play are above criticism. [倫理學(指各民族中品性的標準)]

卽如此處也不能定下什麽牢不可破的規則,用起來還有許多可以有自由變動的餘地.

5.27. 【岐義複數 (Differentiated Plurals)】 有許多詞兒變了複數,往往形成一種和原來的單數完全不同的意義,這也是很自然的. Arms〔兵器〕是指槍,砲,刀,劍等各種武器, goods〔貨物〕是指商人買進賣出的各種東西. 細讀下列各個詞兒的複數:—

單	複	單	複
custom 風俗	customs 關稅	pain 痛	pains 勞力
manner 式樣	manners 禮貌	quarter 四分之一	quarters 住所
moral 箴言	morals 道德	news 新聞	news 新聞
letter 字母	letters 文學	means 方法,工具	means 方法,工具
*paper 亞紙	papers 公文,報章	wage 工資	wages 工資
*advice 勸告	advices 通知	tiding 消息	tidings 消息
*air 空氣	airs 神氣	glass 玻璃	glasses 眼鏡
look 視	looks 形貌	gut 腸	guts 魄力,耐力
brain 腦	brains 腦力	work 工作	works 工廠,作品

注意: (*a*) 以上加星號 (*) 的是單複數也有意義和這單數或複數相等的,如 "an *air* of contempt"〔鄙夷的神氣〕, "a state *paper*"〔政府公報〕, "the *customs* of the country"〔一國的風俗〕, "an invalid *advice*"〔無效通知〕; (*b*) means 和 news 單複數都可用; (*c*) 單數形 wage 和 tiding 極少用. 上列複數的用法見下例:—

Take great *pains* (take trouble) to . . .
Have received *advices* not to ship the goods.
The Prince's living *quarters*.
He has no *guts* in him.
The paper *works*. The *works* of an author.
Must find a *means* to reach him.
Received *this news* yesterday.
He has no *manners*.
She is proud of her *looks*.
The news was published in the *papers*.

5.28. 【幾個特別例子: Sons-in-law, the Miss Rogers等】有幾個特別例子可以在這里說一說. 就是: (*a*) 主要的詞兒上必須加 *-s* 的複合詞; (*b*) 複合詞而無顯明的主要的詞兒; (*c*) 專名; (*d*) 字母和數字; (*e*) 引用的詞兒或短語; (*f*) 短語中第一名詞當形容詞用因而不能加 *-s* 的. 細讀下列各例:—

(*a*)

lookers-on 旁觀者
passers-by 過路人
hangers-on 食客,依附者
sons-in-law
brothers-in-law
sisters-in-law
brides-to-be 待嫁娘
maids-of-honour 女官
editors-in-chief
commanders-in-chief
major-generals
men-of-war
courts-martial 軍事法庭
vice-presidents
maid-servants
the Houses of Parliament
the Lords of the Admiralty 英國海軍總司令
lords justices 高等法院審判官
lords-chancellors 大法官 (英國國會開會時充上院議長)

(*b*)

forget-me-nots
the fourth-of-Julys 美國獨立節
go-downs 貨棧
go-betweens 居間人,媒人
grown-ups 成人
ne'er-do-wells 無賴
runaways 在逃者
merry-go-rounds 圓通的人

(*c*)

the brothers Martin 馬丁氏兄弟
the Misses Martin (或 the Miss Martins) 諸位馬丁小姐
the young Martins 馬丁家中的幼
the Martins 馬丁一家人 [輩
Martin Luthers

the Wang An-shihs 王安石之流
the Shakespeares
the Edisons
the Henry Fords

(*d*)

cross your t's (或 *ts*)
dot your i's (或 *is*)
don't mix up your n's and ng's (或 *ns*, *ngs*)
there are four s's ['esiz]
three 5's and 6's (讀如 fives and sixes ['faivz‿ən 'siksiz])

(*e*)

the whys and hows
too many *don'ts* (或 "*don't's*")
get sick of the lady's *shall nots* (或 "*shall not*'s")
frightened by too many "*You will never do's*"
ever ready with his "*Yes, sir's*"

(*f*)

three-inch golden lily 三寸金蓮
five-foot book-shelf
the five-gallon tins
a five-dollar note
a million-dollar contract
trouser-pockets
a seven-year-old boy
girl friends
woman-workers
dog-biscuits 狗脚餅乾
noun clauses
grammar exercises
stone walls
tooth-brushes
tooth-picks
brick-buildings
head servants
boy messengers
book covers
key-holes
(以上第一名詞都不用複數)

數　詞

5.30. 【數詞·分數·倍數】在英文的計數法上,中國學生最感困難的地方,便是中文'萬'的觀念在英文里是用'十千'來表達. 我們要把'萬'的觀念用'千'的方法說出來的時候,切記要乘以十. 如中文'一萬'在英文里是'十千','一萬幾千'是'十幾千','幾萬'是'幾十千','幾萬幾千'是'幾十幾千';而'十萬','十幾萬','幾十萬','幾十幾萬'便是'百千','一百幾十千','幾百千','幾百幾十千'. 其次要記得,'百萬'是 million (兆),所以'千萬'便是 ten million (十兆). 中文的數目字里雖然還有'億','兆','京','垓'等,但是普通說起來卻只用'十萬','百萬','千

萬', '萬萬' 等 (如 '百萬富豪', '東三省三百萬方里的土地和三千萬人口', '四萬萬五千萬同胞' 之類).* 因爲中英文意念上有這種區別,所以生出無窮的紊亂來.

一 萬	= ten thousand	10,000.
十 萬	= hundred thousand	100,000.
百 萬	= one million	1,000,000.
千 萬	= ten million	10,000,000.
十萬萬	= one billion	1,000,000,000.

英文的計數法實在非常明白,只要看它長的數額寫起來的時候都是三位三位地分開; 所以 1,001,000 一目了然是 "one million and one thousand", 而 10,010,000 是 "ten million and ten thousand". 還有,在英文里說明人數時也比較注意翔實; 例如中文的 '到會者不下萬人',往往是虛報,實在只等于英文里 '一千五百人左右' 哩.

數目在二千以下時常常用 "~teen hundred" (直譯 '十幾百') 的表現法,如 1,190 / 1,245 / 1,500 / 1,750 卽說 eleven hundred ninety / twelve hundred forty-five / fifteen hundred / seventeen hundred fifty. 所以 1939 年應該讀 "nineteen hundred thirty-nine" 或 "nineteen thirty-nine", 這個比那累贅的 "one thousand nine hundred (and) thirty-nine" 讀起來好得多了.

序數 (first, second, third, fourth 等) 參看 §8.50.

*照中國的計數法, 在 '萬' 以上有 '十進' 與 '萬進' 的區別, 如 "(1) 【億】: 數名, [禮疏] 算法 '億' 之數有大小二法, 小數以十爲等, '十萬' 爲 '億', '十億' 爲 '兆' 也; 大數以萬爲等, 萬至萬, 是 '萬萬' 爲 '億' 也; (2) 【兆】: 數名, '百萬' 爲 '兆'. 又謂: '萬萬' 爲 '億', '萬億' 爲 '兆' " (俱見辭源). 譬如,我國以前有四萬萬人口, '這是普通的計數法, 但在文字里往往還可用 '四億', 有時也用 '四百兆.'

下列分數和倍數的表現法也要學習，並可自行變換：—

(1) Percentage and fractions [百分比和分數]：—

1. *One-third* (1/3); *two-thirds* (2/3); *three-quarters* (3/4); *four-fifths* (4/5); *nine-tenths* (9/10); *one-fiftieth* of a second [一秒五十分之一].
2. *One-third* of it **is** gone. *One third* of them **are** gone.
3. *Seven-tenths* (of the men) **are** over twenty (years old).
4. This is *two-thirds* water. *Two thirds* of it **is** (或 **are**) water.
5. *Eighty-five per cent* (85%) are illiterate. We have *eighty-five per cent* illiteracy.
6. A *hundred per cent* profit [加倍得利]; *hundred per cent* Americans [十足美國人]; *hundred per cent* attendance [全部出席; 又指未嘗缺課一次].
7. This is *seventy per cent* [七成，百分之七十] alcohol. *Seventy per cent* of it **is** alochol. *Seventy per cent* of the men **are** diseased.
8. *Three per mille* [千分之三].
9. *Decimal three per cent* (0.3%).
10. *Ten-decimal-naught-naught-three per cent* (10.003%).
11. *Thirty-three and one third per cent* (33 1/3%).
12. *Twenty-five per cent* (25% 或 1/4); *fifty per cent* (50% 或 1/2); *seventy-five per cent* (75% 或 3/4).

(2) Discounts [折扣]：—

13. A *five per cent* discount [九五折].
14. A *thirty per cent* discount [七折]. ('八五折', '九折', '六折' 如何說法?)

(3) Multiples [倍數]：—

15. *Ten times* easier.
16. *Ten times* quicker and safer.
17. *Three times* bigger; *three times* as big as; *three times* the size of.
18. *Twice* that length; *twice* as long as.
19. Longer *by half*; longer *by fifty per cent* [加半長].
20. *Three times* nine **is** (或 **are**) twenty-seven (3×9=27).
21. *Twice* two **is** (或 **are**) four (2×2=4).
22. With *tenfold* force.

(4) **Chances** [成算,勝敗的比例]:—

23. *Nine cases out of ten* it will fail [十九不成功].
24. *Ten to one* (*The chances are ten to one* that) he will lose [十九必敗].
25. He has *one chance out of every five thousand* [一與五千之比] to win.
26. *The chances are one out of every nine hundred, once in nine hundred* [九百次中有一次].

(5) **Half** [半]:—

27. *The half of* ten is five.
28. Two pounds *and* (*a*) *half*; two *and* (*a*) *half* pounds [二磅半].
29. *Half of* it is bad. *Half of* them are bad.
30. A *half* share, a *half* length, *half a* share, *half a* length, *half an* hour, *Half the* men (are gone). (這些都當做名詞看待, 如 "Give me *half a* loaf", "Another *half an* hour is gone"="*Half* of an hour".)
31. *Half and half, fifty-fifty* [各半,二一添作五].
32. *Half* as much (或 many) again, more *by half* [加半倍].
33. *Not half* as tall as . . . [不及 . . . 一半高].

(6) **Parts** [部分]:—

34. *A part. A portion. A section.*
35. *The majority, the greater part of, the greater number of, most of* (them), They are *mostly* . . . , They are *for the most part* . . . [大半,多數].
36. *The minority, the smaller part* (*portion, number*) *of* [小半, 少數].
37. *Part of* this is true. This is *partly* true. *Part of* them are gone.
38. Take 3 *parts* of sugar and 6 *parts* of flour [三分糖,六分麵粉].
39. Add 1 *part* (of) alcohol to 10 *parts* (of) water.
40. Divide it *in parts*.

5.31. 【不定數 (Indefinite Number)】 學習下列'不定數'或'接近數' (approximate number) 的表現法,並自行變換:—

(1) **One or two, etc.** [一兩,兩三]:—

1. *One or two* days. *Two or three* days. *Six or seven* people. *Ten or twelve* people.

2. A *couple* of days, weeks, oranges.
3. A day *or two*. A week *or two*.
4. You will have to spend a *couple* of thousand dollars for the wedding, not counting the *eight or nine hundred* for the diamond ring alone.

(2) Some, about, or so, or thereabouts, etc. [左右]:—

5. *Some* thirty days [三十天左右].
6. *About* thirty days.
7. *Approximately* thirty days.
8. Thirty days *or so*. A month *or so*.
9. Thirty days *or thereabouts*.
10. He is *somewhere about* thirty-five (years old). We have *somewhere about* nine hundred members.

(3) From ten to fifteen, etc. [十至十五]:—

11. There will be about *fifteen to twenty* guests.
12. I am going to remain *ten to fifteen* days.
13. She must be *anywhere between* thirty-two and thirty-six.
14. We shall have *between thirty and forty* people coming to the meeting.
15. He was a popular poet in the *eighteen-sixties* (i.e., 1860—1869).

(4) Over fifty, below fifty, etc. [五十以上,以下]:—

16. *Over* fifty days (非 *fifty more*).
17. *More than* fifty people.
18. *A little over* fifty, seventy.
19. *Not quite* fifty.
20. *Less than* fifty. There are *less than* forty days left.
21. *Sixty-odd* people.
22. He sold it for a hundred *seventy-odd* dollars.
23. He would not sell it for *below* hundred-fifty (或 for *less than* hundred-fifty).

(5) Hundreds, dozens, scores, etc. [整千,整萬]:—

24. *Thousands* and *tens of thousands* of soldiers.
25. *Hundreds of thousands* of dollars.
26. There are *hundreds* (*dozens*, *thousands*) of people waiting for your job.

27. I have seen *scores and scores (hundreds and hundreds)* of such cases. (比較: *Three score and ten* is the age of man.)
28. Some *hundreds*. Some *dozens*. Some *tens*.

(6) A number of, any number of [多少,多,少]*:—

29. I have *a number of* things [多少事] to do.
30. There are *a number of* students outside.
31. *A few* friends. *A great many* friends. *A good many* friends. *Not a few* friends. *A lot of* friends. *Lots of* friends. *Many, many* friends. *A great number of* friends.
32. He has *any number of* friends (i.e., very many).
33. He has *I don't know how many* friends (i.e., very many).
34. I have told you this *I don't know how many* times [已經告訴你不知多少次].

注意'一百多'或'九十幾'要說 over hundred, over ninety, 切勿說 hundred more, ninety more, 中國學生往往有此錯誤.

增加 (increase), 減少 (decrease) 和比較 (comparison) 的表現法 (如 more and more, the more . . . the more, as many as) 見第十章.

正數 (positive number) 和負數 (negative number) (如 few 和 a few, little 和 a little), 見 §3.53.

數 的 矛 盾

5.40. 【數的矛盾】 有些地方,名詞應該用單數還是用複數,很難決定. 在中文里決不會有這種困難發生的,因爲我們根本沒有單複數詞尾的分別. 可是,英文的慣用法里卻已經成立了某些不成文法,我們應該在這里說一說.

* 29—34 中各表現法,只除 a lot of, lots of 同時適用于'量'外,一律限于言'數'; 其他可用于'量'的如 a little, not a little, much, very much, plenty of, a good deal of, a great deal of (*money, time* 等).

(*a*) One or two *days* One or two *cases*.
(參看: a *week* or two, a *case* or two.)
(*b*) Many a *man thinks*, 等.
More than one *person* (關于動詞的數的矛盾, 見下節 "*f*").
(*c*) An upper and *a* lower *shelf*.
The upper and *the* lower *shelf*.
(但: the upper and lower *shelves*.)
Both the old and *the* new *dress*.
(但: the old and new *dresses*.)
We welcome the new, and say good-bye to *the* old *year*.

A 或 the 重見時,後面的名詞用單數,因爲在 "the upper and the lower shelf" 里, the upper 的後面好像有 shelf 這個詞兒省去了: the upper (shelf) and the lower shelf. We welcome the new (year), etc. —句與此相同.

(*d*) 一件事物同屬于幾個人的時候,如果我們是說 "their house" 或 "their houses", "their journey" (共同的'旅行'), 但 "their wives" (各人的'老婆') (除非兩個人合娶一個老婆), 這些都是很明白的. 但是說到了一個比較抽象的意義的時候, 那可不像這樣容易明白了. 用 their *meaning* 還是用 their *meanings*, 用 They have made up their *mind* 還是用 *minds* 呢? 通常一個意義比較抽象的時候用單數 (§3.30), 否則用複數. 因此我們可以說 "Their *heads* 〔腦袋〕 look alike", 但是 "They don't use their *head*" (抽象單數 = 用頭腦, 用腦力), 又, 在固定的成語里面, 通常保存單數的原形, 如 "They came *on foot* (= by walking) 〔他們步行而來〕, "They *took a fancy* to her" 〔他們看中了她〕. 細讀下列各句:—

They have no *use* (抽象的).
The *uses* (各自的) of the different parts.
The soldiers appeared *in uniform* (成語).
The men appeared in *formal dress* (成語).

The women wore bright-coloured *dresses* (some in green, some in lavender, etc.).

The *life* (抽象的) of the peasants.

The *lives* (各自的) of great men.

Those three had also *a hand* (抽象的=a share) in the matter.

We must wash our *faces* (或竟只用 *face* 亦可, 把 "washing face" [洗臉] 當做一個固定的成語看). 但: We must tell them this to save our *face* (抽象的=honour, good name [面子]).

All of them are *in trouble* (成語). 但: All of them are in *troubles* of some sort or other (各自的).

The foreigners can leave our internal wars alone; they need not *put their foot in it* (=they need not interfere; 非 feet, them).

This happened right under the *nose* (非 *noses*) of the authorities.

We must *keep an eye on* that young girl (=watch her and keep her from going wrong).

Opium-smokers always have *a* bad *digestion*.

People who want to preserve our "old morality" generally have *a* bad *conscience*.

People who oppose the emancipation of women generally lead *an* immoral *life* (或 immoral *lives*, =have concubines, seduce young girls, etc).

Men of bad *temper*, strong *determination*, good *health*, poetic *imagination* (都是抽象的詞兒).

Words of different *gender*, *number*, *meaning*, *case*, etc.

除 that kind 和 those kinds 之外,我們往往簡直可用 *those kind* (of things), *those kind* (of people).

5.41. 【動詞的數】 在英文里 have 和 has, is 和 are, comes 和 come 仍然有分別,雖則 had, did, came 並不分出單數和複數來 (不過 was 和 were 卻又有單複數之分). 因此我們寫文章時生出許多無謂的困難,連大文豪上自 Shakespeare, Milton, Swift 一直到 Shelley, Thackeray, Macaulay 等人往往還要跌一交哩.* 在 "A boy *goes*", "Two boys *go*" 這一

*引句見 *Modern English Grammar*, II, pp. 169—184.

類的例子上看起來，那自然是一目了然的，但在 "What China needs *are* good roads" 之中，即使腦筋好的人也往往弄不清楚，沒有辦法對付。這些困難，有許多是由於心理上的原因（如健忘，豫想不周，心理變化，鄰近的詞兒的影響等）。這種種錯誤，我們應該小心謹防，務求避免才好。

(1) 主語和補足語 (Complement) 的數有不同時：動詞依隨主語。

My only pleasure *is* the movies.
The movies *are* my only pleasure.
All that *is* simply ways of deceiving the people.
The Greeks *were* a wonderful race.
Our only guide *is* the stars.
The stars *are* our only guide.
His food *was* fruit and goat-milk.
Fruit and goat-milk *were* his food.

(2) **One of those is, one of those who are**：看你的意思如何而決定。——例如 "One of the boys *is* sick"，但 "He is one of the boys who *are* sick." 第一句所說的孩子雖多，但只有一個生了病；可是在後一句的情形中，有病的孩子顯而易見是有許多，他只是其中的一個。不過短語比較長的時候，這一點很容易忘記了的。在下列各句中，眞正的邏輯上的主語都用黑體字表明。

The **meeting** of so many strangers of so many nationalities *broadens* his mind.
The **putting together** of so many incongruous colours *is* displeasing to the eye.
The **loss** of his mother, wife and three of his beloved **children** *is* too much for him.
The **apples** grown on this hill *have* a special flavour of their own.

The **results** of the examination *show* that you have been making considerable progress.

One (1) of his **concubines** (2), who all *have* (2) their lovers, *runs* (1) away with hers.

This is one of the best **games** that *are* ever played in Shanghai.

One of the books he bought yesterday *is* torn. (He bought many, but one is torn).

He is one of **those** who always *forget* their engagements.

(3) 混合數的主語：用複數動詞.——這有幾種可能的情形:—

(1) Mother *and* child *were* kidnapped.
(2) Mother *and* children *were* kidnapped.
(3) Mother *or* child *was* kidnapped.
(4) Mother *or* children *were* kidnapped.

只有第四例須特別注意. 此外例如:—

One or two examples *have* to be given.
There *are* one or two things that you must remember.

(4) 動詞在主語前：先要顧到主語.——最普通的一種形式便是以 there is 起的句子,如 "*There is* one thing", 但 "*There are* a number of things." 有時候覺得困難的,便是我們可以先想到一件東西,隨後又想到了別的東西: "*There is* a big pearl and (忽然又回想到) a number of smaller ones" (此處應該用 are). 這一種錯誤在談話時簡直是無法避免,因爲 there is 一短語已經說出口了,然後才有此回想 (after-thought) 的,即在大作家的文章里也可以看得見有這種錯誤. 所以即使在文章里寫出來總還情有可原. 一個女人,如果看見了人家一顆光彩奪目的大珍珠,恋得她眼花撩亂,驚心動魄的時候,她自然而然要說出——

There *is* a big pearl of wonderful roundness and lustre and a number of smaller ones in her necklace.

這麼一句，我們倘再議論她的文法不對，那可太不近人情了。這在專門推敲字眼的作家，或者竟故意把它寫成：—

There *is* a big pearl of wonderful roundness and lustre in her necklace, and a number of smaller ones, besides.

此處用 is 比用 are 好些，因爲這一個辭句的第一部分到了 in her necklace 已經圓滿了，而第二部分可以當做省去了 there are 的一個省略句 (elliptical sentence) 看.* 可是，除了這一種結構以外，通常我們在用動詞的時候總應該先顧到主語。下列各句都是很正確的實例：—

In the room *are* a table, a bed, and a piano.
Now *come* all trials and experiences that can happen to a man.
Under this roof *are* gathered today the most distinguished names of the country.
Under "university students" *are* included both post-graduates and under-graduates.
In this city *are* to be found both the most renowned scholars and the worst scoundrels of the country.
Here *are* the papers he left for you to read.
There *are* a full-page coloured illustration and many smaller ordinary ones in this book.

"Where's you manners?" 〔你不懂禮貌嗎?〕這一句也是極其通馴的。

(5) 通數的代名詞 (**Pronouns of common number**)：看意思加何而決定。——代名詞 who, what, which, none, any, more 可指單數或複數。所以用單數還是用複數，完全隨當時情形而決定："Who *is* my friend?", 但 "Who *are* my

*關于此點，參看 *Modern English Usage*, p. 391.

friends?" 關係代名詞 who, which, that 的用法亦復如此: the thing that *angers* me / the things that *anger* me / those who *are* too lazy 等. 此外如:—

More of us *die* in bed than out of it.
The more *is* added, the less it becomes.
None of us *are* (或 *is*) willing to die.
None but the brave *deserve* the fair (*but* 作介詞).
None but the fools *are* prepared to believe that.
There *is* (或 *are*) none left.
Is any of your sisters out?
Are any of your sisters out?

What 的用法要格外當心:—

This is, then, what *seem* to be the **reasons** for his resignation.
This is what *seems* to be the **reason** for his resignation.
The paper will publish what *are* considered the best **essays** on the subject.

在名詞子句以 what 起的情形之中,總把它當做單數看待:—

What you say **is** quite true.
What China needs **is** good roads (參看 "*a*" 項舉例).
What angered him **was** the personal attacks.
(參看: The personal attacks **were** *what angered him.*)

(6) **Each, as well as, many a, more than one.**——這些都是特別的例子. Each, many a, more than one 和單數名詞用在一起時,差不多全用單數動詞. 至於附在 as well as 之後的名詞,應該完全劃開,不可在討論這動詞的數的時候加以考慮.

Each *has* something to say.
Each of them *strikes* the ball in turn.
Each of the stories *is* copied by one student.
The students *copy* **each a** story.
They *strike* the ball **each one** after the other.
Many a man *has* been cheated by him.

More than one person *was* suspected. But there *are* **more than one** person involved in the matter (*are* 因爲受了鄰近的詞兒 more 的影響).
He, **as well as** his room-mates, *is* suspected.
His room-mates, **as well as** he, *are* suspected.

Each, every one 和 anybody 應該用 himself 指明,不可用 themselves. (有時可用 "himself or herself", 不過這個太常用了,未免有點兒太笨.) 在另一方面, nobody 卻有時後面可用一個 they 來指明它.

Nobody objects to it, do *they*? (由 *No one of them* objects 生出)
Anybody can see this for *himself*.
Every one should sign *his* or *her* name in the book.
Every one must make *his* (儘可不用 *or her*) own living.
Each man is fighting for *himself*.

關于集合名詞 (class *is*, class *are*), 參看 §5.23; 關於分數,倍數和數詞 (seven per cent *is* 或 *are*), 參看 §5.30.

第六章　重量·價值·體積·距離·形狀·位置

6.10　【英文的這些範疇和中文的不同】英文里關于重量(Weight)，價值(Value)，體積(Size)，距離(Distance)，形狀(Shape)和位置(Position)的表現法都和中文的大不相同．我們應該學習怎樣才用得不錯，以及懂得它們的正確意義．

6.20.【重量的表現法】計算重量，正如計算體積和距離一樣，也有兩種制度：一是一般用的英國舊制，一是多用于科學上的所謂'米突制'(metric system)．米突制極其簡單，都是以十進的．在下列這些詞兒里，gram 又可寫作 gramme.

gram (略語作 gm.) [克] = 約合 15 Troy grains [英厘]
decagram ['dekəgræm] [什克] = 10 grams
hectogram ['hektogræm] [佰克] = 100 grams
kilogram ['kilogræm] [仟克] = 1,000 grams
decigram ['desigræm] [分克] = 10th of 1 gram
centigram ['sentigræm] [厘克] = 100th of 1 gram
milligram ['miligræm] [毫克] = 1,000th of 1 gram

這些名辭當中，最通用的是 kilogram，約合普通 2.2 磅．英國的舊制又有兩種衡制：(1)'常衡'(avoirdupois weight [ˌævədə'pɔiz 'weit])，是量米，炭，雜貨等粗重物品用的；(2)'金衡'(Troy weight)，是量金，銀，寶石等貴重物品用的．常衡的一磅(avoirdupois pound)比金衡的一磅(Troy pound)重，合中國十二兩．細讀下列等價表(括弧內是略語)：—

常　　衡

16 grams = 1 ounce (oz.) [英兩]（音譯'盎司'）
16 ounces = 1 pound (lb.) = 7,000 grains (gr.)（音譯'克冷'）
112 pounds = 1 hundredweight (cwt.) [英擔]（直譯'百磅衡'）

2,240 pounds = 1 ton [噸]
14 pounds = 1 stone [石] (stone 指量人體重時而言，'石' 係衡器，與中文 '一石米' 的 '石' 不同；通常規定爲十四磅，然在實用上其重量因物而異，如魚獸肉類一 stone 爲十四磅，乾酪則爲十六磅，麻爲三十二磅，玻璃爲五磅等等不一.)

金　　衡

24 grains = 1 pennyweight (dwt.) [英錢] (直譯 '辨士衡')
20 pennyweights = 1 ounce (oz.)
12 ounces = 1 pound (lb.) = 5,760 grains

Pounds, ounces 和 pound, ounce 都可作複數用，不過現在 pounds, ounces 更常見了；然而 stone 卻比 stones 常見 (He weighs twelve *stone* / A man of twelve *stone*).

注意在所有重量，價值，體積，距離的表現法之中，這些度，量，衡，幣的名辭都是緊接于動詞 weigh, measure, cost, 以及形容詞 worth 之後.

The package *weighs* a pound and half.
It *costs* three dollars.
It is *worth* the money.
It is not *worth* sixpence.
The bed *measures* six feet long.

又，參看時間和數的表現法 如 It lasts *seven minutes* / The troops numbered *fifteen thousand* 以及 weighs heavy〔重，吃重〕, weighs much〔斤兩重，吃重〕, weighs little〔斤兩輕，沒斤兩，不吃重〕, is worth much〔很有價值〕, is worth little〔沒多大價值，沒有價值〕, cost dear〔損失很大，吃虧不小〕, measure long〔尺寸長〕, measure short〔尺寸短〕等等表現法.

6.30. 【價值的表現法】 在英文里計算金錢有兩種不同的方法，一是英國的方法，一是美國的方法. 英國的方法實在和

我們計算'元','兩','大洋'("big money"),'小洋'("small money") 的方法一樣複雜,只不過沒有這麽亂七八糟的吧了. 然而它所用的主要單位也只有 penny (或 pence) 〔辨士〕, shilling 〔先令〕, pound 〔鎊〕這三個.

1 penny ['peni]=about 2 gold cents (約合美金二分)
12 pence [pens]=1 shilling=about 25 cts. Gold (約合美金二角五分)
20 shillings ['ʃiliŋz]=1 pound=about $5.00 Gold (約合美金五元)

Crown 和 sovereign 是英國貨幣的名稱. 因爲前者印有皇冕,後者印有英國君主的肖像,所以才有這兩個名稱的. 照目前的匯價,一先令約合國幣七角左右 (根據中央銀行掛牌,國幣一元的英匯價格是一先令二辨士半).*

1 crown [kraun] = 5 shillings
1 halfcrown ['hɑ:f'kraun] = 2 shillings and sixpence ['sikspəns]
1 sovereign ['sʌvrin] = 1 pound

英幣所用的符號如下:

£. s. d. = pound—shilling—pence
£ 6.10.6. = six pound ten and six (ten shillings and sixpence)
£ 3 = three pounds
10/6 = ten and six (ten shillings and sixpence)
4/- = four shillings
1/- = one shilling
8d. 或 -/8 = eightpence ['eitpəns]

"£" 原是拉丁文 *libra* ['laibrə] 的略語, "d." 是 *denarius*, *denarii* [di'nɛəriəs, di'nɛəriai] 的略語. 關于 pound 和 penny 這兩個名辭,要特別注意.

*此處數字根據廿八年六月十七日申報經濟欄之匯兌價目表. 以下美匯,法匯,德匯皆同.

five pounds (通常用 *-s*)
five pound ten (不加 *-s*)
five pounds sterling (*sterling* 只用于幾鎊的整數,如 £ 500 stg., 但不可用 "five pound ten stg." Sterling 譯爲 '英幣的', 意即合乎英幣的標準純度,現在英幣的標準純度是 .916 或 11/12)
pennies (此複數指一個個的貨幣而言)
pence (此複數指金額或價值而言)
halfpenny ['heip(ə)ni]
twopence ['tʌp(ə)ns]
threepence ['θrip(ə)ns]
twopenny piece ['tʌpəni 'pi:s]
threepenny piece ['θripəni 'pi:s]
fourpence 至 elevenpence 以及 twentypence 連寫 [讀 -p(ə)ns]——否則分開 [讀 pens], 如 thirteen pence.

現在舉一個例子,以說明 pound 和 sovereign 以及 pence 和 penny 的分別: "This dictionary costs two *pounds* and six *pence* (或 two pound six), and I actually paid two *sovereigns* and six *pennies*." 〔這本字典的價錢是兩鎊六辨士,我實際付出兩個金鎊和六個辨士.〕

美國貨幣的'元分制'和我們中國的相仿. 照目前的匯價,美金一元約合國幣三元三角三分 (根據中央銀行掛牌,美匯國幣百元折合美金三十元).

100 cents (cts.) = 1 dollar ($1.00)
10 cents = 1 dime
5 cents = 1 nickel

下列各符號讀起來是這樣:—

$1.00 (U. S.) : one dollar U S. currency [美金]
$1.00 G. : one dollar gold
$1.50 : dollar fifty, 或 dollar and half
$3.75 : three (dollars) seventy-five (cents)

中國貨幣的英文名辭,舊有的如:—

$1.00 (Mex.) : one dollar Mex. (或 Mexican) [鷹洋] (其重量及成色均和墨西哥銀元相同,故名)

銀 25 或 25 tls. : twenty-five taels [兩]

10 Hk. tls. : ten Haikwan taels [海關兩] ('海關兩' 或稱 '關平', 關平一兩約合庫平一兩又千分之十三)

銀 0.03 : three tael cents [分] ('分' 又有 candareen(s) 一名辭, '錢' 的英文名辭是 mace, maces, 但不常用, 如 '二錢三分' 即以 twenty-three tael cents or candareens 代之)

24 cop. or cops. : twenty-four copper(s) [銅元, 銅板]

cash = 文; 現洋 big money = 大洋 small money = 小洋

不過自民國廿四年國民政府規定用 '法幣' (legal tender) 以來, 銀元已禁止流通, 所有法幣均係中,中,交三銀行的鈔票 (bank-notes), 並且除原有角票以外又發行了五種 '輔幣' (subsidiary coins):—

twenty-cent piece = 二角
ten-cent piece = 一角
five-cent piece = 五分
cent = 一分
half-cent piece = 半分

二三年前 (民國二十五六年) 市面上還有二角小洋的銀幣 (twenty-cent silver pieces, small money) 和銅元 (coppers) 流通,不過江南和廣東的一角小洋的銀幣市面上早已不見了.

英美以外的外國貨幣,還有幾種應該說一說,如:— (1)德國的 mark [ma:k] 〔馬克〕(合美金二角五分) (或作 Reichsmark ['raiçsma:k]), 1 mark 等于 100 Pfennige ['pfenigi] 〔芬呢〕(或作 Reichspfennig; Reich 意卽 '國幣' 的 '國', 此是德國人自稱之辭. Pfennig ['pfenig] 是單數, Pfennige 是複數); 德匯國幣百元折合七十五馬克. (2)法國的 franc [frɛ̃k] 〔佛郎〕(合美金二角), 1 franc 等于 100 centimes ['sɑ̃:nti:mz]

〔生丁〕; 法匯國幣百元折合一千〇八十法郎. (3) 日本的 yen [jen] 〔圓〕, 1 yen 等于 100 sen [sen] 〔錢〕; 日金一元約合國幣一元左右. Mark 和 franc 又有 "paper mark", "gold mark", "paper franc", "gold franc" 〔紙馬克, 金馬克, 紙佛郎, 金佛郎〕的分別. 又, 注意 a dollar's worth of salt-eggs, fifteen-cents' worth of sugar, a dollar note, a five-pound note 〔一塊錢的鹹蛋, 一毛五分錢的糖, 一元鈔票, 五鎊鈔票〕這一類的表現法.

6.40. 【體積和距離的表現法】 這有兩種制度, 就是英國制和米突制. 米突制以 metre 〔米突〕爲標準, 其餘的名稱都是加詞首 (prefixes) 如 deca-, kilo-, deci-, milli- 等, 其意義和 '克蘭姆' 一組相同 (參看 § 6.20). 通常用得着的幾個名辭是:—

metre [米] = 39 英寸, 一碼有零
kilometre [仟米] = 1,000 米, 約合一英里的三分之二
centimetre [厘米] = 一米的百分之一, 約合三分之一英寸

關于英國的舊制, 有下列各表現法:—

inch [英寸] = 約合中國 0.73 寸
foot [英尺] = 12 inches = 約合中國 8.7 寸
yard [碼] = 3 feet = 2 6 中國尺
mile [英里] = 1,760 yds. = 約合 3.3 華里
furlong [?] = 220 yds. = 八分之一英里.
fathom [噚] = 6 ft. 或 2 yds. (特指測量水的深淺時)
5′ 4″ = five feet four inches [五英尺四英寸]

這些名辭的複數, 差不多都是加 -s, 除非當修飾語用, 如 a five-*foot* shelf, two-*yard* stick, three *inch* (或 inches) wide. 下列體積, 面積, 和立方的表現法也要學習:—

four square feet (4 sq. ft.) = 四平方英尺, 四方尺
four feet square = 四英尺見方, 四尺見方

five sq. yds. = 五平方碼,五方碼
square mile = 平方英里,方哩
acre = 4,840 sq. yds. = 英畝 [中文的'畝' (*now*) 是一個變易莫定的量度]
three feet long by four feet wide, 或 three by four (往往寫作 3′×4′)
14″×8″ = fourteen inches long by eight inches wide
four cubic feet = 四立方英尺,四立方尺
twenty cubic centimetres = 二十立方厘米

注意言體積時可以說 A thing is the size of ～, is twice (或 half) the size of ～. 又,注意我們時常說 "A man is *a hundred yards* off" / "The water is *four inches* deep", 把 a hundred yards 和 four inches 當做副詞短語, off 一詞當做形容詞用.

【練習四十四】 試以下列表現法造句:—

five feet high
five feet four
three inches deep (thick)
eight by ten
a few steps from here
a hundred paces from ～
quarter of a mile
miles and miles away
a long (short) way off
a long (short) distance from ～
within sight
within call
at a stone's throw
within a bowshot
within an earshot
by a long way
near at hand
about a hundred yards off
three blocks further (cross three streets)
the size of a pea
the height of a lamp-post
the thickness of this book
about an hour's walk from ～
ten minutes' ride from ～
near (close) by a place

6.50. 〔形狀的表現法: 英文之不辨形狀〕 我們比較中英文形狀的意念時,有一種很大的差別值得注意. 在中文里,每逢說到一件東西,沒有不想到它的形狀的,但是,英文呢,如果從純粹中文的觀點看起來,那就好像是不辨形狀的一種民族的言語似的. 這又是中文思想法是極其具體而綜合的一個例子.

英文只要說 *a* fish, *a* table, *a* bookcase, *an* ox 便認爲滿足了，但是中文里卻不然，例如：—

一條魚 (one "strip" fish)
一張桌子 (one "flat piece" table)
一架書橱 (one "shelf" book-case)
一頭牛 (one "head" ox)
一座山 (one "seat" hill)
一把刀 (one "grip" knife)
一管筆 (one "tube" brush)
一盞燈 (one "small-cup" lamp)
一灣溪水 (one "curve" river)
一鉤新月 (one "hook" new moon)

有時候，甚至連抽象的事物也用得着這種'形狀意念' (shape-notion), 如：—

一門親事 (one "door" marriage)
一團晦氣 (one "lump" depressed spirit)
一腔熱誠 (one "throat" enthusiasm)
一場惡夢 (one "scene" bad dream)
一股勇氣 (one "bunch" courage)
一道命令 (one "path" official order)

可是這一種思想方法，在英文里雖然不普遍，但不是全然沒有的。例如在 "The Trial of Mary Dugan" 一齣戲里，那個歌女 Mary Dugan 在法庭上被檢察官刁難訊問得無地自容的時候，于失望中喊出 "Oh, won't you leave me one *shred* of my reputation?", 她用的這個短語就含有一種很明顯的形狀意念。注意下列各成語：—

a *cake* of soap —塊肥皂
a *bar* of soap —條肥皂
a *ball* of cotton yarn —綹棉紗
a *sheet* of paper —張紙
a *drop* of water —滴水
a *grain* of sand, rice, justice —粒沙，一粒米，一點公道
a *piece* of mutton, hair, paper, luck —片羊肉，一根頭髮，一張紙，一件幸事
a *strip* of land, cloth, paper —片土地，一塊布，一張紙條
a *ray* of hope —綫希望
a *shower* of criticism —陣批評
a *sea* of trouble 無窮麻煩
an *expanse* of water —片汪洋
a *cloud* of arrows 矢如雨下
a *ear* of corn —串麥穗
a *lump* of sugar —塊糖
a *bit* of water, honey, food, paper —點水，蜜，食物，紙
a *slice* of bread —片麵包
20 *head* of cattle 廿頭牲口

再，參看集合名詞及質詞的表現法，如 a bunch of grapes, a suit of clothing, a jar of honey 等 (§§5.11, 5.23).

6.60. 【位置的表現法】 在英文里，位置通常用介詞 副詞以及形容詞指明。 可是要記得，介詞和副詞的關係非常密切，它們的區別往往純粹是游移不定的。 如：—

[形] He is *in*.
[副] He goes *in*.
[介] He is *in* the house.

介詞而不能當做意味相同或相似的形容詞或副詞的，數目實在少得很。

介	形	副
up the river (船) 上水	he is *up* 他起來了	going *up* 上去
off the coast 岸外	mind is *off* 心不在焉	goes *off* 走開
by his side 他身旁	*by*-path 小徑	passes *by* 走過
inside the room 房間里	people *inside* 里面的人	goes *inside* 進去
above your head 你頭上	man *above* 上面的人	stay *above* 停在上面
below him 他以下	man *below* 下面的人	look *below* 向下張望
under the water 水里	*under*-dog 走狗	go *under* (sink) 沈下
between them 他們中間	a layer *between* 中間一層	came *between* 居間
over the top 頂上	meeting is *over* 會開過了	talk it *over* 商量
about this point 關于這點	is *about* to 將要	turn *about* 轉身

在 "*up* train" 〔上行車〕, "man *below* (above)" 里，up 和 below 可以作爲原來是副詞而當做形容詞用的看待，如 "The *then* (reigning) king" 〔當時 (在位) 的國王〕 的 then 一樣。 還有 "His visits *home* are few and far *between*" 〔他回家的次數既少，而且相隔又久〕 一句，副詞 home 和 between 當做形容詞用。 所以，介詞和地方或位置的副詞以及形容詞之間的密切關係，最要認識清楚。 像 far, near, with, without, besides,

beside, away 這些詞兒，要學習怎樣用法。是不是都可以當介詞用的?

凡介詞短語用起來都有形容詞或副詞的作用，這一點更加容易明白了。所以叫'介詞短語'的，是指其形式而言（都是以介詞起首）；所以叫'形容詞短語'或'副詞短語'的，是指其作用而言。

He came *into the house* (當副詞，修飾 came).
He is *in the house* (當形容詞，修飾 he).

還有一點很有趣的，就是 (A) 位置的形容詞往往作名詞用，並且往往有 (B) "介詞＋副詞"，或 (C) "副詞＋介詞" 或 "介詞＋介詞" (＝複合介詞) 的結構，于此足見副詞和介詞的區別本來是游移不定的了。"Up to", "down in", "on to" 等等明明是複合介詞，正和 upon, into, unto 差不多。

(A)

the *above* 上面
the *next* 其次的
the *last* 最後的
the *rear* 後方
the *front* 前方
the *east* 東方
the *west* 西方
to the *right* 向右
on the *left* 在左邊

(B)

over here 在這里
over there 在那里
round here 在這附近
from above 從上面
from on high (＝from above) 從高處
from abroad 從外國

(C)

down in the room 在下面房間里
up from slavery 奴隸出身
in between them 介于他們中間
on with it 開始進行
away with the old 去舊
on to the new 迎新
jump *on to* the stage 登舞台
get *down from* the car 從車子里面下來
run *up to* the house 跑到屋子面前
look *up to* the man 看重人，尊崇人
look *down upon* him 輕視人
from within 從里面
from behind the forest 從樹林後面
out from a place 從某處出來
get *on with* a fellow 與人相處
up to the present 直至現在

又,注意下列這些常見的成對的詞兒:—

over and *above* 另外,額外
around and *above* us 上下四周
to and *fro* 往來,向前向後
back and *forth* 往來,前後
right and *left* 左右
here and *there* 各處,到處
round and *round* 團團轉,輪轉
on and *on* 前行復前行
in and *out* 里外,翻里
off and *on* 時作時輟,欲行又止

這些通常都當做副詞短語用.

6.61. 【介詞的特殊用法】 別國人學英文,最大的困難之一,便是適當的介詞的用法. 這是因爲介詞用起來完全依從習慣法的程度,比較任何別的一種詞類更加深些. 這種習慣法因詞兒不同,因語言不同,在在都生變化. 例如我們應該說 "The ship floats *on* water", 這自然是極其明白的了,但爲什麼要說 "The house is *on* fire" 而非 "*in* fire", 這可不十分明白了. 這個只有習慣法才能決定,而且習慣法這東西在各國語言里都不相同. 英文里要用 "in bed", 但中文里卻用 '在牀上' (直譯 "on bed").

英文的動詞和形容詞含有特定的意味時,往往需要一定的介詞. 這些介詞和前面的動詞或形容詞合成一種含有一定意義的成語. 因此 "wait for" 意卽 '等待', 而 "wait on" 卻是 '服事人' 或 '侍候人' 的意思. 所以, 動詞和形容詞後接介詞的用法要嚴密注意,這在好的字典里大都是有說明的. 下列許多成語可作習例,注意意義的轉變以及介詞用法所有的那種完全游移不定的性質.

on the train 在車上
get *on* the horse 上馬
house is *on* fire 屋子着火
dog is *on* the chain 狗套上鎖鏈
march *on* London 攻倫敦
drew knife *on* me 拔刀相向
turn back *on* person 拒人
look *at* thing 看東西

look *on* game 旁觀球戰
look *into* matter 勘查事實
look *upon* something 視物
look *up to* person 景仰某人
look *down upon* person 卑睨某人
look *over* manuscript 閱稿
look *about* 環顧
look *forward to* 期望
look *back upon* 回顧,追憶
get *at* meaning 明白意思
get *up* from bed 起牀
get *on with* friend 與朋友相處
get *away from* place 避開某地
get *through with* work 做完工作
get *down to* work 坐下做事
get used *to* thing 慣于某事

指旅行而言的 up 和 down 的用法,和中文的'上','下'極其相像. 如 "up north"〔北上〕, "down south"〔南下〕, 所以凡到較高的所在或首都或大學去,大抵用 up, 反過來便用 down. "Around" 這個詞兒在英國的習慣法里漸漸消滅了, 現在改用 round 代替. 凡美國人要用 turn *around* / go *around* to the post / the church *around* the corner / loaf *around* a place 的地方,這些表現法在英國已經是不可能了. 英國人總是用 *round* here / *round* the corner / seated *round* the table / stationed *round* the field.

具體位置的意念自然蛻化而成抽象關係的意念. 關于表明關係的介詞 (angry *with* a person, angry *at* something), 參看第十五章.

第七章 代表法

7.10. 【代表法】 我們如果說 "John speaks to John's mother, but John's mother does not hear John", 個個人都覺得這一句陳述長得無謂而且笨得很. 通常是說 "John speaks to *his* mother, but *she* does not hear *him*". His, she, him 這幾個詞兒是代表,或代替, John's, John's mother, 和 John 的. 因此我們往往說代名詞是代替名詞的. 這句話的確不錯, 不過要記得, 這個界說也和別的一切界說一樣, 不可看得過于認眞. 如 John's mother 中的 mother, 雖可以說是代替,或代表, Mrs. X, 然而只算是名詞,而不是代名詞.

我們學文法的人所應該記住的更重要的一點,便是我們在這里只是討論代表法的一般問題. 我們用 she 代表 Mrs. X, 因爲談話時是需要經濟的. 所以要用代表法的,這有種種原因:如講究經濟,變化,表現力,以及爲社交的關係. 但是這不僅限于代名詞一類, 例如 "He forgot to take the cover off, although I told him *to*" (或 "to take the cover off"), 便是有意避免重複,設法求得經濟,正如用 she 代 Mrs. X 一樣.

在另一方面,當我們有意避免說 "*I* believe" 而另用 "*we* believe" 或 "*the present writer* believes" 的時候,我們不是爲求經濟,乃是滿足一種講求謙恭的需要. 中國女人指丈夫往往不提名字,而用'某某的爹',或者用一個極其含糊不明的'他',她因爲害羞也是用的代表法 (Representation) 的一種形式. 最後,當新聞記者寫了一句 "*A certain* general is reported to have sent a large consignment of *a certain* commodity to

Shanghai"〔據聞有某項大宗貨品由某將軍運往上海〕而不說明'姓甚名誰的將軍販的是毒品'，他是用代表法，免得被捉將官里去的。

至于用于代表法上的詞兒，那當然是以代名詞爲最重要的一類了。我們在這一章里，不特要研究代名詞的形式，並且要研究用代表法的各種旨趣。所以除代名詞以外，我們也要研究各種代表法，如用暗比 (metaphor)，用間接陳述 (indirect statement)，以及用省略文的代表法。

人稱代名詞

7.20. 【人稱代名詞：位和人稱】談到代名詞，我們總想到 I, you, he, she, it, we, they. 這些詞兒叫做'人稱代名詞' (Personal Pronouns)，在詞類中它們形成最重要的一類。此外還有非人稱代名詞 (Impersonal Pronouns) 以及別的代名詞，這些我們以後再討論。一切人稱代名詞，除了 it，都是指人的，這里還可以把 *who* 也包括在一起講。

這些代名詞是屬于三種'人稱' (persons)，三種'位' (cases) 的。在下表中，古廢體加括號。

	單數	複數
第一人稱	I	we
第二人稱	you (thou)	you
第三人稱	he, she, it	they

作動詞的主語用的 *I*, *you*, *he* 等居于'主位' (Nominative Case); *my*, *your*, *his* 等居于'領位' (Possessive Case); 作動詞或介詞的賓語的 *me*, *you*, *him* (see *me*, for *me*) 等居于'賓位' (Objective Case).

主位	I	(thou)	he	she	it	we	you	they	who
領位	my	(thy)	his	her	its	our	your	their	whose
賓位	me	(thee)	him	her	it	us	you	them	whom

關于賓位代名詞,有一件事很奇特,便是:通常它們都作'輕讀' (unaccented), 在發音上都是和前面的動詞或介詞連接起來,彷彿是一個詞兒當中的幾個音節 (syllables). 如:

Don't *believe it* [bi'li:vit].
Don't *tell them* ['telðəm, 'teləm].
I can't *see him* ['si:him, 'si:im, 'si:m].
Was glad to *meet her* ['mi:tə] (與 metre 同音).
No use *denying it* [di'naiiŋit].
in it ['init], *above it* [ə'bʌvit].
once *upon a* time ['wʌnsəpənə'taim].
at home [ət'houm, 或 ə'toum], *at it* [ətit, 或 'ætit].
to him ['tu(:)im], *to me* ['tu:mi:].
for us ['fərʌs, 'fərəs; 或 'fɔ:-].

中國學生通常讀成 [bi'li:v / 'it], ['təl / 'ðəm], ['si: / 'him], ['mi:t 'hə:] 等——這些都讀錯了. 這些代名詞惟有強調時才加重音,如 "for *me*, not for *you*" [fə 'mi:, nɔt fɔ 'ju:].

7.21. 【Mine, Thine 等】 細讀下列幾句:—

This is *my* book.
This is *her* ring.
You bring *your* book.
It is *my* pleasure.
It is *your* fault.

It is *mine* ['main].
The ring is *hers* ['hə:z].
They will bring *theirs* ['ðɛəz].
The pleasure is *mine*.
The fault is *yours* ['jɔ z].

注意用于 my, thy 等之後的名詞省略時，便將這些代名詞變成 mine, thine 等。這些詞兒，只有 "its" 是例外，其餘都是成對的，如下表：

my——mine	our——ours
thy——thine	your——yours
his——his	their——theirs
her——hers	whose——whose

有一種特別用法，可于下例中看出：—

Our friend.	*A* friend *of ours* [我們的一個朋友].
My pen.	*This* pen *of mine* [我的這枝鋼筆].
Their relative.	*A* relative *of theirs* [他們的一個親眷].
Jimmy's (his) brother.	*A* brother *of Jimmy's* (*his*) [傑美 (他) 的一個兄弟].
Your boy-husband.	*That* boy-husband *of yours* [你那位小孩子氣的丈夫].
Your filial son.	*That* filial son *of yours* [你們的那個孝順兒子].
Her uncle's book.	*That* book of *her uncle's* [她叔父的那本書].

在這一類表現法里，老是帶有親密的色彩。注意不可說 "*that your* son", 或 "*this my* pen", 但必須說 "*that* son *of yours*", 或 "*this* pen *of mine*" (參看 §8.30).

【練習四十五】 下列 1—5 句中凡可省之名詞即行刪去，而以 mine, thine 等詞兒代之；6—10 句中則用 a . . . of yours, that . . . of mine 等.

1. I will give you my book, and you will give me your book.
2. My mother is older than her mother.
3. He forgot to bring his dictionary. I have not forgot my dictionary.
4. It is both your fault and his fault.
5. Here is a handkerchief. Whose handkerchief is it?
6. That son you have is up for mischief.
7. He is my father's darling friend.
8. That is his pet notion.
9. That is one of my bad habits.
10. It has been my fond dream to visit Europe.

7.22. 【謙恭·尊敬·親密的影響】 上面已經說過，代名詞是作代表法的各種旨趣用的。 所以，旨趣發生變化時，代名詞也因而起了變化。

我們往往因爲 '謙恭' (**modesty**)——無論誠心的或虛僞的——的關係，設法避免用 "I" 用得太多，(特別在文章里，) 而另以意義比較含混的 "we" 來代替，如 *we* believe / *we* have often seen / if *we* are to believe his words / if *we* are mistaken. 在文章里面尤其是這樣。 有時候，例如 "It has come to the *present writer's knowledge* that . . . 〔筆者得悉 . . .〕一句，"*the present writer's* knowledge" 便是代替 "*my* knowledge" 用的。 又，在正式簽字的文書里，"the undersigned" 〔下方署名者〕(單或複) 往往和第三人稱的動詞同用，如 *The undersigned* is (或 are) of the opinion 〔僉謂〕 that . . . . 參看中文以 '鄙人', '愚', '區區', '兄弟', '僕', '愚見', '鄙意', 代替 '我', '吾', '吾意' 的用法。 這個當然總是拘守儀式時用的，而且有時候或者覺得矯揉做作，而不自然。 參看 one 的 '謙恭' 用法 (§7.24, "c").

在另一方面，因爲要對長輩或生客表示 '尊敬' (**respect**) 或 '謙讓' (**deference**)，往往也逼得我們避免用一個直截的 "you". 參看中文 '楊先生', '煥章先生', '尊意' '台命'，以及北京話的以 '您' 代 '你', '汝意'。 英文里用 "you" 稱呼長輩和生客，是極其普遍的，而中文卻要改稱 '楊先生', '陳女士', '煥章先生' 等。

下列表現法也要學習：—

I object [我不願], *your Honour* [閣下] (對于法官的尊稱).

Your Majesty [陛下] (對國王，女王，皇帝，皇后的尊稱). 又，用第三人稱：*His Majesty the King, Her Majesty the Queen, Their Majesties the King & Queen*, 因此有 H. B. M. (His or Her Britannic Majesty), H. M. S. (His Majesty's ship).

Your (His, Her) Royal Highness [殿下] (對皇子,公主,或王公等的尊稱).
Your Excellency [閣下] (對大使,總督及其夫人的尊稱). 又如: "the **late** H. E. Wu Ting-fang" [已故伍廷芳 (博士) 閣下]. It is ***His Excellency's*** desire, etc.
Received an order from *yourself*, 或 *your good self* [收到先生定單一紙] (祇用于商業函件, "good" 只表敬意祝意, 大都可以不譯).

在另一方面,爲要表示 '親密' (**familiarity**), 我們卻要用平直而自然的 "I" 和單刀直入的 "you", 一個人說話寫文章能夠一任自然也是好事. 在小品文 '娓語筆調' ("familiar style" of essays) 以及私人信件里, 我們寫起來就如同和密友燕談,態度一點也無拘束,這一種文章自有其美妙的風格. 因此寫幽默文章的人也通常都用平直的 "I" 和 "you" (*I* believe, *I* met, *I* know, *I* doubt, *I* can't understand, *you* know jolly well, *you* will never understand, not if *you* die in the attempt 等).

此外還有種種因素——社交的或心理的. 比方一個中國摩登少女有時即使對外人指她的父親也稱 '爸爸', 這或許是由于想自命嫻雅的關係吧. 有小孩子的人家, 如 "mother", "mammy", "daddy", "uncle", "auntie" 等名辭一定取別的稱呼而代之,因而丈夫往往指妻子時說 "mother", 這是對小孩子說的 ("How is mother?", "Where's daddy?"). 又如下例:—

Damn it, *kid*, I love you! (用于情人之間)
But, *my dear sir*, this is not so simple (譏諷,或親密). 又,意味相同的, 如: *my good sir, my dear fellow, my good man, my good woman* (參看 '老兄啊!').
How is my *baby*? (對情人或妻子)
Don't let the *old man* know. (指父親或丈夫).
What does *your old man (woman)* say? (丈夫或妻子)
But *yours truly* will not be there. (*I* 的俚語說法)
What can *a fellew* do? (以代 *What can I do*?)
Ask my *Mrs.* She knows all about it. How is your *Mrs.*? [我的太太, 你的太太] (*wife* 的普通親密的稱呼)

參看中文的'老頭子','好人兒'(情人),'(他的)老太太','朋友',以及上海方言中的'阿叔'以及'先生 banq!'(略似'你這位先生哪',不過其中含有更多的譏諷或輕蔑的成分; banq 借用上海方言拉丁化). 又如紅樓夢里賈家的人稱賈母爲'老祖宗'.

在英文里,用 "my wife", "my husband" 當做指稱的名辭,是極其正當的. (參看中文'內子','內人','外子','小兒','令嬡'以及妻子對丈夫自稱爲'妾'.)

在這里我們要特別提出 "royal we" 和 "editorial we": 第一個是皇帝女王下詔書,欽命時用的 ("It has *our* approval", "*We* feel better today"); 第二個是新聞記者在社論里用的 ("*We* do not think it fit to publish the said letters"). 這兩種實例都是根據共同負責的觀念而來.

7.23. 【反身代名詞和交互代名詞】英文里除正常的代名詞以外,還有'本身代名詞' (self-pronouns), 卽'反身代名詞' (Reflexive Pronouns):—

myself [mai'self]·····ourself, ourselves [auə'self, auə'selvz]
thyself [ðai'self]·····yourself, yourselves [jɔ:'self, jɔ:'selvz]
himself [him'self]
herself [hə:'self] ·····themselves [ðəm'selvz]
itself [it'self]
oneself, 或 one's self [wʌn'self, wʌnz 'self]

注意這一類的代名詞,其重音都在 "-self", "-selves", 不可讀到第一音節上. 又,注意 "themselves" 的 them- 要讀 [ðəm-], 或 [ðm-], 不可讀 [ðem-].

"Ourself" (單) 很少用,除了和 "royal we" (§7.22) 連用. "Yourself" 是 "Yourselves" 的單數. 一般地講,這些本身代名詞有兩種用處:一是表示反身的或反照的動作 (reflexive or

reflected action), 一是表示強調。下面先列舉些反身動作的例 ("~self" = 自己,自身):—

He killed *himself* [自殺].
Understand *yourself* [須有自知之明].
Protect *yourself* [自衛].
Amused *oneself* with *novels* [以小說自娛].
Deceive *oneself* [自欺].
Believed *himself* to be a genius [自信是天才].
Got *themselves* into trouble [自討苦吃,自尋苦惱].
Made *oneself* a nuisance [自討人厭].
Dragged *himself* from bed [從牀上慢慢地爬起來].
Don't starve *yourself* [別挨餓].
If you do, you have only *yourself* to blame [只怪自己不好].
Gave *herself* a holiday [自動休假].
Give *oneself* airs [裝腔作勢].
Rest *yourself* [將息將息].
System lends *itself* to abuse [制度適足以濫用].
Magazine pays for *itself* [雜誌值價,買得不吃虧].
Tomorrow will take care of *itself* (即'今朝有酒今朝醉, 明日愁來明日當'之意).

強調用法的舉例如下 ("~self" = 自己,親自;本人):—

She *herself* said it.
You *yourself* did it.
I *myself* saw it.
I saw it *myself*.
Ask the lady *herself*.
Tell him *yourself*.
You *yourself* told me.
They *themselves* are to blame [怪他們自己不好].
Even the king *himself* didn't know [連國王本人也不知道].
We *ourselves* would do the same on like occasions [遇到同樣的情形,我們自己也是這樣].

在上面例句中,本身代名詞 (self-pronouns) 是加重先行的代名詞的意義,而且和它們是同位 (in apposition) 的。只用本身代名詞而取消先行的代名詞,也是可能的:—

Ask *herself*.
It was *myself*.
My wife is the same age as *myself*.
What *ourselves* would do is none of your business.
Ourselves are to blame.

但是用 *Myse'f* saw it / *Himself* went there, 卻不大妙。此外又有 *for themselves* / the thing *in itself* / They sat *by themselves* [獨坐] 和 *your own self* 等用法。

複合代名詞"each other" 和"one another"〔彼此〕指明交互的動作 (reciprocal action), 叫做'交互代名詞' (Reciprocal Pronouns), 其用法舉例如下:—

Do you know *each other*?	Copy sentences for *each other*
Ask *each other* questions.	Tear *each other's* hair
Change dresses with *one another*.	Look into *each other's* face.
Tell *one another* stories.	*Each* looks into *the other's* face.
Share *one another's* money.	They hate *each other*.
Share money with *one another*.	*Each* hates *the other*.

"Each other" 和"one another" 在現在用法是相同的. 所謂"each other" 指兩人而"one another" 指兩人以上的這句話,既無此分別的必要,這種區別又無用處,而且在文字史上也沒有根據.

【練習四十六】 (1) 試以本身代名詞造句,作爲强調之用 (如 I myself, you yourself 等)

(2) 試以下列各動詞造句,以表明交互動作: help, fight, cheat, dislike, quarrel, make peace with, trade with, salute, suspect, trust, recognize, know, dispise. 又,上列各例中之材料可自由引用.

7.24. 【一般人稱: "One", "People" 等】 我們常用"*One* may think, *People* may think" 泛指模糊不明的一般的人或社會. 這個既非第一人稱,又非第二人稱,又非第三人稱,因爲它實在是三種人稱都指到的所謂'一般人稱' (General Person). 這種 one, people 便是中文里的'人','別人','旁人','人家','世人'的意思. 在英文里表明這種抽象的一般人稱有種種方法,細讀下列各句:—

People may think you crazy.
They may think you crazy.
One may think you crazy.
} 〔人家或者以爲你是發狂了.〕

To hear you talk like that, *one* would think you are crazy.

On looking over the statement carefully, *one* is tempted to 〔極易〕

think that you are paid to sing praises of the Board [被人收買了去說局里委員的好話]

One will have to be more careful in speech, if *one* values *one's* life.
You will have to be more careful in speech, if *you* value *your* lives.
We shall have to be more careful in speech, if *we* value *our* lives.

此處 "we" 和 "you" 實在也是用以指明一般人稱的. You 作這種意味用時,只限于娓語筆調里.

"One" 的用法須特別加以注意. 在這里可以分爲兩種意義來講:—

(a) *One* hates *his* enemies and another forgives them.
(b) *One* hates *one's* enemies and loves *one's* friends.

第一例中, one 實在是 "one man" 的縮短的形式. 第二例中, 它是指的一般人稱,意義和 people 相同. 不過作第二種意味時,除主語以外,其餘最好用 one's, oneself, one 而不用 his, himself, he, him (*One* knows *one's* own weakness, 非 *his* own weakness), 雖則在美國以及英國有些作家們, one 後用 he, his 的非常普通. One 還有第三種用法,那便是代替 "I" 的謙恭用法:—

(c) After reading this, *one* gets a confused feeling about the whole affair (= *I* get, etc.)
On inquiring further, *one* was told, etc. (= *I* was told, etc.)

不過把 one, I, we, you, people 用在同一句里,胡亂地代替同一人稱,那無論如何總不是好英文.

【練習四十七】 (a) 指出下列各句中之 one 抑泛指一人,或特指一人,或實係 I 之替身:—

1. I saw *one* on the floor and picked *it* up.
2. *One* came in and was followed by another.
3. *One* cannot always spend money on others: *he* (用 *one* 較妥) must also plan for *his* (用 *one's* 較妥) own future.
4. He spoke so eloquently that *one* was inclined to believe him.

5. He asked me for help. Could *one* refuse in such circumstances?

(b) 改正下列句中 one, I, we, you, people 之混亂用法:—

6. The use of "one" is rather new to *you*, so *one* has to be careful.
7. If *one* looks into the minutes of the meeting, *you* will be surprised how much time was wasted in useless discussion.
8. *We* would have gone on infinitely, had *one* had time to do so.
9. *One* must be patient, if *we* want to succeed.
10. *People* always criticize the older generation, and when *they* grow old, *you* do the same.

人稱和位的矛盾

7.30. 【人稱的矛盾】 我們在 §5.40 里已經講過,數有時要發生矛盾的。 不過有時還可以有人稱上的矛盾,或數和人稱兩者都發生矛盾,使人用起來極感不便。 所以 (1) 如 "He or I *am* (*is?*) to blame", "Neither I nor you *are* (*am?*) allowed to speak", 我們用什麽好呢? 在這種地方,任何一條規則,各文法家議論紛紜,莫衷一是,在事實上,習慣法根本無規則之可言。有一種方法是依從吸引的力量,卽依從最接近的那個代名詞,如: "He or I *am* to blame", 但 "I or he *is* to blame", 以及 "*Are* you or I next?" 但 "*Am* I or you next?" 還有一種比較好的方法,便是避免這種結構,而用 "He *or* I should be blamed", 或 "*Either* he is to blame, *or* I am to blame." 這第二種方法在文章里老是可能的,應該多多引用。

(2) 遇有數的矛盾時,如果主語中有一個是複數,或兩個主語形成一個複數,那末便用複數動詞。

Either he or **his brothers** *fail* in *their* duty.
You and I *are* out of danger now.
I and he *were* on the same train.
I hear **you and he** *are* cousins.

(3) 在 some of us, some of you 這一類結構中,又有一種困難發生了. 在這種地方,我們可以信託'常理' (commonsense) 而決定用什麽詞兒才對. 細讀下列各句:—

Some of us think *they* (非 *we*) can fight without my leadership. (說者不在其內)
Some of us think *we* (非 *they*) can conquer by passive resistance. (包括說者在內)
Some of you believe *they* can make more money that way.
Most of us lost *our* heads [狼狽,倉皇] (如果包括說者在內), 或: Most of us lost *their* heads (如果說者自以爲是例外的話).

(4) 但困難猶不止此. 還有關係代名詞 who 呢. Who 在人稱和數上面老是和跟它有關係的那個先行的詞兒 ("antecedent"=先行詞) 是一致的. 細讀下列各句:—

Don't choose **me**, *who am* already burdened with too much **work**.
It is not **you** *who are* in trouble, it is **I** *who am* in trouble.
I am not **one** *who is* (非 *am*) afraid of criticism.
I am not **one** *who cares*.
You are the **one** *who was* (非 *were*) elected.

【試習四十八】 (a) 試以下列成語造句:—

1. I who am
2. You who are
3. He who is
4. We who are
5. He who has
6. They who have
7. He who knows
8. We who know

(b) 決定下列各句中應用何詞:—

1. It is not he who *have* (*has*?) cheated you. It is you who ***have*** (***has***?) cheated him.

2. You are the man who *break* (*breaks*?) his promise.
3. Are you he who *were* (*was*?) here some time ago?
4. Either he or you *is* (*are*?) wrong. (此句句式可任意變換)
5. I hear you and he *are* (*is*?) good friends.
6. You who . . . so strong —— you ought to be ashamed of yourself beating him who . . a mere child.

7.31. 【位的矛盾: "Who", "Whom", "Whoever", "Whomever"】 這里共有三種位的格式要加以討論: (a) "It-is-I" 式, (b) "who" 與 "whom" 的用法, (c) "whoever" 與 "whomever" 的用法.

(1) 在 "It *is* I", "It *is* he" 句中, I 和 he 在意義上並不是 is 的賓語. 所以用主位. 又如:—

It was not *I*.
Then *who* (非 *whom*) is it?
If anybody is to be punished, it should be *he* (非 *him*).
Is this *she* (非 *her*) whom I am going to marry?

(2) **Who 與 Whom.** 關係代名詞 who 或 whom 的用法和它的先行詞毫無關係,但完全看它在 who 的子句里的關係如何而決定. (在下例中 who 的子句加括號.)

He deserted me (*who* gave him his chance in life). [*gave* 的主語]
His mother is the person (*who* loves him best). [She loves him best]
His mother is the person (*whom* he loves best). [He loves her best]
Don't argue with me (*who* am trying to help you). [*am* 的主語]

凡位有不同時,應該用兩個不同的詞兒,如:—

His name is Alfonso, *who* is their king *and whom* they are trying to overthrow.
Hackett was her husband, *who* often maltreated her, *and whom* she hated like poison.

有時因爲插入了一個獨立子句,如 I think, they suppose 等,而弄亂了,不過這規則卻仍然不變。 試比較下列各句:—

Then came Mr. Dobson, *who* (非 *whom*) **we knew** was a grocer. **We knew** *he* (非 *him*) was a grocer.

Then came Mr. Dobson, *whom* **they knew** to be a grocer. **They knew** *him* to be a grocer.

He met the girl *whom* **he recognized** to be his childhood friend. **He recognized** *her* (非 *she*) to be his childhood friend.

News came from Captain Johnson, *who*, **they had thought**, was dead. *He*, **they had thought**, was dead.

News came from Captain Johnson, *whom* **they had regarded** as dead. **They had regarded** *him* as dead.

又,注意下列兩句:—

I don't know (*who* did it).
We will decide (*who* is to go first).

這整個 who 的子句是 know 和 decide 的賓語,所以不用 whom. 而且,這 who 或 whom 的用法要靠它在子句內的關係而定。

(3) **Whoever 與 Whomever.** 跟 who 與 whom 一樣, whoever 或 whomever 的用法也是完全靠它在子句內的關係如何而決定。 "Whoever" 便是 "any person who", "whomever" 便是 "any person whom" 的意思。

Whoever says so is a liar or a knave. (Any person *who* says so, etc.)
Whoever comes is welcome. (Any one *who* comes, etc.)
Whomever they met was asked to contribute a few dollars. (Any person *whom* they met, etc.)
I will marry *whoever* comes first my way. (I will marry any one *who* comes, etc.)
They stopped *whomsoever* they saw. (They stopped any person *whom* they saw.)
For *whomever* he met he had a nod. (For any one *whom* he met, etc.)
For *whoever* met him he had a nod. (For any one *who* met him, etc.)

因此可作如下的結論:—

數與人稱		位
與前行的詞兒一致: "*I* who *am*", "*you* who *are*" 等	WHO	由于後隨的詞兒而決定: "who *knows*", "whom *they know*"

【練習四十九】 決定下列各句中究應用 who 或 whom, 並說明何故:—

1. The question regarding *who(m)* was to blame for the Great War is not so simple as the ignorant people imagine.
2. She kept the secret from him *who(m)* ought to know everything.
3. It was not he *who(m)* she was afraid of, but his lawyer.
4. It was not he *who(m)* was afraid of her, but she *who(m)* was afraid of him.
5. You need not be afraid of him *who(m)* you know is a perfect gentleman.
6. She was the girl *who(m)* I met yesterday.
7. He is a man *who(m)* they detest.
8. To those *who(m)* have, more shall be given.
9. He likes those *who(m)* flatter him and hates those with *who(m)* he does not agree.
10. He likes those *who(m)* agree with him.

事物代名詞

7.40. 【事物代名詞】 以上我們談的都是人稱代名詞, 但是此外還有些代名詞是代替事物和人的. 下面這些普通的代名詞在英文里便是代替事物的:—

all	none 無人, 無物	that	these	such 此等人 (或事物)
some	most	this	one 者	former 前者
any	what	those	which	latter 後者

因爲想不到更妥當的名辭,這些我們且稱爲'非人稱代名詞' (impersonal pronouns) 或'事物代名詞' (thing-pronouns). 但是,要記得,這些事物代名詞之中,大半是能夠又指人又指事物的,並且,在另一方面,'人稱代名詞' (personal pronoun) "it" 卻通常都不是指人的. 還有一點很重要,便是,'事物詞' (thing-words) 的代表法是用這些代名詞來表達的.

這些詞兒分明原來差不多全是形容詞:例如由 "I like *those* apples" 而變成 "I like *those*." 細讀下列各句:—

形	代
Which boy?	*Which* is *which*? [何者爲何?]
Which way?	Don't know *which*.
Any new student	Haven't seen *any*.
All things	Don't take *all*.
Some food	Please take *some*.
What thing?	*What* is it?

又,注意,這些詞兒,只除去 this, that (複數 these, those), one (複 ones) 以外,其餘單複數都隨便可用.

None *is*, or *are*, there.
There *is*, or *are*, **none** left.
What *is* the reason? **What** *are* the reasons?
A thing that *makes* you sick Things **that** *make* you sick.
All *is* lost. **All** *are* found
Some of it *is*, **some** of them *are*, rotten. (參看 §5.41 "e")

7.42. 【Some, Any, None】 Some 用于問句及肯定的陳述句中 Any 用于問句及否定的陳述句中.

Do you have *some*?	Do you have *any*?
I have *some*.	I haven't *any*. I have *none*.
Can *some* (one) tell me?	Can *any* (*one*) tell me?
Some can tell me.	*None* can tell me.

【練習五十】 下列空白處填入適當的詞兒 (some, any, none):—

1. There are ·····
2. Are there ·····?
3. May I have ·····?
4. I don't want ·····
5. Give him ·····
6. Don't give him ·····
7. You haven't seen all, but you have seen ·····
8. No, I haven't seen·····
9. Haven't you seen ·····?

7.42. 【What】 What (=that which) 是一個非常有用的詞兒,它所表達的就是中文 '所 . . . ' 或 '所 . . . 的' 的觀念. 如 "*What* he knows is this" = '他所知道 (的) 是這樣'. 試將下列各短語用在句子里:—

what one knows
what one can see
what I am afraid of
what you do in a day
what the government wants
what you pay for
what makes me hate him
what everybody knows
what is useful, useless
what is true, false
what he said
what you heard
what they saw
what frightens him
what woman wants
what to say, think, do

因爲 what 卽 that which 之意,本身已經含有先行詞了所以 all what 不可用,應該用 all that. But what 多半用於口語: 文章里通常用 but that.

That is *all* he knows, 或 That is *all that* he knows (非 *all what* he knows).

All one can do is to wait, 或 *All that* one can do (非 *all what* one can do) is to wait.

Who knows *but that* (*but what*) [誰也知道] he may have purposely told you a lie?

Who can tell *but that* (*but what*) [誰也看得出] he may be the most important man in the country three months hence?

74.3. 【One, Thing, Affair, Something 等】 以 one 代表人的用法,在上面 (§7.24) 已經討論過了. Thing 和 affair 通

常雖不當作代名詞，但是事實上，英文里差不多任何種類的事物依然是最常用這些詞兒來代表的。細讀下列各句：—

Such a nice *one*. (例如指 dress, hat, Christmas tree, apple 等而言)
Give him a good *one* (punch him hard, pitch a baseball). [好好地給他一拳，(棒球) 來一記好球]
That's a good *one* (a good joke, retort, etc.). [笑話說得好，反駁得好，等]
A short life and a merry *one*.
Select the best *ones*. Throw away the bad *ones*.
He started the next revolution, if it may be called *one*.
Stay at any *one* of the dozen families you know in town.
The ones (photographs) you saw.
Open the drawer on the left, the *one* with a key in it.
He writes many poems, but publishes only the *ones* he likes.
The top *one*. The lower *one*. Little *ones*. A new *one*. Two old *ones*. Such a *one*.
(代人) The lucky *ones*. The young *ones*. *One* so fair and beautiful. Like *one* weary of life. Like *one* in a dream. Like *one* risen from the grave [好像從死里復活的人] Offending *one* so powerful. Marry *one* worthy of you. *One* who talks. *One* who dares.

I don't know a *thing* about it. [我半點也不知道]
I don't understand *the whole thing*. [我完全不明白]
The *thing*, or *affair* (或許指 a performance, a party, a dinner, a match, 或 a wedding) was a complete failure.
That's the *thing* (the thing we want, the right thing to give or to do, etc.). [那就對啦，正是那個]
Thing (或 *Affairs*) are better now (general conditions are better).
Take off your *things* (outdoor clothes, hat 等).
The great *thing* is to make a right start.
Blue socks are now *the thing* (the fashion).
(指人) *That thing* Jones. She, *poor thing*, never heard of it. A dear old *thing* (man, woman or animal).
What is the latest *thing* (news)? [最近的消息如何?]
His death is a good *thing*. [他死得正好]
I haven't a *thing* to say. [我無話可說]

Something new [新的東西]. *Something* easy.
Something useful. *Something* to do [可做的事].

Something to live for [生存目的所在的事物].
Something to read.
Something to think about.
Nothing strange [毫不稀奇].
Nothing new.
Nothing difficult.
Nothing worth while.
Nothing to see [沒看頭].
Anything sweet [甜的東西].
Anything above five feet.
Anything to eat.
Anything you want.
Anything you say 你說的話]
Anything you ask
Anything I do [我做的事].

【練習五十一】 試以 one, the one, like one, a thing, the thing, things, something, nothing, anything 等詞兒及成語造句，卽以上列各例爲模範.

7.44. 【That】 That 這個詞兒，和 thing, affair, 等一樣，也往往用以代表一件事實，一句陳述，一種一般的情形，或依稀模糊存在于我們心目中的事物.

That is the trouble. (Something we have just mentioned is the trouble.) [其困難在此.] (that 代剛才說過的一件事)
When was *that*? (When did the thing happen?) [那是什麼時候(的事)?]
That was long ago. [那是早老(的事件或情形)了.]
Oh, is *that* what you mean? (Is what you have just said your real meaning?) [噢，你的意思是這樣嗎?]
Who was *that*? (Who was the person at the door?) [那是誰?]
So *that* is *that*. (結束議論之一點的普通公式)
Now, *that's* a good boy. [乖乖的!] (騙小孩子的方式)
I know *all that*. [一切我都知道了.] *All that* is a waste of your time. [那完全是浪費時間.] *All that* is mere propaganda. [那全是宣傳(作用).]

下面所舉的一種用法特別有趣:—

You have better break his friendship, and *that* (=break it) at once [你還是跟他絕交的好，而且要馬上.]
We have to pay him a monthly bribe and *that* (=pay the bribe) always promptly and in full [我們不得不每月給他賄賂，而且到期就要付，數目不可短少.]

更常見而更重要的是下列的這種用法:—

The climate here is like *that* (=the climate) of France (非 like *France*).

He has a head like *that* (=the head) of an ox, and eyes like *those* of a field mouse.

Her wedding took place at the same time with *that* (=the wedding of her sister.

【練習五十二】 試改正或改造下列各句:一

1. His voice sounds like his brother.
2. Her name resembles her aunt.
3. This has a smell like banana.
4. Her handwriting is neat and small, while Po-liang is big and slovenly.
5. We usually value our own money, and think little of other people's money.
6. We usually like our own composition and fail to appreciate others. [文章自己的好]
7. Everybody thinks his own wife is not so attractive as somebody else's wife. [老婆別人的好]

7.45. 【It】 It這個詞兒也往往是代表一種模糊的事物的. It 當做非人稱動詞 (impersonal verbs) 的主語用時,它所代表的已經夠模糊了,可是當做賓語用時,那就越發變得模糊不明.

作模糊的主語用

It rains. *It* is cold. *It* was hot.
It is winter. *It* was getting dark.
It is six miles to Oxford.
It is too late now.
It says 'keep to the left'. [牌上寫着 '靠左邊走'.]
It says in the Bible that all men are liars. [聖經上說世人都是說謊話的.]

作更模糊的賓語

You must fight *it* out. [奮鬥到底.]
The deuce take *it*! [糟糕! 壞了!] (一種咒詛的方式)
Won't stand *it* any longer. [再也受不了.] (指待遇等而言)

Give *it* him hot. [給他一頓痛打.]
Now you have done *it*. [那末給你弄糟了，或你又犯了這個毛病了.]
Shall we walk *it* or cab *it*? [我們走了去還是坐車子去?]
You can't get away with *it*. [你逃不了了.]
He hasn't got *it* in him. [他沒有本事.]

作補足修飾語 (Complement Modifier)

Yes, that's *it*! [那就對啦!]
For barefaced lying, you are really *It* (此 it 含有特別意義，等于 "the limit", "the ideal") [公然說謊的本事，你眞是登峯造極了.]
In a lilac sun-bonnet, she was *It*. [她戴着一頂紫丁香色的遮陽帽，眞是美得無以復加了.]

再者，it 在英文里有一種很重要的作用，由于它 (a) 幫助把一個長的主語的動詞安放在前面，以及 (b) 幫助把邏輯上重要的詞兒掉到句子的前半部去。

作邏輯主語的同位代用詞

It is a nuisance, *this delay*.	*This delay* is a nuisance.
It is quite true, *all that you say*.	*All that you say* is quite true.
It is true *that he died*.	*That he died* is true.
It is a pity *that you didn't see it*.	*That you didn't see it* is a pity.

作 "that" 的先行詞

I don't like the colour.	*It is* the colour *that* I don't like.
The noise frightened him.	*It was* the noise *that* frightened him.
I didn't object.	*It was* he *that* raised the objection.
We didn't start the fight.	*It was* the Japanese *that* started the fighting.
You don't buy a fountain-pen for its looks.	*It is* service *that* you want.
What the patient needs is better food and more sunshine.	*It is* better food and more sunshine *that* the patient needs.
What he is after now is fame.	*It is* fame *that* he is after now.

此處 "it . . . that" 的結合實在和 what 相等,而便于把動詞 is 搬到句首去。

【練習五十三】(a) 試變動下列冗長之句法,而改用 it 並將動詞緊接于 it 之後,使句法較爲整潔:—

1. That you know the accent of every new English word is important.
2. To feed, clothe and educate the children and keep them clean, to see that the food is always healthy and nourishing, the floor and windows are kept clean, and the carpet is properly beaten, to direct and supervise the servants and prevent their quarrelling, and at the same time to look beautiful and cheerful to one's husband — all this is no easy task for a mother.
3. That you know thoroughly what you have learnt before proceeding to learn something else is advisable.
4. To learn so many subjects at the same time is a little too much for the ch ld.

(b) 將下列句中在邏輯上視爲重要之成分用 it 將其移至句首:—

1. What annoys me is *the constant repetition.*
2. He is not marrying her for love. He is after *her money.*
3. The thing that impressed people most was *Gandhi's mental calm.*
4. What makes me angry is not the content but *the tone* of the letter.
5. What annoyed me was *that constant monkeying with her lips with a lip-stic.*

(c) 試以下列成語造句:—

1. It is true that……
2. It is natural that……
3. It would be unfair to……
4. It is not right that……
5. It is impossible for……to……
6. It is not enough that you……
7. It is more important that you……
8. It is well-known that……

暗 比

7.50. 【暗比以及比喻的表現法】 各國語文都有它的暗比法 (Metaphors), 或比喻的表現法 (Figurative Expressions), 英語自然也不是例外. 暗比在語文里有一種很大的價值, 那就在于它們能保持文字中具體象喻的均衡, 而不使文字變成那些科學家和教授們的一種完全抽象的, 理論的方言. 它們就彷彿常常把文字的'泥土氣息'保留起來. 英文所以被人當作一種遒勁有力的語文看的, 就因爲英文里富于暗比而詞兒的暗比的用法又很豐富的原故. 雖然英文里現在增加了許許多多的科學名辭, 但是眞正的現代英文依然是因爲它里面那些簡單而通俗的詞兒有許多比喻的用法, 才覺得新鮮有味的.

所以暗比能使一個人的文字的表現力大大地增加起來. 有時候, 用了暗比行文可以變得高雅脫俗, 例如稱'守財虜'不說是 miser〔守財虜〕而說是 Jew〔猶太人〕, 或者再經過一次變化說是 a gentleman from Palestine〔巴力斯坦的紳士〕. 但通常所以用暗比的, 還是爲了它們原有的各種美點——卽表現力的各種美點. 稱惡婦爲 she-devil〔女魔鬼, 母夜叉〕, 這是很直接的而且恰到好處, 稱某人是某人的 under-dog〔走狗〕, 那就比稱他是某人的 subservient servant〔賤奴, 賤僕(脅肩諂媚而貼貼伏伏供人使喚的人)〕更加有力了. 如果有人說着沒意思的話 (talking nonsense), 你要教他住嘴, 那末還是說他說的是 "perfect rot"〔胡說霸道, 荒謬絕倫〕比較說它是 "nonsensical talk"〔無謂的話〕來得容易些, 如果一個有錢的布爾喬亞的商人死了, 身後遺下了許多財產, 你要形容他也許用 "He cut up fat"〔肉肥好宰割〕更加妥當呢. 把他比做一隻肥猪, 爲了親屬的享

福而被宰割了，這種具體的象喻能夠把許許多多用抽象的術語所不能表達的事情都暗示了出來。對兵士說他們是 cannon-fodder〔意譯'礮灰'(直譯'礮彈的芻秣')〕，這句話的力量，也許比成篇累牘的那些國際和平獎金當選的論文還比較容易感動人呢。(比較中文的象喻如'俎上魚肉'，'釜底游魂'，'籠中鳥'，'甕中鱉'，'奴顏婢膝'，'驚弓之鳥'，'帶月披星'，'蛛絲馬跡'，以及如西廂記里的'張生筆尖兒橫掃了五千人'那一句詞之類)。

A *misplaced eyebrow*＝位置掉錯了的眉毛(打笑'小鬍髭').
A *dumb bell* (美國俗語)＝'木頭'(比喻不明事理的人，傻子).
A *salamander*＝'火蛇'，歡喜坐在爐旁烤火的人。
A *chatterbox*＝'話匣子'，嘮嘮多言的婦人.
Take a *moral* holiday＝道德休假 (狂嫖濫飲，放縱生活).
Take *rosy-coloured* views＝戴着玫瑰色的眼鏡 (樂觀).
The *seamy side* of life＝人生縫合的一面 (即隱而不現，不甚雅觀的一方面).
Make sheep's eyes at lady＝斜眯了眼睛看女人 (送秋波).
An *eyesore*＝眼中釘 (不願意看到的人或事物，如高堂大廈旁邊的一座茅棚，窮親眷本家等).
An *eyewash* (俗語)＝'洗眼藥水' (騙人的東西，參看中文俗語'(實)野人頭').
A bed of roses＝一花壇的玫瑰 (放逸奢侈的生活).
A crumpled rose-leaf＝摺皺的玫瑰花葉 (幸福生活中的小風波).
Eat one's cake and still have it＝相當于'魚我所欲也，熊掌亦我所欲也'.
Kill the goose that lays the golden eggs＝殺了生金蛋的鵝＝斷了搖錢樹 (爲貪目前的小便宜而犧牲了將來的大好處).
Have one's tail between one's legs＝狗尾巴夾在腿子當中 (喻人駭怖沮喪的形象).
Hold the purse-strings＝'抓住錢袋的人' (掌財政).

像這一類的表現法簡直不勝枚舉。

在英文里，有許多最簡單的詞兒，它們的意義通常是具體的，但是有趣得很，都發展成爲許許多多各種各樣的暗比。下列各例都是採自'簡明牛津字典' (Concise Oxford Dictionary)：—

CAT

That old cat=悍婦,潑婦,老狐狸精.
A cat may look at a king=一視何傷?
Living a cat-and-dog life=夫妻反目,日夜吵架,雞犬不寧.
Let the cat out of the bag=漏泄祕密,走漏風聲.
See which way the cat jumps=取觀望態度,看風頭.
Cult of the jumping cat=騎牆主義.
Rains cats and dogs=大雨傾盆.
Not room to swing a cat=無立錐之地.

DOG

Go to the dogs=雞零狗碎,零落,破滅不可收拾.
Throw to the dogs=唾棄;犧牲.
Every dog has his day=瓦片也有翻身時.
Haven't a dog's chance=極少希望.
Lead a dog's life=過窮苦生活,苟延殘喘.
Give a dog a bad name and hang him=欲加之罪,何患無辭?
You lucky dog!=好造化! 好狗命!
Love me, love my dog=打狗看主面,愛屋及烏.
Let sleeping dogs lie=一動不如一靜,勿無事生非.
Dog in the manger=狗佔馬槽(於自己無用者,且不肯讓人).

DUST

Throw dust in one's eyes=欲圖蒙蔽.
Shake off the dust of one's feet=拂袖而去(不慿).
Bite the dust=戰敗倒斃.
In the dust=歸土,入黃泉.
Humbled to the dust=大受挫辱,辱在泥塗.
Raise a dust=揚塵; 引申爲'引起糾紛'.
Dust and heat=風塵勞頓,汗馬之勞.

FINGER

Done by the finger of God=由于天意,由于神力.
Lay one's finger on=指出(病源等); 隨意拾得.
Look through one's fingers at=佯爲不見.

Won't stir a finger＝不拔一毛.
Turn *or* twist person round one's finger *or* little finger＝作掌上傀儡,任意播弄,玩之股掌之上
My fingers itch to＝手癢,技癢,渴想.
His fingers are all thumbs＝用手笨拙
With a wet finger＝容易,不費吹灰之力,易如反掌.
Burn one's finger＝自作孽; 好管閒事,招惹是非.
Have a finger in the pie＝與聞,染指.
Let slip through one's fingers＝不覺放棄,輕輕放過.
Have subject at one's finger-tips＝嫻熟,拿手好戲.
To the finger-nails＝渾身,自頂至踵,一身(都是)。

我們寫英文要寫得出一種優美而馴熟的風格來,那末對于這一類簡單詞兒的用法,就非特別注意不可。我們中國人寫英文,用起那些拉丁詞源的滿長的詞兒來,往往是很到家的;例如一個大學教務主任談到他新訂的課程時說: "The new curriculum *epitomizes* the *processes* of *modernization* of China" 〔新課程顯示中國現代化程序的概要〕. 其實這句話大可以說 "It shows the modern China in a miniature" 〔它把正在變化中的中國的縮形顯示出來〕或 "It sums up in a nutshell, as it were, the various phases of the changing China" 〔它就彷彿把正在變化中的中國的各個方面都縮小了〕. 對于這種簡單的英文詞兒的習慣用法,中國學生眞正通達的反而非常之少. 一種好的英文風格,其訣竅在于把平凡的詞兒夾在那些比較雍容華貴的詞兒當中,正如 Edward Sapir*那樣地用 "Grammatical *pattern*" 〔文法的花樣〕來代替 types of structure 〔結構的格式〕,用 "the *drift* of language" 〔語文的流程〕來代替 the tendency of language 〔語文的趨勢〕. 與其說 "Mr. MacDonald began *to deal with the problem directly* 〔麥克唐立卽開始處理這個問

*"Language" 一書 (Harcourt, Brace, N. Y.) 之筆者.

題〕，倒不如改爲 "He *came to close grips with* the problem" 〔他緊緊地抓住了這個問題〕，這樣表現力就強得多了．又，"Mr. Lloyd George's efforts at pleasing some Conservatives" 〔勞合喬治的取悅于少數保守黨的苦心〕不如說 "Mr. Lloyd George's *flirtations* with them" 〔勞合喬治的向他們賣弄風情〕的好（比較中文'吊膀子'，'眉來眼去'）．還有，如 "He tries to locate the economic distress" 〔他設法指出經濟困難的焦點〕倘使改爲 "He tries to find *where the shoe pinches*" (where the shoe pinches=what the trouble is, 依字面譯是〔他設法要找出鞋子什麽地方擠緊〕)，那就好得多了．

間 接 陳 述

7.60. 【直接陳述和間接陳述】 我們常常要引用或複述人家說過的話．下面這一句里有一個直接引用句 (direct quotation)，句首用大寫字母，句子前後有引號(quotation marks)：—

> Mr. Barker said to his son, "I am going away from the city for a few days, and you should come home to see your mother everyday." (外國人兒子一結婚都和父母分居，故有此語)

這一句可以變成一種間接的陳述 (**Indirect Statement**)，如下：—

> Mr. Barker said to his son *that he was* going away from the city for a few days *and that he, the son,* should come home everyday to see *his* mother.

這也是代表法的一例，所以這種間接陳述也可以叫做'代表陳述' (represented statements).

在直接引用句里，原文的字句一個字也不可改動，引號應該視爲神聖不可侵犯的．如有字句省略了，必須用刪節號 (dotted line) 標明．

在間接的陳述句中,我們可就不必有這種一字不可更改的限制,當然要按照眞實的意義把代名詞的人稱和動詞的時制都改了過來。

'間接問句'已經在 §3.64 里討論過了。注意:在間接問句中,不可用'動詞主語倒置法',如:

Peterson asked: "*Are you* coming?" (直接)
Peterson asked if *he was* coming. (間接)

間接陳述用 that 導引的時候,間接問句便用 if, whether, how, when, what 等導引,因此有下列各短語:—

ask if	ask why
ask whether	ask when
ask how	ask where
ask what	ask for what reason
ask who	ask by what means, etc.

注意 if 與 whether 同意,可以互相掉換,普通都是用 if 的多。這 if〔是否〕切不可和那個作導引虛擬子句用的 if〔假如〕相混。翻閱 §3.64 作爲溫習。

在間接的命令和請求句中,動詞常和助動詞 should, would, are to, were to 等同用。如只用動詞的時候,便用無限式以表現在和過去時制。例如:—

It *is* our wish that he *leave* the city now.
It *was* our wish that he *leave* the city at once.

我們可說:

It was our wish that he *should leave* the city at once.

這意思和用 leave 時完全一樣。但如說:

It was our wish that he *left* at once.

那就含有他依了我們的願望而眞正地'離開'(left——事實的直說法)了(參看 §3.74)

【練習五十四】 試將下列直接陳述句,問句,及請求或命令句變成整潔之間接陳述句等,注意代名詞及動詞之變化. Had to 可作爲 must 之過去時制用.

1. Peterson explained to his mother: "I must go now, for I have to meet a friend."
2. His mother asked: "Why do you have to go in such a hurry? Is your friend more important than your mother? Can you not wait a while, till your sister returns?"
3. Peterson said: "There is no time to wait. Besides, my sister may not come home today at all."
4. His mother replied: "If that is the case, go now. You must always have your own way. But come back early."

7.61. 【副句的時制】 在——

Mr. Barker said that he was going away for a few days.

這一句中,"Mr. Barker said" 叫做'主句'(main clause),用 that 導引的那個子句叫做'副句'(Dependent Clause),因爲在意義上它是附屬于主句的. 通例,如主句是過去時制,副句也應該是過去時制. 如:

Mr. Barker *said* that he *could* come.

此處說話的人只是複述 Mr. Barker 的話,到底 Mr. Barker 眞正來與不來 (he will come or not),他不負什麽責任. 不過有時也能說:

Mr. Barker *said* that he *can* come.

這一句的意思多少含有說話的人相信他能來 (he can come),所以情願把'他能來'當做一件現在的事實敍述. 又如:

Mr. Barker *said* that the earth *was* round.
Mr. Barker *said* that the earth *is* round.

第一句中，說話的人僅僅複述 Mr. Barker 的話；至于地球是不是圓的 (the earth *is* round or not)，不干他的事。（這句話也許是 Mr. Barker 說給他的洗衣傭婦聽的，我們可以想像這時這傭婦是極其尊崇 Mr. Barker 的意見而引用着他這句話的）。第二句中，說話的人便多少是願意把它當做一件事實敍述的。

【練習五十五】 研究下列副句中動詞時制之用法，並試言所以用此時制之理由：—

1. He just *told* me that he *can* come tonight.
2. He *told* me that you *are* bankrupt.
3. He *said* that he *had been* in Singapore for three years before he came here.
4. You go and *tell* him that I *am* a Singapore merchant myself and *had* never *heard* of his name when I *was* there.
5. Mr. Russell *said* in his lecture that prohibition *has* succeeded in making drinking very popular in America today.
6. Mr. Wu *declared* that he, too, *was* a revolutionist.
7. They *asked* him if he *was* a communist, and he said "No."
8. Mr. Wu *denied* that we *have* failed in the revolution; he *said* that our present government *was* better than the Manchu Government
9. It *was* reported in the *North-China Daily News* that three millions *have died* of famine in Shensi and that two-thirds of Kiangsi province *are* now under communist rule.
10. It *was* requested that the murderer *be handed* over to the Chinese authorities.
11. He *was* allowed to stay at home with the condition that he *report* at the police headquarters every morning.

省略文的表現法

7.70. 【省略文的表現法】 文法既教人怎樣表達事物，同時也該教人怎樣把要表達的省略了。Jespersen 有一句話說得極其透徹，他說'天下只有聒絮不休的人才想把什麼話都說出來，但

就是聒絮不休的人也沒法把什麼話都說了出來' ("Only bores want to express everything, but even bores find it impossible to express everything"). Jespersen 舉了一個例子,說一個人在火車站上買車票時說一句 "Two third Brighton return" 〔Brighton 三等來回票兩張〕,實在就代表 "Would you please sell me two third-class tickets from London to Brighton and back again, and I will pay you the usual fare for such tickets" 〔從倫敦到 Brighton 去了再回來的三等車的票子,請你賣兩張給我,票價我願意照付〕的意思. 言語的經濟一向是使用代表法的動機,不管用的是代名詞還是別的方法. 例如 "five feet four" (four inches) 和 "three seventy-five" (three dollars and seventy-five cents) 也正如 "The book is *mine* (或 *his*)" (=my book, his book) 或 "buy it at the *grocer's*" (=grocer's shop) 或 "She went to her *uncle's*" (=uncle's house) 一樣,都是代表法的一種方式. 下面所舉的是一些通馴的省略文:—

Got up at six (*o'clock*) thirty.
In the year nineteen (*hundred*) thirty-seven.
He stands five feet six (*inches*).
It measures four (*feet wide*) by five (*feet long*).
The price is seven (*dollars* and) fifty-five (*cents*).
But what (*am I*) to do (或 say)?
I have heard (*people*) say that ....
Live and let (*others*) live. [先自活而後活人,先自謀而後爲人謀,恕人之短則人亦恕我之短.]
Help (*to*) make it a success.
I help him (*to get*) over the stile, down the bridge, up the wall, out of a difficulty.
Her stepmother made her (*to*) sweep, scrub and clean.
I feel (*I*) like going out today.
He dare not (*to*) appear.

(1) 避免重複是省略或隱藏詞兒的普通原因之一。例如:

The upper (*shelf*) and the lower shelf.
His old (*associates*) and new associates
Good-bye to the old year and welcome to the new (*year*)!
Cut off the first and last parts of the play, and leave the middle (*part of the play*).
I told you to come at nine o'clock, and you come at eleven (*o'clock*).
He can (*do it*) and will do it.
I can do it, but dare not (*do so*).
He could not do it, and would not (*do it*) if he could (*do it*).
He has inherited and (*has*) spent his fortune.
A new government had been established and (*had been*) overthrown in the course of the three days.
He was jeered, (*was*) hooted, (*was*) made fun of, and (*was*) dragged off from the stage.
I know you and (*I know*) him.
He brought his wife and (*he brought his*) children.
He lost his wife, (*his*) three children and (*his*) property.
His wife is taller than he (*is tall*).
You love her more than (*you love*) me.

在嚴格的正確英文里,凡不是完全相同的兩個助動詞,不可把一個省略了而用那一個來代表。"He *had* fought and (*had*) been defeated" 是可以的,但是 "He *was* defeated and they (*were*) victorious" 卻不行。因爲 were 和 was 不相同,所以應該表出而不應省略。

【練習五十六】(A) 重複在文法上並非錯誤,而且有時非常有力,但試看下列句中詞兒之重複能否避免.

1. He gave him five dollars and gave me only three dollars.
2. This is seven o'clock, and you said it was eight o'clock.
3. We have searched the house and have found nothing.
4. He has come and has gone already.

5. The man was immediately taken to the hospital and was treated by a doctor.
6. You have learnt nothing and have forgotten nothing.
7. In three months' time, he has bought a house, has insured it for $ 35,000, has burnt it down, and has got the money for it.
8. He has successively married seven women, has divorced six of them and has made a present of the seventh one to General Chang.

(B) 試修正下列各句,或變換動詞之時制,或在不應省略之處填入妥當詞兒:—

1. I came here to see the city and met a few friends.
2. I intended to go to Tsingtau and spent the summer there.
3. After the storm was over, we found that our house alone was intact, while all the others destroyed.
4. Many men have built the house and one man torn it down.

(2) 爲了心理的緣故,句子的前半部或後半部往往可以省去,只要那表出的一部分我們認爲已經夠明顯了. 這個尤以回答人家的問話時爲然. 就這種意味說來,"Yes" 和 "No" 簡直代表問句里隨便什麼都可以. 又如:

How many do you want?
(答) *Four.*

Would you have it (the egg) fried or scrumbled?
(答) *Fried.*

Would you have it boiled hard or soft?
(答) *Soft, or medium.*

Is this quarter past three?
(答) *No, ten past*

Would you have tea or coffee?
(答) *Coffee.*

Shall I bring you a pen or a pencil?
(答) *Both.* 或 *Both, please.*

Do you like it?
(答) *Rather!* 或 *Ra—ther!*

在極其普通的表現法之中,我們往往把開頭一個或兩個音節省去,這全是因爲偷懶的關係。

(*Good*) Morning!
(*Will*) That do? [行不行?]
(*You*) See what I mean?
(*I am*) Here! (*I am*) Present! [到! 有! (點名時用)]
(*He or She is*) Absent! [不到! 缺席! (點名時用)]
(*I am*) Sorry.
Fraid not. (=*I am* afraid not). [我怕不能 (不是,等)]
(*I*) Thank you!
(*I*) Beg your pardon.
(*I hope to*) See you tomorrow.
(*Do you*) Remember that letter?
(*Think of*) What people will say!
(*That's*) Impossible!
(*That s*) A good idea! [好主意!]
(*Do it*) Gently, please. [輕點! 慢點!]
(*It's*) Well done. [做得極好! 好得很!]
(*Let's*) Have done! [算了罷!]
(*Keep your*) Hands up (或: off)! [舉手 (手放下)!]
(*Be*) Quick!

在另一方面,還有一種 Jespersen 所謂"勒止句" (pull-up sentence), 就是因爲全句意義已明不必再說出來,因而把最後一部分省略去了. 這種句尾之中,以 to 後省去動詞的爲最普通.

He never came, although I told him to (*come*).
He did not take off the cover, although I had told him to (*do so*).
Come with me, if you care to (*come*).
Would you come?——I should love to (*come*).
We have asked him to pay at the end of this month, and he says he is willing to (*do so*).

其他的幾種極其普通的'勒止句'如:—

I told him he was wrong, and he admitted quite as much (*as what I said*).
But Shaw is quite as great an author (*as any we have been discussing*).
He is not nearly so great (*as the other one*).
Chen-teh comes from the same place (*where I come from*).
I don't like to offend one so powerful (*as he*).

更眞確的勒止句的格式，如：

Well, I never (*heard of such a thing*)!
Well, go to (*the thing you want to do, and I will not object*)!
If I only knew about this an hour ago!

如果單是因爲這些句中有些部分省略了而不承認它們是完全的句子，那不算是好文法。這種文法對于表現力不特無益，而且是一重障礙。

第八章 指定法

8.10. 【代表法·指定法·修飾法 (**Modification**)】 我們說 this book, that book, my book, the book that you took away 的時候，我們是用各種方法指明或 '指定' 我們心目中那本特別的書，這在文法上叫做 '指定法' (**Determination**) 的問題。 指定法的文法工具老是回答 "Which one?" 〔那一個?〕這個問題。其他例如:—

the same book 同一本書	either this or that book 或這本或那本書
the other book 另外的那本書	each book 每本書
some other book 別的一本書	the respective books 各自一本書
every other book 每隔一本書	any old book 任何一本書
the second book 第二本書	whatever book 無論(不拘)什麼書

于此可見指定法和代表法之間有一種密切的關係。 代名詞 he, you, they, myself, themselves 都是 '代表詞' (representative words), 可是它們也都幫助 '指定' 我們所指的是那一個人。 "*His* book" 也是幫助回答 "Which book?" 〔那一本書?〕這個問題的。

在指定法和修飾法之間也有一種密切的關係。 比方說，在 "the red book" 中，我們都說形容詞 red 是修飾名詞 book 的: 因爲它描寫這是一本什麼樣的書。 但是 red 這個詞兒卻也用以限定 book 的意義，把 '綠的書', '藍的書' 都除外了。 所以它也是幫助 '指定' 我們所指的這本書的。 一般地講來，被修飾過的名詞，其意義總比較沒被修飾過的名詞狹小而有限制，例如 "*Northern* Chinese" 〔中國的北方人〕只是中國人的一部分，"*humorous* essays" 〔幽默小品〕把一切非幽默的小品文都擯斥

了。加之,指定法也不過是修飾法的一種方式:在 *this book* 中,'指定詞' (determinative word) this, 是修飾 book 這個詞兒的。不過因爲指定的詞兒和成語都是很普通而又很重要的,所以把它們另外立成一類。

因此我們可以把這三種作用分開:—

(1) 代表法:代替別的詞兒 (第七章).
(2) 指定法:回答 "Which one?" 這個問題 (第八章).
(3) 修飾法:修飾或描寫別的詞兒的意義 (第九章)

這三類意念我們非仔細研究不可,但是一個相同的詞兒同時可以有兩三種不同的作用。

8.11. 【代名詞的種類】 在舊式文法書里,代名詞的分類法是這樣的:—

(1) 人稱代名詞 (Personal Pronn.): I, you, it (又領位的形式 my, mine, your, yours) 等.
(2) 指示代名詞 (Demonstrative Pronn.): this, that, which (指出那一個).
(3) 關係代名詞 (Relative Pronn.): "the man *who* escaped", "the girl *that* he loves" 等 (與上一個詞兒有連帶關係).
(4) 疑問代名詞 (Interrogative Pronn.): who?, which?, what? (用于發問).

可見領位代名詞 my, your 及指示代名詞 this, that 大半作指定的用途。關係代名詞往往作爲指定那一個以及作別的修飾的用途,如:

I know the man *who* escaped from prison. [我認識那個從監牢里逃出的人.] (指定那一個人)
I know this man, *who* is a dirty rascal. [我認識這個人,他是個裏蛋.] (描寫這個人)

茲爲便利計,關係子句 (Relative Clauses) 留待下章修飾法里討論。

上列的劃分法，如當做代名詞的分類法，是很有用而便利的。可是從意念的觀點看起來，這些代名詞卻應該和那些作同樣用途的別的許多詞類放在一塊兒研究。 因此，指示形容詞 (Demonstrative Adjj.) 和指示代名詞都是當做指定的用途，所以它們的區別實在是不關緊要的：—

形	代
This book.	I know *this*.
Take *another* one.	Take *another*.
Both men came.	*Both* came.

關係代名詞和關係副詞，因爲同是當做指定或修飾的用途，所以也應該放在一起研究：—

(關係代名詞) Find out the man *who* said this.

(關係副詞) Find out the time *when* he arrived.

區別和同位

8.20. 【區別: **This, That, Same, Other**】 正如 this 和 that 一樣，same 和 other 這兩個詞兒也可以當形容詞用 (the *same* people, *other* people)，也可以當代名詞用 (is the *same*, for *others*). "The same as" 和 "the same that" 這兩個表現法通常作如下用法：—

This is *the same* one *that* you saw yesterday.
This is *the same* one *as* that (*one*).
I eat *the same* food *that* you eat.
My food is *the same as* your.
You are *the same* age *as* my sister.
Wealth or poverty is *all the same* (或 *just the same*) *to me*. (作形容詞)
But I thank you *all the same* (或 *just the same*). (作副詞)

有子句在後面(卽有動詞表出的)的時候,以用 that 爲最妥當,單有一個名詞或代名詞在後面的時候(卽後面沒有動詞或動詞被省略時),用 as.

遇有含'共享'的觀念的動詞時,可用 with, 如:

I *live* in the same room *with* him. (=I *share* a room *with* him.)

"Another", "the other" 和 "others" 仿照 a 和 the 的使用或省略的那種慣用法。

A boy.	*Another* boy.	(不定單數)
Boys.	*Others.*	(不定複數)
The boy(s).	*The* other(s).	(確定單數或複數)

Another 就是由 an 和 other 合成的一個複合詞。我們又可用 *some other* boy(s), *any other* boy(s) 和 *no other* boy(s), 正如用 some boy(s), any boy(s), no boy(s) 一樣。"No other" 的後面用 than, 但 "different", "differ" 的後面用 from, 如:—

This is *no other* **than** the one we saw yesterday.
It can be *no other* person **than** Mr. Ma himself.
This *is different* **from** the one we saw.

【練習五十七】 細讀下列各句,何以用 another, the other, others, the others 及 as, that, with, than 等. 然後再以 the same as, the same that, another, some other, any other, others, no other **than** 等造句.

1. Is your book lost? Buy *another*.
2. There were two brothers. *One* was a cripple, and *the other* was deaf and dumb.
3. I am not speaking of Miss Yang; I am speaking of *the other* girl, her room-mate.
4. Only I was present. All *the others* were sick at home.
5. *Another* day, he came in at breakfast time.
6. *Other* people have *other* things to do.
7. He saw *one* (cinema) show after *another*.
8. *Others* may do what they like and say what they like, but I will not be influenced by them.

9. We must find *some other* way.
10. Is there *any other* person you want to see?
11. This is not *the same* book *as* mine.
12. It is *the same that* I borrowed from you.
13. He is *the same* person *that* called yesterday.
14. He can give *no other* reason *than* mere laziness for not handing in his composition.
15. If you insist on sending the letter, it will have to be signed by *some other* person *than* myself.

8.30. 【領位代名詞和領位名詞】 領位代名詞 my, your 和 mine, yours 等,我們在 §§ 7.20—7.21 里已經講過了. 居于領位的名詞,單數加'省略號' (apostrophe) 和 *s* (卽 *'s*), 如 bird*'s*, person's. 這些都是眞正的指定詞,用起來很容易. 加 *'s* 的領位詞所有特別的幾種形式如下:—

(a) 複數名詞:
birds' nest(s)
three days' journey
persons' faults
others' ideas
friends' help
parents' consent
women's troubles

(b) 詞尾是 *s* 的單數:
James's horse
Jones's children
Charles's letter
Pythagoras's[1] teaching
Ulysses'[2] Return
Moses'[3] journey
Jesus'[4] words

(c) *For ~'s sake*:
for goodness' sake
for peace' sake
for convenience' sake
for conscience' sake
(但, for brevity's sake, for argument's sake)

(d) 複合名詞:
the Duke of York's brother
the Queen of Sheba's[5] beauty
Schwab & Son's[6]
Governor of New York's statement
Emperor of Japan's cousin
Government of India's position

(e) 同位名詞:
Philip the Great's son
Henry the Tailor's bills.
My brother Yujen's book
William the Second's death
George the Sixth's visit

[1] [pai'θægərəsiz] [2] [ju(:)'lisi:z] [3] ['mouziz] [4] ['dʒi:zəs]
[5] [ðə 'kwi:n‿əv 'ʃi:bəz] [6] ['ʃwɔb‿ən 'sʌnz]

(b) 羣的 *s's* 頭三個讀 [-ziz], 第四個讀 [-siz]. (注意這兩個 *s* 雖然中間沒有 *e*, 但讀起來卻加入了一個元音 [i].) 如 Ulysses [-si:z], Jesus [-zəs], Moses [-ziz] 等詞兒的末尾已經有 *s-s*, 讀 [-s～z], [-z～s] 或 [-z～z] 音 (即末一音節以 [s] 或 [z] 音起頭又以 [s] 或 [z] 音收尾) 的, 最好只用省略號 (') 而把附加的 *s* 省去, 正如 things', birds' (非 things's, birds's) 一樣. (c) 羣的 "for ～'(s) sake" 一成語可算是特別情形; 因爲 *s's* 在 sake 前讀起來不好聽, 所以這當中的一個詞兒如末尾是 [s] 音, 便只加省略號而把 *s* 省去了. (d) 羣的例是些複合名字 (compound names), (e) 羣里都是些同時指一個人的兩個名詞 (同位名詞), 至于 my brother's Yujen's wife, 那當然是不可用的了.

Of yours, of mine, of my father's 等表現法已經在 § 7.21 里提起過. 這些表現法是英文里極其特別而極其通馴的結構. 其用法舉例如下:—

He was a very dear friend *of her uncle's*.
It was a great idea *of his* that China could be saved through rural education.
It was a fond hobby *of my father's* to collect curios.
It is a fond dream *of mine* to visit Spain.
Those fingernails *of yours* are a disgrace.
Look at that nice son *of yours*.
Take home these paintings *of his* and tell me what you think of them.

注意這些例子之中, 都是表明有一種'親密'或'喜歡'的意思的. "That nice son of yours" (親密的用法) 有時也含有一種輕蔑的意思: 參看中文的'你那個好兒子'. 這一種領位的形式老是帶有一點感情的色彩 (如愛, 惡, 親密, 憎恨等). 但如果把 his

monthly income 說成 the monthly income *of his*, 那可就透着沒勁了。實際上,這種'領位詞'也可以叫做'親密領位詞'(familiar possessive).

又,注意'你那個...','我這個...'在英文里不可用 that your, this my;應該用"that ... of yours","this ... of mine".

8.40. 【同位: 同位和示例】 作爲指定法用的同位 (Apposition),其用法舉例如下:—

Your brother was killed. Which brother? Teh-ming. Your brother *Teh-ming* was killed.

Teh-ming was killed. Which Teh-ming? Teh-ming, *your brother*, was killed.

Mary, *the mother of Jesus*, was not Mary *Magdalen*.

Edith Wharton, *the woman novelist*, is an American.

Mr. Jones, *the President of the National Bank*, committed suicide last night.

Captain Byrd, *the explorer of the Antarctic*, returned to civilization after a two years' absence.

My servant *Ko-fu* is now ill.

There are many kinds of infectious diseases, *cholera, typhoid and diphtheria*, now in this city.

I have met many famous men of their country, *writers, generals, militarists and Socialist leaders*.

在這些例句之中,用斜體字排的短語都是修飾或解釋先行的名詞或代名詞的意義的。所以這種結構是非常簡單。凡用於同位的詞兒,一定和它所修飾的詞兒居于同一詞位,如:

Then *we* three, Kuo-fang, Min-cheng and *I*, started together.

They tried to catch *us*, Kuo-fang, Min-cheng and *me* (*myself*).

本節前面最後兩句 (There are many kinds of infectious diseases, etc.) 之中,那些同位的詞兒 (cholera, typhoid, diphtheria) 實則是它們所修飾的那個詞兒 (diseases) 的許多

'示例' (example) 或 '實例' (instance). 這一類的示例通常用下列成語引出:—

such as 如	as follows 如下,如次,如後
for example ("e.g.") 比方,譬如,例如	that is ("i.e.") 即,就是,便是
for instance 比方,譬如,例如	namely ("viz.") 即,就是,便是

"As follows" 老是作 "as *what* follows" 的意思用. 即使下面列舉許多事物,也決不可用 "as follow".

【練習五十八】 (a) 同位的詞兒通常作爲修飾法以及指定法之用途. 試舉出下列各句中同位的詞兒,並說明其只作爲指定法用,抑作爲修飾法之其他用途.

1. The Chinese Emperor, a mere boy of seven years old, had to abdicate the throne.
2. He, a father of grown-up daughters, was still running round with all sorts of women.
3. Edison, the famous inventor, is a friend of Henry Ford, the automobile king.
4. Herbert Hoover, the President of the United States, was an official mining engineer of the Manchu Government in his early days.
5. Your cousin Mary is engaged to be married.
6. Tom, the piper's son, stole a pig.

(b) 在下列三句中填入同位詞:—

1. Mr. Chang, the —— of the paper, was arrested.
2. Dr. Sun Yat-sen, the —— of the Kuomintang, is known to every Chinese boy and girl.
3. I like all kinds of fruit, ——, ——, ——, and ——.

順序·更迭·配分

8.50. 【順序 (Sequence): 序數詞】 在文法里, 1, 2, 3, 4 等數目叫做 '基數' (Cardinals), 而表明順序的 1st, 2nd, 3rd,

4th 等叫做'序數詞' (Ordinals). Fourth 以上的各序數詞,除了附有 one, two, three 的數目仍然保留 first, second, third 的以外,其餘一概加上 "th". Fifth 由 five 而來,但前者的元音是'短 [i]' 而後者是'長 [ai]'; eighth 只有一個 *t*, ninth 拼字母時略去 nine 之中的 *e*; twelve 加 -th 變成 twelfth. 注意 eighth 讀時除 *th* 讀 [θ] 外,前面還要插入一個 [t] 音,即 [eitθ], 不可讀 [eiθ].

fifth	twelfth	fiftieth
eighth	thirteenth	forty-first
ninth	hundredth	eighty-second
tenth	thousandth	seventy-third
eleventh	fortieth	hundred and first

又,注意我們說——

Number one,	但:	the first one.
Number two,	但:	the second one.
Book one,	但:	the first book.
Volume two,	但:	the second volume.

數目較大的時候,普通多用 "No.", 如 "prisoner No. 1075" 此處 1075 讀如 one, naught, seven, five), "seat No. C 75" 等.

這些序數詞加 *-ly* 變成副詞,如 firstly, secondly, thirdly, lastly 等. 但 first 和 last 另外也可以當副詞用,如 He came (*first* / I came *last* / *Last* came the cripple.

這些順序的詞兒還有一些特別用法,如下例所示:—

He came *on the 12th* (of this month).

Go from the *ground floor* [樓下] to the *first floor* [二樓], then to the *second floor* [三樓], *third floor* [四樓], etc.

The student gets promoted from the *first form* (或 *first year*) [一年級] to the *second form* (或 *second year*) [二年級], etc. In

some places, *first* is the highest, and *sixth* is the lowest, but this is not usual.

Take the *next to the last* seat. [倒數第二位]

Pronounce *the last* word *but* (=except) *one*.

Read from *the last* line *but two*. [倒數第三行]

Next to Ke-min, Wang Lo is the best student in class. Wang Lo is *the next best* (或 *second best*).

Hand in your compositions *next Wednesday*. (星期一二說時指'最近的星期三'='本星期三'; 如說時是在星期三以後,則指'下星期三',其他如 next February 等仿此.)

I met him *last Tuesday* (或 *on Tuesday last*).

【練習五十九】 試就上列成語中取出幾個來造句.

8.60. 【更迭和配分 (Alternation & Distribution)】 有的時候,我們要在一羣或一組之中指某些特別的數目,其意義是介于定與不定之間的. 這一類的表現法,用示例最容易表明出來.

Either . . . or, neither . . . nor, every other, every third, every ninth, etc.

Either he *or* she is to blame.

Either of the two (=any one) will do.

You *either* do what I say *or* leave this place.

What you do is *neither* wise *nor* honourable.

Either come in *or* go out.

He is *neither* able, *nor* experienced, *nor* willing to work hard and learn.

They have now divorced each other, *either* through his *or* through her fault.

I am not going to retract my words. *Nor* am I going to apologize. *Neither* is he.

You have lost your job? I have nothing to do myself, *either*.

I cannot help you, *either*. (=*Nor* can I help you.)

Take *either* end (*either* this *or* that). [此端或彼端]

The river overflowed on *either* side (=on both sides). [河水泛濫兩岸]

If you do not go, I shall not *either* (also).

There is no time to lose, *either* (= besides).
He came here *every other* day (= once in *every two* days = on *alternate* days).
The doctor visits her *every third* day (或 *every three days*).
Every eighty-second year, the comet comes back to us.

Each, respective(ly). 這兩個可以叫做'配分詞' (Distributive Words) (或'個別詞'), 因爲它們是個別地指每一個人或每一羣的.

They had one box *each*.
Each of them *was* given a box.
They had *each a* bed to *himself*.
They had *each his* own bed.
We went *each our* own way.
We had *each a* new suit of uniform (或 new pair of shoes).
Go to your *respective* seats. (=Go *each* to *your* own seat.)
They were rewarded according to their *respective* merits (= *each* according to *his* merit).
A and B contributed the *respective* sums of thirty and fifty dollars.
The colleges for men and women are to be built *respectively* on the south and southeast sides of the compound.

("Each other" 和 "one another" 的用法,參看 §7.23).

【練習六十】 試用上列成語自行造句.

確 定 和 不 定

8.70. 【**A, An, 和 The**】 "*A* boy" 是不確定指那個小孩子, "*the* boy" 是指定了一個小孩子說的. 這和中文的'一個'和'這個'實在是相同的. 因此, "a" 叫做'不定冠詞' (Indefinite Article), "the" 叫做'定冠詞' (Definite Article). "A" 表明不定的單數 (*a* boy), 而表明不定的複數時則任何冠詞都用不着 (boys).

	單	複
不 定	a boy	boys
確 定	the boy	the boys

這一切是非常簡單，正和中文'一個人'，'這個人'，'人'相仿．唯一的不同，便是中文名詞沒有複數詞尾，因而在中文里表明不定複數時和表明單數時在字形上毫無分別，例如'人打虎'，'虎吃人'，但是在英文里卻用"*Men* kill tigers"和"Tigers kill *men*".

不過在英文里，抽象名詞（如 knowledge, courage）以及質詞（如 water, milk）也沒有複數形，因爲它們實在沒有數之可言，不可以數計的（如果說 one knowledge, two knowledg，那眞是荒謬之至了），因此英文的不定抽象名詞，跟中文字差不多，也是用單數形而不加任何冠詞的．如：—

抽 象	具 體
Knowledge is virtue.	Women are men.
Knowledge kills virtue.	Women marry men.
Virtue kills knowledge.	Men marry women.

比較中文'女子無才便是德'("Having no knowledge is a virtue for women") 一句中，'才'，'德'之前不加冠詞．

在另一方面，確定的抽象名詞或質詞卻可以加冠詞"th.", 如: *the* water you drink, *the* knowledge of the students, *the* milk in the coffee, *the* health of the family.

以元音字母"*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*"起頭的詞兒之前，用"an"而不用"a"，除非這起頭的元音字母實際上是讀輔音［w］或［j］的．如'長 *u*'實則是［j+u:］或［j+u］，而［j］是輔音，所以仍然要用 *a* 而不用 *an*. 又如 one 雖以元音字母 *o* 起頭，但整個詞兒卻

讀如 [wʌn], 是以輔音 [w] 起頭的,所以也仍然用 *a*. 例如:—

a university [ˌju(ː)ni'vəːs(i)ti] such *a* one [wʌn]
a useful servant *a* one-hour class
a united policy *a* once popular writer

有些人在 *historian* [his'tɔːriən] 前仍然用 *an*, 因爲在這個輕讀音節里 *h* 的音非常之弱,這個詞兒簡直讀如 "istorian". 又如: "*an historical* play", "*an heroic* act" [ən (h)is'tɔrikəl 'plei, ən (h)i'rouik 'ækt], 但是在現在,許多人都不這樣寫了,即使 *h* 在輕讀音節中,前面還是用 *a*.

再,在拼法上以'默音的' *h* 起首的詞兒,前面卻仍然用 *an* 而不用 *a*, 如 "half *an* hour", "*an* heir" ['hɑːfə'naue, ən‿'ɛə] (hour 和 our 同音, heir 和 air 同音). 還有,英文輔音字母中凡讀時以元音起首的,前面用 *an*, 不可用 *a*, 如: "*an* H frame", "*an* L beam", "*an* M.P." [ən‿'eitʃ 'freim, ən‿'el 'biːm, ən‿'em 'piː] 等.

【練習六十一】 指出下列各句中何以有用 a 或用 the, 或兩者皆省去者 其意義抑係確定或不定,抑係單數或複數,或既非單數又非複數 (用于不可以數計之抽象詞兒)?

1. *A* letter was received from Hongkong, but, as it was unsigned, nobody knows who was *the* writer of *the* letter
2. There was *a* Jones in *the* same college.
3. *A* man named Bailey called this morning, but finding you not at home, he walked all over *the* house.
4. Jackson is one of *the* best students in physics, if not *the* best.
5. *A* Mrs. Watson was at *the* witness box [(法庭上的)見證席].
6. That's *a* lie!
7. *Liars* must have *a* good memory.
8. *Beggars* must not be *choosers*.
9. They are talking like *a* pair of lovers.
10. That's *the* girl!

11. It's *the* only right thing to do.
12. Have *the* letter sent at once.
13. Help me with *money*, and not with empty *words*.
14. You can have everything you want now, *money*, *freedom*, *a* beautiful wife, *a* nice house and garden, *dinners* and *parties*, and *vacation trips*.
15. Be careful of *wine* and *women*.
16. He is giving up *medicine* and going to study *law*.
17. Don't talk to me about *religion* and *sins* and *prayers*.
18. I want three things in life: *work*, *a* good library, and *a* woman who understands.

8.71. 【一般化 (Generalization): "*a* Cat", "*the* Cat" "Cats"】 我們談到一般的事物時，可以用不加冠詞的複數，或者在'一般單數' (§5.25) 之前用 *a* 或 *the*. 如：—

1. *Englishmen* are usually reserved in manners.
2. *An Englishman* seldom talks to strangers.
3. *The Englishman* is quite different from *the Frenchman* in his manners.

這第三式指的是 "the Englishman" 的抽象觀念，這在中文里是沒有的. 這個抽象的 "Englishman" 是用來代表 "all Englishmen" 的. 又：—

1. *Cats* are afraid of *dogs*. (不定複數)
2. *A cat* is afraid of *a dog*. (不定單數)
3. *The cat* is afraid of *the dog*. (抽象式)

"I love *a* good liar" 實則就和 "I love good liars" 是一樣的意思.

【練習六十二】 細讀下列例句，試問一般單數有時是否可能改爲一般複數 (或不定複數)，或反是：—

1. According to the Christian prayer-book, *the bridegroom* promises to love and protect, and *the bride* promises to love and obey.

2. *The short story* is a modern invention, and so are *short skirts*.
3. *The steam-engine* was invented over a hundred years ago.
4. The boy stays with his father four months in *the year*, and lives with his mother during the rest of the time.
5. *The modern mother* does not feed her *baby* at midnight. *The baby* will sleep till early morning once it forms the habit.
6. *Modern fathers* must be good pals (=comrades) to their *sons*.
7. Mr. Hsü has all *the poet's* ways and *the poet's* weaknesses.
8. When *a lion* meets *a lamb*, one plus one makes one.
9. Mr. Ma looks like *a thinker*. He has *the thinker's* face, thin and wan.
10. *The busy doctor's* time is not his own.
11. Do *actors* and *actresses* always lead immoral lives? Must they always have *scandals*?
12. What can *a poor man* do?
13. This costs $3.75 *a yard*.

8.72. 【"A" 和 "The" 的特別用法】 "A" 和 "The" 有幾種特別用法，在這里應該說一說.

(1) 關于讀音，*a* 加重音或重讀時作 [ei]，但此外一般地作 [ə]. "The" 也只有重讀時作 [ði:]，否則在輔音前作 [ðə]，在元音前作 [ði]. 在發音上，[ei] 和 [ði:] 叫做 '強式'; [ə] 和 [ðə] [ði] 叫做 '弱式'. 中國學生對于 *a*, *the* 這兩個極其普通的詞兒，往往讀來還不正確——都只知道讀強式，而不知道它們在英文里一般地都是用弱式的.

I said *a* hat, *an* egg, not hats, eggs. [ai sed 'ei 'hæt | 'æn‿'eg‖ not 'hæts | 'egz |—|]
Yes, that is *the* Mr. Wang I mean. ['jes ðæts 'ði: mistə 'wɑŋ ai 'mi:n | — |]

a boy [ə 'bɔi]
an eagle [ən‿'i gl]
the story [ðə 'stɔ:ri]
the horse [ðə 'hɔ:s]
the idea [ði ai'diə]
the only ... [ði 'ounli ...]
the ear [ði 'iə] 或 [ði: 'iə]
the ants [ði 'ænts]

(2) **What a, Quite a, Such a, Many a, Rather a:—**

What a ['wɔtə] lie!
What a nuisance!
Such a ['sʌtʃə] question!
Such a government.
Such a fool.
Quite a ['kwaitə] comfort.
Quite a good student.
Quite a long essay.
Many a ['meniə] time.
Many a young man.
Many a husband.
Rather a ['rɑːðə(r)ə] nuisance.
Rather a failure.
Rather a new thing.

(3) **How ～ a, Too ～ a, So ～ a, As ～ a . . . as:—**

How different *a* fate!
Too serious *a* matter.
Too important *a* question.
So queer *an* idea.
So rash *a* step.
So good *an* opportunity.
As quick *a* writer *as* . . .
As able *a* man *as* . . .

How different *a* fate 又可用 *what a* different fate, *so* queer *an* idea 又可用 *such* a queer idea.

(4) 專名前的 **"The"**. "The" 通常不可用于專名之前，但下列四種情形是例外：(*a*) 江河之名的前面；(*b*) 複數的專名之前；(*c*) 表明專名所代表的那事物的某一特別方面 (phase or aspect) 的時候；(*d*) 後面附有形容詞時.

(*a*) *The* Yellow River. *The* Yangtse. *The* Nile. *The* Rhine.
(*b*) *The* Lins and Chens. *The* Stuarts. *The* Chinese. *The* Alps.
(*c*) *The* China (of) today is not *the* China of our grandfathers.
The John Roebuck that I know is quite a different kind of person.
She sees only *the* Rod at the fireside, *the* Rod who plays with his children, not *the* Rod who swings the whip over poor workers.
(*d*) *The* young Dickens (Dickens when he was young).
The noble and great Frederick.
The seventy-year-old Mr. Chang had to call *the* five-year old Wu-chi "uncle".
The old China. ***The*** new China.

(5) "The" 當'等級副詞' (adv. of degree) 用. 這種是極其普通的. 例如:—

The sooner he is gone, *the better* it is for all of us. *The sooner* gone, *the better*. *The sooner, the better*. [越早越好.]
The more, the better. [越多越好.]
The more, the merrier. *The more* people there are, *the merrier* it is.
The more he flatters, *the less* I like him. [他越恭維我,我越發不喜歡他.]
The older he grows, *the more shameless* he becomes.
If he will not come, that is *so much the* better. [他不來,那就再好沒有了].
Instead of hating him, I like him *all the more* [更加,越發] for it.
He refused to pay? *So much the worse* for him [那他更糟糕了].

【練習六十三】 試以本節所讀之成語造句.

8.73. 【"A" 和 "The" 的省略】 *A* 或 *the* 的用與不用,這往往是件很難解決的事. 英美兩國以外的人,儘可學了十年廿年的英文,碰到這樣一個問題,往往還要發生懷疑的. 例如在:

Many foreign students who have studied English for ten or twenty years still often find a doubt in meeting with such a question.

這一句里,我們還是用 "find *a* doubt" 呢,還是用 "find doubt" 或 "find doubts"? 這困難的存在,是爲了一種心理上的關係,這個看下文便可以明白了.

(1) 我們在 §8.70 里已經說得很明白,就是,抽象名詞和質詞,其意義不確定時,則不用冠詞 (*the* 或 *a*),但如意義確定時,可就需要冠詞 *the* 了. 如:—

不 定	確 定
He wants power.	但: He wants *the* power to vote.
Drink water.	但: Drink *the* water in the cup.

由此推之,我們又可說 have *patience*, take *time*, spend *money* 以及 eat *ice cream*, drink *tea*, add *milk*, 因爲 patience,

time, money 當做抽象名詞看待，而 ice-cream, tea, milk 是質詞 (§4.51).

講了這許多已經夠了。我們且細看下列許多普通成語里都把 the 省去了：—

go to school (hospital)	out of job
in school (class)	at sunrise
after class	at night (但 in *the* night)
after dinner	by day
during dinner	all day long
have (take) dinner	at noon (midday)
go to church	without (beyond) question
after sermon	without doubt
go to bed	sold at auction
lie in bed	shut up shop
out of bed	open shop (school)
at table	take bath
go to law-court	in fashion
at home	for (on) sale
not in office	on business

注意這些名詞都是指某種'動作'(action)或'事件'(event)的。動作或事件是一半可見一半不可見的，這便是它的特性。譬如人家坐在桌上吃飯 (eating at dinner)，我們可以看得見，所以說我們可以看見 dinner. 但是，這 dinner (或 dining) 我們卻不能用手去捫觸，如同用手去摸一張桌子那樣。因此這些詞兒是半具體半抽象的，卽介于抽象名詞 hunger, satisfaction 〔飢餓，饜足〕以及具體名詞 knives, forks 〔刀，叉〕之間。以此類推，這冠詞我們有時候用，有時候不用：—

After crying.....或: after *a* good cry.
Give help.....或: give *a* help.
Serve dinner.....或: serve *a* dinner.
Under examination.....或: under *an* examination.

所以，在前面 "go to *school*" 等例中，那些似是具體的詞兒 school, church, class, bed, hospital, home, office, law-court 等實則是代表某一種的動作的 (teaching, praying, studying, sleeping 等)。因此，我們可以說：—

Go to school.....或: go to *the* school.
Go to hospital.....或: go to *a* hospital.
Not in office.....或: not in *the* office.
Beyond question.....或: beyond *a* question.
Take bath.....或: take *a* bath.
Have dinner.....或: have *a* dinner.
Resign work.....或: resign *the* work.
Sold at auction,.....或: sold at *an* auction.
Shut up shop.....或: shut up *the* shop.

並且，因爲這些成語極其常用，所以我們慣常把這些名詞前面的冠詞省去。例如 "have dinner with me" 就比 "have *a* dinner with me" 通順多了。

(2) 還有一種困難的來源，便是，抽象名詞往往會有具體的意義，而動作的名詞 (或稱'半具體名詞'——half concrete nouns) 往往發展成爲抽象的意義 (參看 §§4.20—4.30)。如果把它們看做'抽象的'，便往往丟掉冠詞，如果把它們看做'具體的'，或一部分是具體的，那末就用 a 或 the。如：—

具體的	抽象的
They have formed *a* trade *union*.	In *union* there is strength.
This man has *a* special *system* for indexing.	What you want here is *system*.
She has found *a* new *love* (=lover).	She does not understand what *love* is.
He gave me *a* wrong *medicine*.	He is going to study *medicine*.
Where is *the money* you gave me?	He has *money*, influence and power.
Take up *a business*.	*Business* is as usual.
Learn *a trade*.	*Trade* is at a standstill.
Receive *a favour*.	Show *favour* to some one.

【練習六十四】 試就上列成語 (go to school, in school, after class 等) 中取出數個，連同動作名詞及具體或抽象名詞，自行造句. 說明所以用冠詞或將其省去之理由. His, my, this 等可以代替冠詞.

(3) 在正常的成語中，往往省去冠詞，如 "the soldiers *in uniform*" (非 in *a* uniform 或 in uniforms), "translate *word by word*" (非 *one* word by *one* word), "learn it *by heart*" (非 by *the* heart). 不過，意義比較具體比較專門化而因此這成語失去了它的一般性格時，那末插入一個冠詞或 some, any, my 等詞兒，往往是可能的. 例如 at last 或 at *the* last / by chance 或 by *a* queer chance / beyond question 或 beyond *any* question / go by train 或 go by *the* next train. 看看下列這些成語你們能不能運用:—

week by week	go by boat
day by day	come by train
step by step	set foot on China 到中國
man for man 以個人比較	came on foot 步行而來
tit for tat 報復	leave word for him 留言
in case, in this case	in point of fact 事實上
in fact, in actual fact	in view of 爲...起見
by chance, by some chance	clean house 掃除積弊
at heart, at his heart	play tennis
by mistake, by a bad mistake	at night
eat by mouth	at noon

(4) 末了，當做修飾語用的名詞 (即意義接近形容詞的名詞) 的前面，冠詞可以省去:—

He was not *man* enough to confess his mistake.
Mr. Hsü, *poet* and *painter*, arrived yesterday.
I met Mr. Hsü, the *brother* of Hsü Tien-hsi and *husband* of Su-cheng (第二個 *the* 通常省去).
They have elected him *president* of the company.
He acted as *secretary* to Li Yuan-hung.

泛 指 法

8.80. 【泛指法】 表明指定法——不管是確定的與不確定的（a 和 the）以及造成一般化（§ 8.71）——的種種工具，我們在上面已經講過了。現在只差'泛指法'（**Indetermination**）的觀念在英文里如何表達的方法還沒有講到。這種的普通成語如：—

Marry *any old* fool for a husband.
Pay it in *any old* way you want.
I will do it, *whatever* he says.
Whatever you do, don't offend him again.
Pay it in *whatever* way you want.
Whatever you think of it, I am going to get married to this girl.
Is there any chance *whatever* of our escape?
He has no friend *whatever* in this city.
He cannot do it, *however* he tried.
He cannot do it, *no matter how* he tried.
He will not consent, *no matter how* hard you try to persuade him.
No matter what you think, it is I who am going to get married.
I will do it, *no matter what* he says
You can pay me at any time, *no matter when*.
In any case, there is no use discussing it now.
Anyhow, it is too late now.
The boat floated *wherever* it pleased.
Wherever Mary went, the little lamb was sure to go.
Wherever there is a stream of water with fish in it, there you may look for the kingfisher.
You may come *whenever* you like (please).
The kingfisher flies away *whenever* it sees a man.

Whatever, whoever, however, whenever, wherever 等詞兒要特別加以注意。末三個比較容易，它們是當做連續副詞（conjunctive adverbs）"how", "when", "where" 的特別形式以導引子句用的。例如：—

How he tried. *However* he tried.
When he remembers. *Whenever* he remembers.
Where he went. *Wherever* he went.

Whatever, whoever 也可以當做 what 和 who 的特別式用 (=no matter what, no matter who). 不過奇特的是,這些詞兒後面往往很顯明地附有兩個動詞. 例如在——

(What I have) is yours.
(Whatever I have) is yours.

這兩句里,"what(ever) I have" 明明是 is 的主語. 因此可以有:

(What *is* left) *is* quite worthless.
(Whatever *is* left) *is* taken away.

這一類的結構. 同樣地, who 與 whoever 有下面這種用法:—

(Who *steals* my purse) *steals* trash.
(Who *breaks*) *pays*.
(Whoever *said* this) *is* a liar.
(Whoever *kills* the enemy captain) *shall have* my daughter for his wife.

但如下列兩句,那可不對了:—

Whoever said this, *he* is a liar.
Whoever kills the enemy chief, *he* shall marry my daughter.

又, whoever 及 whomever 的用法及其他舉例,再參看 §7.31 (c).

【練習六十五】 試仿上列範句用 whatever, whoever, whenever, wherever 及 however 造句, 並仔細觀察此等詞兒之文法關係. However, whenever, wherever 作爲連接副詞. Whatever, whoever 最好視爲連接代名詞, 而 no matter what, no matter who 則可作爲連接代名詞成語看待.

第九章　修飾法

9.10. 【修飾法：修飾法的重要】 以前我們在討論句法 (§ 3.22) 時已經講過，一個句子，無論是多麼長，多麼複雜，實則它所包含的不外這五個成分：(1) 主語；(2) 本動詞；(3) 賓語；(4) 修飾語 (包括介詞成語)；以及 (5) 連詞. 沒有了修飾語和連詞，那末我們講起話來，都要變成些簡陋而侷促的句子，如：—

Flood came.
Mother died, father disappeared — son sat — door-step — wept.
Student was punished — stole books — proctor saw — dismissed — school — was beaten — father — became robber — became emperor — China.

這樣，這 '洪水' (flood) 在何時何地發生，水勢大小，氾濫得可怕不可怕，還是只不過氾濫了三四小時，——或者還是 "a flood of water" 〔洪水氾濫〕，還是 "a flood of news" 〔新聞充塞〕，還是 "a flood of tears" 〔淚如雨下〕，還是 "a flood of words" 〔滔滔之辯 (口若懸河)〕，那我們都無法說出來了. 再省察下列一句，看看用斜體排的那些修飾的詞兒，短語和子句 (短語和子句加以括號)，它們所擔任的是多麼重要的一種職務：—

(*All of a sudden*) and (*without any warning*) *the terrible* flood came, (*a foaming, furious, thundering torrent*), (*that destroyed houses, streets and whole villages*), (*drowning men, women, children, cats dogs and cattle*) and (*turning the whole region into a lake, dotted here and there with tree-tops and house-roofs with men and women on them like drowned monkeys*).

[突然間，一點也沒有預兆，來了一陣可恐的洪水——一陣白浪滔天，狂怒了似的，轟轟訇雷的激流——把房屋，街道和一個個村落都毀滅了，把男女和小孩，貓狗和牲口都淹死了，全地變成了一片汪洋，到處點綴着許多樹頂和屋脊，上面爬滿了許多男男女女，好像落湯雞似的.]

在這一句里，

1. All of a sudden 修飾 came，或表明洪水來時是如何的情形.
2. Without any warning 也是表明如何的情形.
3. The 修飾 flood.
4. Terrible 也是修飾 flood 的.
5. A foaming, furious, thundering torrent 是一個同位短語 (appositive phrase)，表明是怎麼樣的一種洪水. 起首四個詞兒又是修飾 torrent 的.
6. That destroyed houses, streets and whole villages 是修飾 flood 的一個關係子句 (relative clause).
7. Drowning men, women, children, cats, dogs and cattle 是一個分詞短語 (participial phrase)，也是修飾 flood 的.
8. Turning the whole region 一直到 drowned monkeys 又是修飾 flood 的一個分詞短語.

Into a lake 又修飾 turning.
Dotted 又修飾 lake.
Here and there 又修飾 dotted.
With tree-tops and house-roofs 也是修飾 dotted 的.
With men and women on them 修飾 house-roofs.
Like drowned monkeys 是修飾 men 和 women 的.

這樣一來，我們彷彿點着脚尖，一步步在修飾的詞兒和短語上面跳舞，順順當當地，一點也不必擔心踩在別的地方.

修飾法既然是這樣普遍而重要，那末把這種種表達的方法拿來研究一番，大可幫助我們學英文的人精通英文，並且更深一層地了解句法. 懂得了修飾法，那末關于句法便沒有什麼別的問題了，因爲主語，本動詞，賓語和連詞等，通常是極易發見的. 譬如，在本章里，我們要研究關係子句，介詞短語，分詞短語，無

限式短語以及本動詞的補足語這許多常見而重要的結構,因爲這些都是修飾語的種種形式.

9.11. 【詞類 (Word-Classes) 和詞級 (Word-Ranks)】 在 exceptionally fine music 〔特別好的音樂〕一短語里, fine 修飾 music, 而 exceptionally 修飾 fine. 在這種地方,我們覺得名詞 music 是重要的或主要的詞兒; fine 只不過是形容 (qualify) 或修飾 (modify) 它的一個詞兒;又, exceptionally 在邏輯上是附屬于 fine 的. 因此,可以講到'詞級': 被修飾語所居的等級似乎高于它的修飾語. 同樣地,在下列各短語里,我們可以分出三級來: "very (3) entertaining (2) book (1)" 〔非常 (3) 有趣的 (2) 書 (1)〕;或 "quite (3) well (2) written (1)" 〔寫得 (1) 很 (3) 好 (2)〕; 或 "rapidly (3) rising (2) reputation (1)" 〔很快 (3) 顯揚起來的 (2) 名望 (1), 意卽'聲名鵲噪'〕. 如果用'高級' (higher rank), '低級' (或'附屬') (lower rank *or* subordinate) 和'同級' (或'對等') (equal rank *or* co-ordinate) 這些名稱,那末修飾語和被修飾語之間的關係,就容易明白了. 當然囉,詞兒的等級可以不止這三個: 例如下列各短語,除了 "a" 以外,每個加上去的詞兒都是修飾它後面的那個修飾語的:—

an essay
a written *essay*
a well written *essay*
a very well written *essay*
a not very well written *essay*
a certainly not very well written *essay*

'詞級' 跟'詞類' 或'品詞' 是不相同的. 通常第一個被修飾語總是名詞,第一個修飾語總是形容詞,再進而第三、第四以及

以上的修飾語總是副詞. 但是情形並不老是這樣,如在 He writes well 一句里,被修飾語便是動詞 writes 而非名詞,第一個修飾語便是副詞 well 而非形容詞. 所以,這兩種觀念必須分別清楚: '名詞', '代名詞', '形容詞', '副詞' 等等是指詞類而言; '修飾語' 和 '被修飾語' 是指彼此間詞級的關係而言.* 例如在 book cover 〔書面〕一短語里,名詞 book 可以說是名詞 cover 的修飾語. 這樣說法,大概比說 '名詞 book 當形容詞用' 要來得明白些吧. 我們指詞級言時用 '修飾語' 和 '被修飾語', 指詞類或品詞言時才用 '名詞', '形容詞' 等等.

修飾語和被修飾語的關係

9.20. 【修飾語和被修飾語的關係】 修飾語和被修飾語的最普通的結合,或者是 (1) "written essay 典型", 即 '形容詞 + 名詞'; 或者是 (2) "book cover 典型", 即兩個名詞,其中第一個是修飾第二個的. 這兩類典型的修飾語和被修飾語,它們之間的關係,應該加以研究,至于究竟以用那一類爲宜,這往往成爲問題. 我們在 §2.21 里已經指明過, Japan tour 和 Japanese tour (=tour through Japan) 〔漫游日本〕兩者都可用;又如 college student 和 collegiate student 〔大學生〕, 以及 South China 和 Southern China 〔華南〕也都可以用.

*首倡 '詞級' 之論的 Otto Jespersen, 他是用 "primary" ['原詞'] 以指主要的被修飾語,用 "adjunct" 或 "secondary word" ['添詞' 或 '次詞'] 以指第一個修飾語,用 "subjunct" 或 "tertiary word" ['接詞' 或 '第三詞'] 以指第二個修飾語. 但爲簡明起見(因爲在學生用的文法書里,簡明是非常值得重視的),本書概避免引用這些名稱,而只用 "modifier" [修飾語] 和 "modified" [被修飾語] 兩個名稱.

此外又指明過，第二類典型的結合，如 stone wall, honey-bee, motor roads, 也是表明修飾的詞兒和被修飾的詞兒之間的各種不同的關係. Stone wall〔石牆〕是'石頭砌成的牆', honey-bee〔蜜蜂〕是'釀蜜的蜂', 而 motor road〔馬路〕是'預備開摩達卡的路'.

注意，在現代英文里，這第二類典型是非常之普通的. 如下列各表現法都是極其常見的: geography teacher〔地理教員〕, the China problem〔中國問題〕, the food problem〔糧食問題〕, the Disbandment Conference〔編遣會議〕, maternity hospital〔接生醫院〕, the fire-brigade〔救火隊〕, Peace Preservation Corps〔保安隊〕(音譯作 "Paoantui"), Japanese Navy Landing Party〔日本海軍陸戰隊〕. 又，'交通系統'應該用 communication system, 不可用 communicative system; '失業狀況'應該用 unemployment situation, 不可用 unemployed situation. 在邏輯上講，'狀況'不會有什麼失業不失業，這不過是指'失業（者）的狀況'; '系統'也不會有什麼交通不交通，不過是指'交通上的系統'吧了. 以下再舉一些例子:—

air transport 航空運輸
temperance society 禁酒會
water problem 飲水問題
employment bureau 職業介紹所
arithmetic class 算術課
railway regulations 鐵道章程
trade mission 商業調查旅行團
peace conference 和平會議
war council 軍事會議
birthday party 壽宴
wedding march 結婚進行曲
swimming suit 游泳衣
bathing costume 浴裝
fishing-boat 漁船
washing-woman 洗衣婦
printing machine 印刷機
dancing party 跳舞會
dining-room 飯廳

注意此處 a bathing costume〔浴衣〕決不是指服裝本身會洗浴，而是'人洗浴時用的服裝'；因此這 bathing 本來是一個動詞，變成了一個名詞，然後當作修飾語用的。同樣地，a fishing boat〔漁船〕便是打魚用的船。（但 a sailing-boat〔帆船〕或者說是航行的船，a printing machine 或者說是印刷的機器，也未嘗不可。）

在另一方面，我們必須注意英文里有某些成語，在邏輯上講好像是不對，但是現在在習慣上卻公認是對的。例如 dead march 就是'殯葬進行曲'(funeral march) 的正確的表現法（比較 wedding march〔結婚進行曲〕）；'治瘋病的醫生'要用 a mad-doctor 來表現才算是正確（比較：madman, mad dog〔瘋人，瘋犬〕）。如果照邏輯講起來，'進行曲'本身決無所謂'死'呀'活'的，爲什麼要用 dead march 呢？'醫生'本身並不害神經病，怎麼好用 mad-doctor 呢？要知道，這一類成語是爲便利而創造出來的。又如 Foreign Office〔外交部〕，嚴格地講，是"Foreign Affairs Office"〔外交事務部〕或"Office of the Secretary for Foreign Affairs"〔外交部長的辦公處〕，而'外交部長'雖然在英文里是要用"Foreign Minister"，但是他本人決不會是一個'外國人'(foreigner) 呀。此外例如：—

Criminal lawyer, lawyer for criminal cases (刑法律師，刑名師爺).
Insolvent court, court to decide cases of insolvency or bankruptcy (處置破產者之法庭).
Greek student, student of Greek language and literature (研究希臘語文或希臘文學者).
Indian problem, problem of India (印度問題).
English teacher, teacher of English who may be a Chinese (英文教員).
Dead list, list of the dead in battle (陣亡表).
A sickroom, not a "sick" room, but a room for sick people (病房).

Female education, education for women (女子教育).
Comparative literature, comparative study of the literatures of different peoples (比較文學).
Clinical thermometer, one for clinical use (醫生驗溫表).
Married life, life of married men or women (結婚生活).
Dying wish, wish of a dying man (臨死遺言).
Historical novelist, a writer of historical novels (歷史小說家).
Easy money, money that is earned without trouble (容易賺的錢,儘來之財).
Difficult friend, friend difficult to get along with (難相處的朋友).
Lazy time, time when one is lazy or idle (偷懶時候).

注意在 dead list 一例中,形容詞 dead 是先作名詞,然後再作形容詞或修飾語用的。在另一方面,卻用 death-duties〔遺產繼承稅〕, deathbed〔臨終所臥之牀〕, death-rate〔死亡率〕.

【練習六十六】 試將下列各短語化爲簡單,變成 water problem 和 peace conference 的形式:—

1. A cake like the moon of the Mid-Autumn (中秋月餅).
2. A present for Christmas (聖誕節禮物).
3. A cake for his birthday (壽糕).
4. A gift for the New Year (年禮).
5. His clothes for Sundays (星期日服).
6. Her gown for the night-time (臥服,寢衣).
7. My studies at school (學堂功課).
8. The days when he was a student (學生時代).
9. The new system of examination (考試制度).
10. The ceremonies for graduation (畢業典禮).
11. A painting of landscape (山水畫).
12. The train leaving at eleven thirty (十一時三十分火車).
13. The railway running between Tientsin and Pukow (津浦鐵路).
14. A reservation for a sleeping berth (臥車定位).
15. A card bearing your name (名片).
16. Your marks in algebra (代數分數).
17. A party in the evening (晚間宴會).
18. During the hours in the morning (早間).

19. Bad discipline in the dormitory (宿舍紀律).
20. Matters concerning money (錢項).
21. Reform of the currency (幣制改革).
22. Bureau for the inspection of lace (花邊檢驗局).

9.21. 【連字號 (hyphen) 之用法及省略】 從 fireman, fire-brigade 和 fire station 〔救火會〕這樣的例子看來,可看出修飾語和被修飾語之間的同一個邏輯結合,有時可以當作一個詞兒寫,有時當做一個加連字號的複合詞,還有時當做兩個詞兒分開來寫. 在這方面,英文現出一種可恥的亂七八糟的現象,即使慣用法也不常是靠得住的,因爲各作家以及各字典所採用的拼字形式都各不相同.* 例如有的人寫 blackboard, penknife, postgraduate, 有的人寫成 black-board, pen-knife, post-graduate. 更有些人寫 water-pressure 〔水壓〕, wet-nurse 〔乳母〕, blood-heat 〔血温〕(加連字號), 而有些人寫成 water pressure, wet nurse, blood heat (不加連字號). 這三個階段又可由下例表出:—

(1) football (2) basket-ball (3) volley ball
或 (1) bathtub (2) bath-house (3) bath chair (病家所用之揹輪自由椅)

這些拼法都不同,雖則在心理上我們覺得這三種同是一個個的詞兒. 這種極其混亂的情形更可由下列各例中看出:—

blackmail (1) 勒詐
blackbird (1) 鳥名
blackguard (1 光棍
black-board (2), 又 (1) 黑板
black-list (2), 又 (3) } 注意人
black book (3), 又 (2) } 物名簿
black-head (2), 又 (1) 粉刺,面皰
black sheep (3) 害羣之馬
waterproof (1) 又 (2) 不怕水
water-tight (2) 不透水
water-plant (2), 又 (3) 水草屬
New Year's Eve (3) 年夜

*Modern English Usage 一書中說過,'關于連字號用法上的這種流行于作家或印刷者間或兩者之間的混亂現象,眞是英文教育的恥辱' (p. 243), 又, '慣用法 (usage) 又是這樣變幻莫測,倒不如叫做 "反覆無常" (caprice) 吧' (p. 245).

或: New-Year's Eve (2) 年夜
headmaster (1), 又 (2),(3) 校長
footstool (1), 又 (2) 脚凳
fruit-knife (2), 又 (3) 削菓刀
flag-pole (2), 又 (1) 旗桿
sunlight (1) 日光
sun-beam (2) 日光
sun bath (3) 日光浴,曬日黃
gunboat (1), 又 (2) 砲艦
gunshot (1 , 又 (2) 發砲,射程
gunpowder (1) 火藥
gun-fire (2), 又 (1) 號砲,砲火
bloodhound (1) 一種獵犬
bloodstone (1) 血玉髓
blood orange (3) 血紅橘
blood-heat (2), 又 (3) 血溫
blood-relation (2), 又 (3) 至親,骨肉
blood brother (3), 又 (2) 同胞兄弟
homecoming (1), 又 (2) 歸家,歸國
fire-irons (2) 火爐用具
fre-arms (2) 火器
firefly (1) 螢
fireplace (1) 壁爐
fire-escape (2), 又 (3) 太平梯
fire station (3), 又 (2) 救火會
post office (3), 又 (2) 郵政局
pen-knife (2), 又 (1) 小刀
bath-tub (2), 又 (1) 浴盆

無論如何,我們學英文的人,就閱讀方面而言,應該密切注意慣用法,遇有疑惑時也應該以字典爲標準. 有三件事我們應該注意: (1) 有許多詞兒雖然分開寫,但實際上是一個詞兒,如 full stop, Holy Ghost〔聖靈〕, good will, short story, New Year, fair play〔公道〕, foul play〔犯規,詭計〕. (2) 加連字號的詞兒大半是在第一個詞兒上有顯著 (或主要) 的重音,如 pen-knife, hand-bag, class-mate, class-room, day-time〔'pen-naif, 'hændbæg, 'klɑ:smeit, 'klɑ:srum, 'deitaim〕(都可以當一個詞兒寫,不用連字號). 如果主要的重音在第二個詞兒,那末通常不應該加連字號,如 good will, short story, New Year, foul play〔gud 'wil, ʃɔ:t 'stɔ:ri, nju: 'jə:, faul 'plei〕 (3) 加連字號的詞兒 (gun-cotton〔綿火藥〕) 和不加連字號的完全複合詞 (gunpowder) 的分別,大半是視年代遠近及慣用法而定. 通常,詞兒越老,複合詞的結合越發久遠,那末似乎越發可以把連字號省掉: 如 madman, moonshine, sunlight, sunrise,

waterproof, waterfall, rainfall, football, fireplace, 但 fire-brigade, water-tight, sun-beam, water-melon, basket-ball, side-walk (或 sidewalk) 和 time-table.*

修飾語之間的關係

9.22. 【修飾語之間的關係】 我們以前在 § 9.11 里已經說過，修飾語和被修飾語彼此是居于不同的等級. 例如:

well	(3)	written	(2)	essay	(1)
quite	(3)	well	(2)	written	(1)
very	(3)	entertaining	(2)	book	(1)
quickly	(3)	rising	(2)	reputation	(1)

上面這四個例子里，第一級代表被修飾語，第二級代表它的修飾語，第三級代表修飾語的修飾語. 修飾語可算是附屬于，或等級低于，被修飾語.

我們心里記住了這一點，便可以把修飾語之間的關係分別爲'對等的'(同級的) 或者'附屬的'(低級的). 在 good, healthy child (2 + 2 +1) 或 pale, thin face (2 + 2 + 1) 中便是對

* '簡明牛津字典' (Concise Oxford Dictionary) 的助理編輯 H. W. Fowler, 承認英文在這一方面是紊亂不堪的，經過二十年的研究，他自信發見了一條規則'似乎可以把這種紊亂現象……變成比較有點兒規律……這條簡單的規則就是在這種複合詞上是否應加連字號全靠讀音:只要兩部分讀起來有一個 (或者有一個顯明的主要) 重音，而這重音落在第一部分上，便可以認爲合法.' (參看 1929 年訂正版序言中夾註.) Headmaster 因爲讀起來重音在 [-'mɑːs-], 不在 [hed-], 所以不應該加連字號，只應該或作 headmaster, 或作 head master, '隨便那一個都可以' 又 water ouzel 因爲讀起來是兩個同等的重音，所以惟有把這個複合詞分開當作兩個詞兒寫，不加連字號. 這個規則就心理學上講是對的，而且在歷史上由條頓語中重音移動的事實看來，也可以證明是對的. 可是 Fowler 的這條規則，非至大多數的作家和印刷者都一致遵守的時候，'慣用法' 依然是'亂七八糟的'.

等修飾語，在 rather bitter disappointment (3 + 2 + 1) 或 thinly concealed lie (3 + 2 + 1) 中便是一個附屬修飾語和一個主要修飾語.

9.23. 【對等修飾語 (2 + 2 + 1)】 現在我們先來研究對等修飾語 (2 + 2 + 1). 最簡單的實例是:—

a small, clear handwriting 細小清秀的筆跡
a beautiful, clear voice 婉曼清妙的聲音
a long, eventful career 亙長多事的生涯
a thin, long face 清癯瘦長的面孔
a sweet, graceful manner 溫柔嫻雅的態度
those lonely, bare, stone houses 那些孤另另質樸的石頭房子
that stingy, dirty, little black backyard 那個鄙陋齷齪昏暗的小後院

次之，在英文里常時有種種的連詞放在這些修飾語之間. 例如:—

a rainy *and* stormy weather 陰雨而多風暴的天氣
a careful *and* efficient worker 細心而能幹的工作者
a tedious *and* long speech 冗長的演說
a small *but* comfortable room (雖) 小而舒適的房間
a very clever *but* rather erratic (unsteady) chap 很伶巧但是意志頗不定的人
a brilliant *but* thoroughly impracticable scheme 冠冕堂皇但是完全不可實行的計劃
a mediocre *but* serviceable book of reference 雖然平庸但是合用的參考書
after a dangerous *though* exciting adventure 經過一次雖然使人興奮但是很危險的冒險
a homely *but* clean-looking face (雖然) 平凡但是乾乾淨淨的面孔
a glorious *though* defeated fighter 雖敗猶榮的戰士
making slow *but* sure progress 造成雖然遲緩但是實在的進步
progressing slowly *but* surely 進步雖慢但是實在得很

在某些短語里，這些修飾語在意義上似乎彼此融合起來，多少眞像是彼此有修飾的作用. 這個在以 nice and 起首的成語里特

別顯明，如 *nice and* clean, *nice and* cool, *nice and* warm, *nice and* soft〔清淨愉快，涼爽宜人，溫暖適意，軟綿綿的〕。這種地方的 nice and 實在是當做一種副詞修飾語形容後面的形容詞的。如 "The car is going *nice and fast*" 意即車子走起來'快得好'，或'快得令人滿意'；又 "The house stands *nice and high*" 實在是'房子高到令人滿意的程度'.* （參看：中文'好'字有時也有這種用法，如'好爽快'，'好快'，'好暖和'，'好大的風'，'好大的造化'等。這種'好'字好像含有形容詞和副詞兩種性質的。）同樣地，"*high and* dry talk"=abstract talk〔空洞的談話〕，"*high and mighty* manner" = proud, arrogant manner〔高傲的態度，妄自尊大的態度〕.

這些對等修飾語往往用來增強彼此的意義，如上例 that stingy, dirty, little black backyard，好像這說話的人還嫌罵得不痛快，必定要重重疊疊堆上許多形容詞，才覺得出了這口惡氣似的。在這種情形之中，我們簡直決不使用任何連詞，但只把它們堆積起來，以收累積的效果。下面是一些有趣的例子：—

I saw a *great, big* tiger. [我看見了一隻大大的老虎]
He was a *tall, big, husky* fellow. [他是個高大强壯的人]
Don't worry about such *small, little* things. [不必爲這些瑣細的事情煩惱吧]
It was only a *tiny, little* spot. [這是一塊小小的地方]
That was your *great, good* luck (非 *great good luck*, 但可作 *great luck and good luck*). [那是你的大好的運氣]
He had a *tremendous, big* fortune. [他有一筆鉅大（豐厚）的家財]
He had some *excellent, good* wine. [他吃了甘美上好的酒]

*這種地方 and 的用法實則和 "Be a good boy *and* get out of my presence" [乖乖的離開我的面前吧] (=Be *so* good *as to* get out of my presence) 中 and 的用法相似.

It was a *terrible, fearful-looking* thing. [可畏可怖的東西]
You *dirty, low down dog of a* scoundrel. [你這個卑鄙齷齪的無賴的東西]
She had a *rich, golden* voice. [她的聲音很是圓潤融洽]

參看中文里複合形容詞'龐大', '巨大', '細小', '微小', '瑣細', '美好', '佳美', '良好', '善良'等. 在中文里,有時候覺得一個字讀起來音調嫌禿,往往頓不住,所以常用兩個字,這兩個字本來的意義並不完全相同,但在這種結合里似乎已經形成一個概念了. 這可算是中文的特點. 如果和上面英文例子比較起來,似乎中文里這種形容詞已經失去它的累積的效果而側重在形式及諧音的關係上面,所以還不能認爲和上面英文的例子是完全相等,只不過有時相同而已.

最後,還有些極其普通的結合,幾個修飾語並非眞正對等的. 我們細察 that nice young lady〔那個姣美的少婦〕這一短語,覺得和 that young nice lady〔那個年輕的美婦人〕的意思很不相同. 第二式平常是不用的,除非要着重 nice 這個詞兒. 所以可見得 young lady 自成一個概念,用 nice 來修飾它,我們的意思也實在是 a nice young lady, 並非 a nice lady, 也不是 a nice and young lady〔姣美而年輕的婦人〕. 這個短語的公式實則是 2 + (2 + 1). 同樣地,我們可說 "take the *first fast train*"〔坐第一班快車〕如果是要着重在 fast train〔快車〕的觀念上; 但如果着重 first train〔第一班的車子〕, 便可說 "take the *fast* first train"〔坐那輛快的第一班車子〕(意卽第一班車子不止一輛,現在要揀那快的坐). 因此可以看得出,關係最密切的修飾語總時常最靠近它所修飾的詞兒. 其他例如:—

your new straw-hat 你的新草帽
every New Year's Day 每年元旦日

his uncle's new book 他舅舅的新書
a big Christmas dinner 一個很大 聖誕節筵席
a grand wedding party 一個盛大的婚宴
his teacher's profession 他的教書的職業
her woman's heart 她的婦人心
her mother's heart 她的慈母之心

在末一例中，mother's heart 形成一個概念 (= heart of a mother〔慈母之心〕)，her 是修飾它的。"The loss of the baby broke her mother's heart" 這一句的意思是'傷了她爲娘的心' (her motherly heart)，決非傷了那小孩子祖母的心呀。

【練習六十七】 用下列材料造成句子或短語. 試仿照下列三種方式，決定何句以用何式爲宜:—

(a) *a small, clear handwriting* (不用連詞)
(b) *a tedious and long speech*; *a clever but unsteady chap* (用連詞 and, or, but, though, although)
(c) *that stingy, dirty, little black backyard* (只將修飾語堆積起來而不用連詞)

1. Horse—great, Arabic, racing.
2. Car—new, smart-looking, smooth-running, 1929 model.
3. Pen-knife—good-looking, useless.
4. Friend—formerly close, now forgotten.
5. Journey—eventful, miserable, long, three-day, exciting wonderful, second, etc.
6. House—yellow, red-roofed, foreign-style, cheap-looking, small, moss-grown, ivy-covered, etc.
7. Essay—well-written, clear, not brilliant.
8. Student—so-so, not too good, not too bad.
9. Dress—bright-coloured, silk, new, smart, too thin.

9.24. 〔附屬修飾語 (3 + 2 + 1)〕 這一類有些獨特的結合，要加以研究。 最簡單的結合當然是 well (3) written (2) essay (1)，或 much (3) older (2) man (1) 的一式。 第三級不必總是副詞，也可以是形容詞或名詞。 如:—

English	(3)	grammar	(2)	teacher	(1)……英語文法教員
ready made	(3)	boot	(2)	shop	(1)……現成鞋子的店
second-hand	(3)	book	(2)	store	(1)……舊書攤
newspaper	(3)	manager's	(2)	office	(1)……報館經理室

在 ready-made boot shop 的情形之中，由于加上連字號（或連接的詞兒）而生的淆混應設法避免．譬如像 ready-made boot-shop 和 dirty clothes-basket 這種拼法應該避免；read -made boot shop 和 dirty-clothes basket 的拼法比較可取．

細讀下面這些在英文里常見的特殊形式：一

(1) 加連字號的修飾語：

ready-to-hand proof 手邊的（現成的）證據
lighter-than-air craft 輕于空氣的船（飛船）
four-month-old baby 四個月的嬰兒
three-inch-high heel 三寸高的後跟
a better-than-nothing substitute 聊勝于無的替代品

(2) 用副詞＋分詞：

the much regretted affair 懊悔不迭的事
the oft-repeated remark 再三複述的評語
the ill deserved punishment 罪有應得的懲罰
a well-known author 聞名的作家
a well-arranged and admirably carried out plan 安排得當而實行得很妙的計畫
the many-times repeated warning 再三再四的警告
some hitherto unpublished letters 幾封至今尚未發表的信
the far-and-wide discussed new product 遠近議論的新出品
an internationally known playwright 國際聞名的劇本

(3) 用附加的副詞或介詞：

unheard-of wonders 未之前聞的奇事
unpaid-for goods 未付現的貨物
a dearly paid for mistake 付了很大代價的錯誤
undreamed-of success 夢想不到的成功
a much talked-about affair 惹起許多議論的事件

the most talked-about girl in Rome 羅馬城內最惹人嘗議的女郎
well-nourished and well brought-up children 撫養得好教育得好的小孩
a tightly fastened down mouth 閉得緊緊的嘴巴（金人三緘其口）
a long-drawn-out struggle 拖延時日的戰爭，長期鬪爭

(4) 用介詞短語:

the to me interesting idea 在我覺得有趣的念頭
the to him very ordinary occurrence 在他看來很是平常的事變
this to her absolutely new experience 這個在于她完全生疏的經驗
this in many respects inferior work 這件在許多方面（看來）都不是上等的作品
a for ever remembered incident 一件永矢勿忘的事件

(5) 用無限式短語:

a strongly to be desired reform 需求很熱烈的改革
those not to be avoided expenses 那些不可避免的用費
those clearly to be avoided mistakes 那些明明應該避免的錯誤

在這種地方，要注意一些典型的實例中修飾語之間的內在關係。

a. ready(2)-to-hand (3) proof (1)，或 "(2 + 3) + 1."
three-inch(3)-high (2) heel (1)，或 "(3 + 2) + 1."
b. much (3) regretted (2) affair (1).
far-and-wide (3) discussed (2) new product (2 + 1).
c. unheard(2)-of (3) wonders (1)，或 " 2 + 3) + 1."
dearly (3) paid for (2 + 3) mistake (1 .
d. to me (3) interesting (2) idea (1).
to her (3) absolutely (3) new 2) experience (1)，或 "3 + (3 + 2) + 1,"或 "4 + (3 + 2) + 1."
e. strongly (3) to be desired (2) reform (1).
not (3) to be avoided (2) expenses (1).

我們可以注意上列各例中連字號的用法很有點兒不規則。例如 well-arranged 加連字號，而 admirably carried out 則不加；又，long-drawn-out 加連字號，tightly fastened down 則不加。有一點必須弄明白，就是，這種分別多半是只爲便利起

見；通例，除非在必要，或者有助于明晰的時候，是不加連字號的。連字號足以表明一羣的詞兒是整個兒當作一種文法作用的，如 ready-to-hand 便作爲一個形容詞用。好像 "(2 + 3) + 1" 的括號一樣，它也是把這一羣詞兒合成一個單位。如 "This piano has *not* yet been *paid for*"，但 "this *unpaid-for piano.*" 在長的結合中，如 "*admirably carried out* plan" 或 *tightly fastened down mouth*"，如果用連字號，便覺得多此一舉，而且樣子也怪難看的。

【練習六十八】(A) 試造成上列所討論 "a"，"b"，"c"，"d"，"e" 式之成語，即以所舉例子爲模範，而變換其一部分。如就下列原文中，可得修改文如次：—

原文	修改文
Hitherto unpublished letter.....	Hitherto unknown author [至今不出名的作家].
Undreamed-of success.....	Undreamed-of fame [夢想不到的好名聲].
Unpaid-for goods.....	Uncared-for children [沒人照管的小孩].
The most talked-about girl.....	The most highly thought-of person [最令人企慕的人].
This for him very ordinary occurrence	This for me very common, etc. [這個我覺得很普通的.....]

(B) 完成下列各成語：—

good-for-nothing (不中用的).....	for him unexpected (在他是意料不及的) .....
worse-than-useless (無益而有損)...	a much talked-about new.....
four-year-old.....	a closely concealed (藏得很嚴密的.....)
well planned.....	a closely guarded.....
not very well performed (表演得不很好的)	a much prayed-for (禱求甚切的)...
nationally known 全國聞名的)...	a tightly sealed-up (封得密密層層的) .....
politically unwise (在政治上不聰明的)	a by no means bad (絲毫不壞的)...
to m uninterestin (我覺得不趣味的)	a by far superior (高明得多的) ..

an in some respects better (在幾方面覺得好些的) .....

a soon to be completed (馬上可以完成的) .....

換 級

9.25. 【換級 (Shifted Ranks)】 在英文里,我們往往發見在某些短語里有一種詞級的變換. 這些短語大概有三式: (1) 由 those who probably win 而變成的 "probable winners", 以及由 those who sleep heavily 而變成的 "heavy sleepers", (2) "extraordinary good luck" 代替 extraordinarily good luck, 以及 "*real* wicked people" 代替 really wicked people, (3) "*new-laid* eggs" 或 "*newly-laid* egg". 第 1 式表 '副詞 + 動詞' 至 '形容詞 + 名詞' 之變換. 第 2 式是本來似乎應該用副詞的地方改用形容詞代替. 第 3 式包含 '形容詞或副詞 + 分詞'.

(1) 副詞+動詞 > 形容詞+名詞. 例如:—

first offenders 初犯
quick thinkers 思想敏捷的人
early risers 早起的人
long residents 住居長久的人
heavy eaters 食量大的人
sound thinkers 思慮周到的人
sound sleepers 睡得很熟的人
hard drinkers 酗酒的人
swift runners 跑得很快的人
close prisoners 看守得很嚴密的囚犯
probable winners 大概可以得勝的人
heavy losers 損失重大的人
perfect strangers 完全陌生的客人
hard students 用功的學生
good haters 善惡其所惡的人
(positive wrong) 顯然的錯誤
(comparative ease) 比較的安適
(almost certainty) 差不多的確定性

在這許多情形之中,如果仔細分析起來,可看出這些修飾語只修飾到那些被修飾的詞兒的一半. Heavy eaters 並不是說 The eaters are heavy〔食者體量很重〕, 不過是說 Their eating is heavy〔他們食量很大〕. Good haters 並不是說 The haters

are good〔痛恨人的人很好〕，不過是說 They can hate very well〔他們痛恨某種人或某種事物痛恨的不錯〕. 又如 close prisoners, 囚犯本身決無所謂'嚴密''不嚴密'的道理（因爲'嚴密的囚犯'不成一句話說），這是說他們被看守得很嚴密 (closely guarded) 而已. Perfect strangers 當然不是說他們人格'完全' (perfect)，只不過是我們完全不認識他們 (*perfectly strange* to us). 上面所舉加括號的三個例子不是表明由'副詞 + 動詞'而來的一種詞級的變換，卻是由'副詞 + 形容詞'變來的：由 comparatively easy 和 positively wrong 變成 comparative ease 和 positive wrong.

【練習六十九】 改變下列句子，將斜體字的詞級變換一下：—

1. This fellow does not hear anything when he is asleep. He *sleeps soundly*.
2. Don't punish him too hard. This is the *first time* he ever *commits an offence*.
3. Among you three, Chu-lien is going to *lose most heavily* in this deal.
4. He *writes quickly*. He *writes rapidly*.
5. He *came* here *only a short while ago*. (New-comer.)
6. He *has been* in this country *a long time*. (Old-timer.)
7. This man *talks glibly*.
8. That man can be *easily victimized* or cheated.

(2) 形容詞＋形容詞. 英文里有一種着着前進的傾向，便是有些地方，特別是在口語里面，爲力求簡潔和遒勁起見，而把副詞詞尾 -ly 削去. 例如 Come *quick* 現在便比 Come *quickly* 普通些，因爲加了這 -ly 似乎減弱了這個詞兒的力量. 我們說 He is *devilishly* handsome〔他是極其漂亮〕和 She is *deucedly* clever〔她是非常之伶巧的〕固然不妨，但是說 *devilish* handsome 和 *deuced* clever，便更加通順了. 同樣地，*extraordinary* good luck 和 *real* wicked people 便比 *extraordinarily* good

luck 和 *really* wicked people 更富于表現的力量. 所以在 dead, hard, fast 等詞兒中也一律把 -ly 取消,直接當作副詞用,如: *dead* drunk, *dead* pale, *dead* tired, *hard* hit, *hard* pressed / run *fast*. 注意在下列各例中,總是表明強調或強意 (emphasis or intensity) 的形容詞,才有這種奇怪的職務上的變換,這個可證明簡潔遒勁的需要乃是這種顯然變換的原因. 那些在文言英語 (literary English) 里認爲不十分合格的例子都加上一個星號.*

(A)

burning hot soup 熱氣騰騰的湯
shocking bad novel 討厭的壞小說
real wicked guy 眞正的壞蛋 「人
real stubborn fellow 眞正的頑固的
excellent good friends 極要好的好朋友 「運氣
extraordinary good luck 特別好的

(B)

*exceeding small 過小,極小
*exceeding hot 過熱,非常之熱
*thundering good 好極,好得很
passing strange 奇怪之至
*uncommon fine 非常之好
*mighty glad 極其歡喜
*jolly nice (good) 甚美,甚佳
devilish handsome 極其漂亮
deuced clever 非常伶巧,怪伶巧的
confounded difficult 極其困難
*wondrous fine 好極,美極
*terrible strong 極其强壯
dead tired 疲倦極
dead drunk 沈醉,爛醉,大醉,沉醉
dead asleep 沈睡,熟睡如死人
stark naked 脫得精光,赤裸裸一絲 「不掛
bitter cold 嚴寒
biting cold 寒冷砭骨
blazing hot 炎熱

(C)

red-hot 赤熱,熱紅的
snowy-white 雪白
bloody-red 血紅
ashy-pale 死灰色
bitter-sweet 又苦又甜
dark brown 深棕色
deep blue 深藍
light green 淡綠,淺綠
wide open 大開,敞開

【譯者註】 此處 shocking, exceeding, thundering, passing, mighty, jolly, devilish, deuced, confounded, wondrous, terrible 等在俗語里都一律作'極,甚,非常,格外,怪' 等意義解釋 [參看上海俗語 '邪氣 (好)', '交關 (漂亮)' 等], 已經脫離了它們的原義,即使還含有些微色彩,然而已經到了不可捉摸的地步了

*上舉各例大半採自 *Modern English Usage* 第二册 § 15.2.

"A" 欄各例中的第一個修飾語，很可把它作爲一個眞正形容詞來解釋。如 shocking bad novel 可以說是又壞又討厭，又可以說是 shockingly bad novel〔壞得令人討厭的小說〕，但是 real stubborn fellow〔眞正頑固的人〕應該作爲 real stubborn-fellow〔眞正的頑固之人〕解釋，excellent good friends 也應該作爲 excellent good-friends 解釋。所以 good friends, good luck, stubborn fellow 都形成一個概念，被這些形容詞所修飾。"C" 欄的例子實在是些含有兩個形容詞的複合修飾語。例如 red 修飾 hot, snowy 修飾 white, ashy 修飾 pale, 但同時我們覺得 red 又是直接修飾那熱的東西，看起來彷彿紅的一般，而 snowy 又直接修飾那白的物質。相同地，比方一扇窗 (a window) 說是 wide open〔大開〕，不但是說它 widely open〔開得大〕，而且是說因爲打開所以覺得寬大；所以 wide 既修飾 open 又直接修飾 window. 又，"a *bitter-sweet* experience" 是'又甜又苦的經驗'，所以這個和 "*bitter cold* night"〔嚴寒之夜〕(=a night bitter*ly* cold) 不同。Dark red, deep blue 和 light green 都好像是複合形容詞。

(3) 形容詞或副詞＋分詞。

new-laid eggs, 或 newly laid eggs (新生的蛋，才下的蛋)
new-born baby, 或 newly born baby (初生嬰兒)
new-coined words, 或 newly coined words (新造的詞兒)
newly-married couples (新婚夫婦)
green-painted house (漆綠色的房子), 但 thoroughly re-painted car (全部重新漆過的車子)
smoky-looking walls (煤煙薰黑了的牆)
good-mannered people, 或 well-mannered people (有禮貌的人)
moderate-sized building, 或 moderately sized building (大小適中的房子，不大不小的屋子)
foreign-built house (洋式的房子)

deep dug-in trenches (掘得很深的壕溝)
plain-spoken man (說話坦白的人,言語老實的人)

在 red-hot iron 中我們所以保留形容詞的形式 red 的,是因爲 red 一半也是修飾 iron 本身的,那末在 new-laid eggs 的情形中正復如此,我們可能說 new〔新〕,因爲我們一半也想到 new eggs〔新的蛋〕呢. 在這些情形之中,我們如果覺得是修飾 eggs 的,便可以用 new; 如果要想用它修飾分詞 laid,那就不妨用 newly. 因此 moderate-sized houses 或 moderately sized houses 都可以,但是 green-painted houses 卻不可用 greenly painted houses. Foreign-built houses 並不是說房子是外國人建造的,也不是建造在外國地方,而是說房子本身是洋式的. 再細讀下面一節,這種種情形便更容易明白了.

9.26. 【變形的短語當修飾語用】 在上節許多例子之中, good-mannered man 和 well mannered man 以及 moderate-sized houses 和 moderately sized houses, 實則是兩種形式的修飾語. Well mannered 和 moderately sized 的一式很容易懂得,容易分析. 另一形式的修飾語實在是屬于英文里隨便造成的一大類. 這些其實可以當作爲便利和簡潔而變成修飾語的短語看待. 如:

A moderate-sized building=a building *of moderate size.*
A good-mannered man=a man *of good manners.*

Moderate-size 和 good-manners 兩個概念都當作整個兒的看,加上一個 -ed, 然後當修飾語用.

這一類由短語變成的修飾語,有兩種最重要最有用的值得加以研究:—

形＋名＋-ed

moderate-sized house 大小適中的房子
good-mannered man 很有禮貌的人
good-hearted people 心術寬厚的人
seven-hilled city 七座山的城
three-legged cat 三脚貓
eight-legged essay 八股文
nine-headed bird 九頭鳥
bob-haired girl 短髮女郎
red-haired woman 紅髮的婦人
smooth-tongued fellow 花言巧語的人
three-storied building 三層樓的房子
round-eyed innocent 圓眼睛的小兒
chicken-hearted fellow 膽小如鼠的人
clean-minded man 心地光明的人
able-bodied men 筋强力壯的男子
evil-minded man 存心惡毒的人
swell-headed fellow 獃頭獃腦的人，'猪頭三'
bow-legged child 彎脚的小孩

X＋動＋-ing, 或 -ed

(a) hair-raising stunts 令人髮立的奇藝
blood-curdling story 令人寒心的故事
heart-rending problem 傷心事
flesh-eating animal 食肉獸
awe-inspiring appearance 令人望而生畏的神情
body building food 養身體的食物
story-telling contest 故事演說競賽（會）
self-starting machine 自動機
peace-loving people 愛好和平的人民

(b) frost-bitten flowers 爲霜所害的花，凍傷了的花
thunder-struck face 大驚失色（的面孔）
famine-stricken district（罹災的區域）災區
God-forsaken sinner 蒙上帝寬赦的人
storm-tossed ship 被風浪所簸蕩的船

(c) smoky-looking room 煤煙薰染過的房間
cheap-looking dress 外觀低廉的女衣
deep-sunken well 深陷的井
slow-going boat 慢行的船

在這兩種情形之中，顯見得加連字號的兩部分都當作整個兒去修飾後面的一個詞兒。 如 nine-headed bird 實在是 nine-headed bird〔九個頭的鳥兒〕，非 nine headed-birds〔九個有頭的鳥兒〕（凡是鳥兒那里會有沒頭的）。 Headed-bird 也正如

raising stunts〔升起的奇藝〕或 curdling story〔凝結的故事〕,都是不通的。第二羣用動詞造成的短語中,(a) 組是'動詞 + 賓語',(b) 組是'動詞 + 邏輯主語',(c) 組是'動詞 + 補足語'.

(a) hair-raising stunts = stunts that raise your hair.
(b) frost-bitten flowers = flowers bitten *by* frost.
(c) smoky-looking room = a room that looks smoky.

因爲 room 看起來好像 smoky, well 是 sunken deep (smoky 修飾 room, deep 修飾 well), 所以不可用 "*smokily*-looking room" 或 "*deeply*-sunken well".

【練習七十】(a) 試將上頁所舉短語修飾語 (phrase-modifiers) 一律變成短語或子句附于被修飾的詞兒之後.

(b) 將下列短語或子句變成短語修飾語,置于被修飾的詞兒之前:—

1. A crook *with a double face.*
2. A chair *with three legs.*
3. A house *with five rooms.*
4. A boy *with a round face.*
5. My brother *who uses his left hand more than his right hand.*
6. The quinine pills *coated with sugar.*
7. Cigarettes *with cork tips.*
8. Sticks *with golden handles.*
9. A man *with a cool head*
10. A young man *with a hot head.*
11. That child *who looks sleepy.*
12. A machine *for cutting paper.*
13. A machine *for rolling cigarettes.*
14. A device *for saving money.*
15. A policy *that shares the profits of the company.*
16. A man *who is educated by himself.*
17. A people *abiding by the law.*
18. A person *who means well.*
19. A wall *which is painted dark.*
20. Old age *which is approaching fast.*

21. The habit *of telling the truth.*
22. A country *torn by war.*
23. A nation *that drinks tea.*
24. People *who go to church.*
25. Shoes *made by hand,* or *made by machine.*

9.27 【名詞和動詞當修飾語用】 名詞和動詞通常是被別的詞兒所修飾的。不過名詞和動詞本身作爲修飾語的，也並不少見。名詞當修飾語用的例子如下：—

I *kind of* admire him (=I admire him *in a way*).
I was *a sort of* tired and disgusted with the whole business.
I *sort of* pitied him (I pitied him *to some extent*).
He was *way* above the others.
He was standing *miles* off from the place.
The husband and wife are *a world* apart [天壤之別] as human beings.
I dion [愛迪生] says that Henry Ford [福特(大王)] is sometimes happy, but he is never happy *a billion dollars' worth.*
This cloth is *thirty-six inches* wide.
I don't care *a twopence* [毫不介意] what you do with it.
I don't care *a rap* (*a bit*) about it.
A child may say to her mother, "I love my sister *a little bit,* and love you *a whole big balloon.*"
This is *twenty-five cents* above the usual price.
He was *three times* older than his "uncle."
I am coming *next week.*
I am going *this Thursday.*
That was *something* awful, *something* great (此處作 "*indeed* awful", "*indeed* great" 的意思用).
The picture was *nothing* wrong (意即 *not at all* wrong; 有些結構之中，還可用 nothing 加分詞，如 "*nothing* daunted", 意即 *not at all* daunted).
Go *one* better (美國俚語=Go *one step* or *one degree* further)
You haven't *the ghost of* a chance (=a ghostly chance) [全然無望].
He had *a hell of* a time (=hellish time) [打入地獄，活受罪]
That *rascal of* a fellow (=rascally fellow) [流氓腔調]

That *shiftless, sin-smelli·g drunkard of* a husband (=husband who is a drunkard) [墮落不中用，終日酗酒的丈夫].
You will catch *a death of* a cold (=a deadly cold) [傷風得要命].

"Kind of", "sort of" 是俗語，作'頗似'，'類似'，'多少有點兒'解，上海方言'像煞有介事'中'像煞'兩字的意義與此相近似. 在末五例中可以看出第一個名詞實際上是修飾第二個名詞的，所以是它的邏輯上的修飾語，雖則在文法上這第二個名詞好像是修飾第一個的. 例如 hell of a time，在邏輯上 hell 是修飾 time 的，而在文法上 of a time 是修飾 hell 的.

動詞，正唯其是動詞，所以很少作爲修飾語用. 這是因爲它們當修飾語用的時候，通常是取分詞的形式，或則是一個無限式短語，這些留待以後幾節里去研究. 它們如不是分詞或無限式時，通常都有一個主語，表出的或省略的，這就使得它們難于作爲修飾語用了. 但有幾種情形，是一個獨立的子句所含的一個有限式動詞，已經混合變成一個副詞，如下例：—

Maybe [也許，或許] you are mistaken; *maybe* I can do it. (由 it may be 的獨立子句而來，意即 perhaps.)
I will go away temporarily, *say* [比方說], for three weeks, and then come back. (由 let us say 而來.)
Bring him in here, *willy-nilly*. (由 will he, nill he=whether he likes it or not 而來.)

Please 和 suppose 這兩個詞兒，在 *Please* ring the bell 和 *Suppose* he won't consent 兩句里，仍然明顯地保留着命令式動詞 (imperative verb) 的力量，但是在下列兩句里險些兒就快要變成副詞了：—

Will you *please* do that? (參看: Will you *kindly* do that?)
Suppose we go to bed. (用于命令，作提議的一種方式)

又，'繪聲詞' (sound-descriptive words)，如 pop, crash, bang, 在性質上跟平常的動詞已經有點兒兩樣，但在用法上是既當動詞又當副詞的。

當動詞： *Pop* the question [突然提出求婚之意] / *pop in and out* [鑽進鑽出，塞進拔出] / *pop* the pistol.
當副詞： *Pop* goes the weasel [突然跳起 weasel 舞(一種鄉村跳舞)來] / Something inside there goes *pop* (=breaks with a pop) ['卜'地一聲壞了].

當動詞： *Bang* the door / Doors *bang*.
當副詞： Hit him *bang* in the face / He fell *bang* on the floor.

當動詞： *Crash* through the gate/The whole building *crashed* down.
當副詞： A piece of stone came *crash* through the window.

又，注意 let alone (=not to speak of) 〔遑論，不消說〕中 let 這個詞兒，用的地方好像需要一個分詞或無限式似的。

He cannot unify his own province, *let alone* unifying the whole country (實在是 *we will let alone* the question of, etc.)

短語修飾語和子句修飾語

9.30. 【短語修飾語和子句修飾語】 以上我們一直是討論修飾語在被修飾的詞兒之前，並談到這種 '詞兒修飾語' (word-modifiers) 之間的關係。現在我們要研究修飾語在被修飾的詞兒之後，這些大都是些短語和子句，如 '無限式短語，' '分詞短語'，'介詞短語'，和 '關係子句' 以及它們的修飾法。最後，我們再進而研究 '述語修飾語' (predicate modifiers)，這種述語修飾語通常又是些詞兒而非短語或子句。這樣關于修飾法的主要作用的研究便可告一結束了。

無限式短語當修飾語用

9.31. 【無限式短語當修飾語用】 無限式是英文中最常用的形式之一. 無限式當名詞短語用,這我們在 §2.30 里已經看見過了;在這里我們要研究無限式當修飾語用. 它的主要作用有五種:—

(a) Something *to do*, a book *to read* (當形容詞).
(b) Come *to tell you*, began *to see* (完成前面動詞的意義).
(c) Brave enough *to go*, too poor *to pay* (完成前面形容詞的意義).
(d) *To be sure*, *to tell you the truth* (作爲句子里的獨立短語).
(e) Ask him *to come*, allow him *to stay* (修飾賓語).

嚴格地講, "b" 式和 "e" 式都是述語修飾語,但爲便利起見,這里我們先研究 "b" 式, "e" 式待 §9.70 一節中再講.

以下是些供研究和練習的例子:—

(a) 這里面包括和中文成語 '有事可做', '無書可讀', '有人做伴', '有功課要預備' 等相等的英文無限式短語.

Something *to do*, *to see*, *to talk about*, *to read*.
Nothing *to do*, *to see*, *to eat*, *to drink*.
Nobody *to play with*, *to talk to*, *to appreciate*.
Somebody *to encourage you*, *to keep you company*, *to understand your troubles*, *to be your friend and adviser*, *to lend you money*.
You have everything *to gain* and nothing *to lose* by going to see him.

I have a story *to tell you*.
A lesson *to prepare*.
A lesson *to copy*.
Some work *to do*.
A new world *to conquer*.
A desire *to learn*.
No desire *to study*.
No chance *to see him*.
Readiness *to act*.
Money *to buy*.
No time *to wait*.
No money *to spend*.
A family *to feed*.
A brother *to educate*.

A question *to ask.*
A request *to make.*
Ability *to talk.*
Mind *to study.*
Power *to give.*
Permission *to go.*
Will *to try.*
Opportunity *to see.*

【練習七十一】 把這些短語先譯成中文，然後再翻成英文. 這個可用寫作的方式自己去做，或由教師或同學幫助，舉出中文中相等的短語. 然後用這些材料造句，或用下面這些作爲被修飾的詞兒造成新的短語: no chance, no time, no opportunity, ability, desire, nothing, something.

(b) 我們說 try to see him 的時候，to see him 這個無限式短語明明是幫助完成本動詞 try 的意義的. 這個無限式既然是完成本動詞的意義的，便可以叫做那個動詞的 '補足語' (complement). 因爲它就在述語本身之中，修飾本動詞，所以又可叫做動詞的'述語修飾語'. 這種通則的表現法在英文里是很豐富的，它們不僅包括主動態 (Active Voice) 的動詞，而且還含有被動態的動詞以及形容詞.

(動) Begin to.....
Continue to.....
Cease to.....
Help to.....
Seem to.....
Hope to.....
Wish to.....
Neglect to.....
Forgot to.....
Remember to.....
Intend to.....
Plan to.....
Want to.....
Care to.....
Dare to.....
Decide to.....
Determine to.....
Offer to.....
Have come to.....
Propose to.....
Prepare to.....
Hasten to.....
(被動態) Be pleased to.....
Be told to.....
Be surprised to.....
Be disappointed to.....
Be interested to.....
Be allowed to.....
Is said to.....
Is believed to.....
Is understood to.....
Is supposed to.....
Is considered to.....
Is requested to.....
Is destined to.....
Is prepared to.....

(形) Be careful to..... Be quick to understand.
Be foolish to..... Be slow to act.
Be crazy to..... Be anxious to.....
Be afraid to..... Be desirous to.....

【練習七十二】 試以口述方法將這些擴展成爲完全的句子,並試就此表中加入新的無限式短語.

(c) 在于 enough, sufficient 這一類的形容詞以及 too, enough, so 這一類的副詞,如沒有無限式短語跟隨在後面,其意義便不完全了.

He is *too* proud *to* learn. [他太驕了,不屑學習.]
He is *too* lazy *to* study. [他懶得很,所以不讀書.]
Be good *enough to* tell me. } [請你告訴我.]
Be *so* kind *as to* tell me. }
There was *enough* opium in the consignment *to* poison the whole city population of Shanghai.
This is *too* good *to* be true. [這消息過好了,恐怕不確.]
This happiness is *too* great *to* last. (參看中文: '恩愛夫妻不到頭'.)
We have *sufficient* money (或 money *sufficient*) *to* last us a week.
He was fool *enough to* tell him everything.
He is not man *enough to* confess his mistake. (參看中文: '他這人不够朋友'.)
The colours of the dress are *too* loud *to* be in accordance with good taste. (loud=顏色不文雅)
It is never *too* late *to* mend.
He came *too* late *to* see the opening of the show.
I am now old *enough to* see the truth of it.
He is old *enough to* be your father.

【練習七十三】 完成下列各句:—

The child is big enough to.....
He was not brave enough to.....
The insult was too deep to.....
The composition was too long to.....
I have not time enough to.....
People are so foolish as to.....
China is too big to.....

注意"too ～ to . . ." 是作'太～而不. . .' 解釋，這意義實在是否定的，如第一句便是'他過于驕傲，不屑學習'，第二句便是'他太懶了，不高興讀書'，第六句便是'這個（如消息）太好了，恐怕不確實'. 但如前面有否定詞 never, not 等，那末好像代數里兩個負號便變成一個正號的情形一樣，它的意思結果是肯定的，例如倒第四句是一句成語，即'補過決不致太晚'，和中文'過則勿憚改'，'亡羊補牢，未爲晚也'相當. 參看中文俗語'恩愛夫妻不到頭'，這就是說，夫妻太要好了，恐怕要遭天忌，兩個人不容易同偕到老. 至于"enough to" 意思和 "so ～ as to . . ." 相同，如第三句等于 "Be *so* good *as to* tell me"，第四句等于 "Be kind enough to tell me".

(d) 最後，還有一種**無限式**短語，是插在句子中間，修飾整個陳述句的意義的. 例如：—

To begin with [第一，首先], you started the quarrel.
To make a long story short [約略地說，閑話少說], he was arrested and put in prison.
To tell you the truth [老實說，不瞞你說], I don't want to marry her.
This, *to be sure*, is not your fault. [的的確確，這不是你的過失.]
To be perfectly frank with you [坦坦白白地講], you can be a successful barber.
Strange to say [說也奇怪], we met again at Chefoo [芝罘，即烟台].
And after the husband died, the concubine acted like the lord of the family and husband of the wife, *so to speak* [不妨這樣說].

【練習七十四】 中文獨立短語如'說也奇怪'，'老實說'，'老實對你講'，'總括一句'等所含的意義，試以英文造句以表出之.

9.32. 【分離無限式 (Split Infinitive) 及其他】 從上面的例子看來，可見**無限式**中的動詞，正如別的動詞一樣，也可以附帶修飾語和賓語. 例如：—

To tell *you the truth* (you 是間接賓語, truth 是直接賓語).
To last us *one week* (one week 是時間的副詞短語,修飾 last).

無限式可用主動態或被動態,並可用完了時制或未完時制 (perfect or imperfect tense).

主動: A house *to let.* (Owner has house to let.)
被動: A house *to be let* (House is to be let.)
} [吉屋召租]
完了: He seems *to have r ad* a great many books.
未完: He seems *to be working* all the time.

論到無限式的修飾語,如果把一個修飾語放在 to 和動詞之間,那就是平常所謂'分離無限式'.

To come *quickly*. (標準無限式)
To *quickly* come. (分離無限式)

文法學家之中有許多人是'非分離者' (non-splitters"), 他們絕對看不慣像 to quickly come 這種分離無限式的用法. 但是也有許多人,其中不乏大作家,卻存心寫出來,要叫人家知道他們用的是這條規則. 可是坦坦白白說一句,用與不用,其決定的成分還應該在于文字的意義是否顯豁,以及音律是否自然而已. 通常,如——

Tell him to *quickly* come.

這一句,這個分離無限式便破壞了句子的自然音律 (natural rhythm), 但在——

Tell him *quickly* to come.

這一句里, 也還是不好, 因爲音律不見得美, 而且意義也不顯豁 (卽是晦澀的): quickly 可以當作修飾 come, 卻也可以當作修飾 tell 的看. 唯一顯豁而自然的辦法還是說——

Tell him to come *quickly*.

又，細讀下列三個可以交相替用的句子：—

(1) He has begun to *really* understand it.
(2) He has begun *really* to understand it.
(3) He has begun to understand it *really*.

第一式最好，因爲最顯豁而最自然。第二式自然是自然了，但未免有點兒晦澀，而第三式把 really 這個詞兒放在末了，便嫌太強調了。

事實上，是所有的副詞都有它們標準的或自然的位置，所以企圖把它們移到新的位置上去，不是破壞了句子的自然音律，便是有一種把不當的強調加在副詞上的傾向。

【練習七十五】 決定下列句中的副詞（斜體）應放在何處，並敍述所以如此的理由：—

1. We need / to *further* strengthen / our position /.
2. His army seemed *completely* to / have been / destroyed /.
3. The principles will have *boldly* to / be / followed /.
4. The letter ought *carefully* to / be / written /.
5. He was able *immediately* to / perceive / the importance of the suggestion.
6. His action seemed *largely* to / have been / dictated / by selfish motives /.
7. To / stop *effectually* and *permanently* wars in China /, we must wait for another Ice Age [冰河時代], since Chinese civil wars always stop in winter.
8. Such mistakes are *absolutely* to / be / avoided /.

9.33. 【Need to, Dare to】 我們知道像 can, will, may, must, shall 這一類的詞兒（叫做助動詞）之後直接附帶省去 to 的無限式動詞，如 can go, will go, must go 等。在英文里有兩個動詞現在漸漸變成助詞，但還不曾達到其他詞兒的這種地

步. 那就是說,在問句及否定句中,它們的用法正如 must, can 等,但在肯定句中則不然:—

	Need	*Dare*	(*Can*, 等)
問 句:	Need he go?	Dare he go?	(Can he go?)
否定句:	He need not go.	He dare not go.	(He cannot go.)
肯定句:	He need*s* *to* go.	He dare*s* *to* go.	(He can go.)

在肯定句中,第三人稱單數加 -s, 並不將 to 省去. 在 Dare he go? / Need he go? 以外,還可說 Do*es* he dare *to* go? Do*es* he need *to* go? 又,在 He dare not go / He need not go 以外,還可說 He do*es* not dare *to* go / He do*es* not need *to* go.

可是,注意在下列否定句中,即使 dare not 或 need not 的成語並不直接出現,通常 to 是被省略了的:—

No one *need* know about it.
No one *dare* say a word about it.
You *need* tell no one.
Under no circumstances *dare* he betray the secret.
I *need* hardly tell you that .... (*hardly*=almost not)

Please 這個詞兒後面的 to, 有時省掉,有時則加以保留:—

Please ring the bell.	Please don't (或 do not) forget.
Please *to* ring the bell.	Please not *to* forget.

Make, bid 等詞兒,留待將來在 § 9.91 中論述.

【練習七十六】 試以口述方法將下列各句變成否定句及問句,或用 do, 或不用 do, 再三練習,直至能出口無誤爲止.

1. You dare to go alone.
2. They dare to tell me that.
3. You need to be so careful.
4. We needed to show him everything.
5. We need to come too.
6. He needs to be reminded of it.

【註】 上列各句祇爲練習而設,其實句法並不十分通順. 在肯定句中雖可用 dare to,但常時重讀,而 need to 便少用,其慣用式是 have to 而非 need to. 作肯定意義的 need 通常用于 need something, he needs a book, a pen 這一類的結構之中.

分詞短語

9.40. 【分詞短語當修飾語用】 分詞短語是英文中最普通的結構之一種,可是許多中國學生只知其名而不知其在句中的用法. 這由于他們沒有學會辨別表動作 (action) 的動詞及表狀態或情況 (state or condition) 的動詞的工夫. 這在中文'我站在那兒等着他' (I stood there, *waiting* for him) 及其變化句之中最解說得明白. 試看下面的句子,便知中文語助詞'着'的用法正和英文分詞詞尾 -ing 是同樣指明一種情況的.

我站在那兒等着他。	I stood there, *waiting* for him.
我站着等他。	I waited there *standing*.
我坐着等他。	I waited there *sitting*.

不加 -ing 的動詞是本動詞,加 -ing 的動詞 (分詞) 不過志在幫助描述一種情況而已. 因此就關係上說,分詞短語是附屬于主句 (main clause), 祇當作一個修飾語用的. 我們應該學習把描述情況的動詞安排在從屬的地位,變成分詞形式. "I *stood* and *waited*" 一句英文當然可以說,但是說 "I *stood* waiting there" 這一句,那就更好了;如果用意在于把'站着'當作一種情況描述的話,那就應該說 "I *waited* there, standing (in the rain)." 分詞短語最普通的用法乃是描述一種情狀 (manner), 原因 (cause) 或動機 (motive), 以及指明一般的關係 (general relationships).

(1) 描述情狀:—

Making three circles with his chop-sticks, he invited his guests to help themselves.

Paying no attention to what the others said, he went ahead.

Brushing everybody aside, he pushed his way into the mob and kissed the drowned girl.

Shouting at the top of his voice, he said to them....

The child returned home, *stretching* both his hands to his mamma, and *dropping* his satchel.

The old man came, *mumbling* something in an undertone.

(2) 描述原因或動機:— Think, believe, mistake, hear 等詞兒當作分詞用時,通常是描述一種'心理狀態' (state of mind) 的,所以是幫助指示或說明人事的動機的.

Knowing that the child's case was hopeless, he did not consult the doctor but the priest.

Seeing that there was no more hope, the parents sat quietly in despair.

Thinking that Chinese medicine might help, they sent for an old Chinese doctor.

Believing what the Chinese doctor said, they had high hopes again.

I left Shanghai last Monday, *intending* to spend a month in Japan (或: *intending* never to come back).

Frightened by the news, he came back.

Failing to carry out his plan, he bought a steamship ticket and sailed for Australia.

Coming from an old French stock, he had his ordinary share of pride in the mother country.

(3) 指明一般的關係:— 作爲這種用處的分詞短語,普通是放在句首,因爲這個地位可以幫助把句子的一般關係弄得更明白一些.

Coming back to our first topic, I may say ....
Speaking of Chinese art, there are many things waiting to be written about it.
Writing in the Fourteenth Edition of the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* [大英百科全書], he pointed out ....
Having made this point clear, I may go on to ....

關于這一點，可以提一提 concerning 和 regarding 這兩個分詞（作'關于'，'就'解釋），原來是屬于這一類，作這種用處的，但現在普通都當作介詞看待了。Granting, providing 以及 granted, provided〔姑作，且認；設若，倘，若果〕都當做介詞用，並無差異。

Regarding your note of the 14th, I beg to inform you that....
Concerning the plan for the new school building, it has been proposed that....
Granting (或 *Granted*) that he didn't know, he should have written to inquire about it.
I will go, *provided* (或 *providing*) you send a car.

關于現在分詞和過去分詞的不同，參看 §2.33.

【練習七十七】 (A) 用下列描述情狀，原因或動機的分詞造句：—

hearing that	desiring to
seeing that	having finished his work
mistaking the noise	determined to
wishing to	frightened by
leaving a letter	encouraged by
planning to	surprised by
advancing three steps	drenched through with rain
waving his hand	supported by
kneeling on the ground	exhausted through work
lying on his face	having been told that

(B) 試將下面有些動詞屈居從屬的地位，使它們變成敘述分詞 (descripive participles)：—

1. We *sat* and *talked* and *forgot* that the messenger had been waiting outside all the while.
2. He *disappeared* early in the morning and *left* no trace of himself.
3. He *came* home at last, and *believed* that his fiancée was still living.
4. *Correct* these sentences and *change* the vbb. if they are wrong.
5. He *sat* and *waited* there and *read* a book.
6. He *turned* to me and *asked* me a hard question.
7. He *asked* the question and *pointed* his finger at me.
8. He *was supported* by thirty young students and *rushed* on to the stage.

(C) 將下面七句譯成英文,下加橫線的字用分詞:—

1. 傭婦回來,手裏提着一籃的菜。
2. 她還是不肯再嫁,希望她的前夫一旦能够回轉念頭。
3. 他昨夜還預備功課,以爲(誤認)今天爲星期一。
4. 他坐在案前,用一枝紅鉛筆改作文。
5. 他知道(或聽見)今天我拿到薪水,又來向我借錢。
6. 他們倆一夜不睡,一直談到天亮。
7. 他答應了,說事做完就來。

9.41. 【不連結的分詞】 關于被分詞所修飾的那詞兒(名詞或代名詞),應該大大地注意。 導引分詞短語的那個分詞,應該修飾主句中的主語,因爲分詞短語是隸屬于它的。 例如,在:

Having finished my lesson, I went home.

一句中,分詞短語 having finished 是修飾主句中的主語 I 的。可是很容易把它和它在邏輯上所不能修飾的一個主語連結起來。 有人往往很容易說出——

Having finished my lesson, the **teacher** let me go home first.

這麼一句來。 這是不對的，因爲讀完功課的不是教師呀。 所以應該說：

Having finished my lesson, I was allowed by the teacher to go home first.

【練習七十八】 細讀下列各句，看看分詞何以連結得不對。 如果覺得分詞結構不容易造得正確的時候，不妨用別的方式，如 "As I have finished my lesson," 或 "When he was three years old."

1. *Being* three years old, his *father* died.
2. Not *knowing* the strange town, the *guide* showed me the different places worth visiting.
3. *Having punished* them enough already, cannot the *prisoners* be set free now?
4. *Being desirous* to settle the accounts, will *you* please send me the amount due by return post?
5. *Being* a movie fan [電影迷], *Colman* and *Barrymore* are his favourites.
6. *Being* a despotic ruler, the *people* disliked him.

9.42. 【獨立分詞短語】 上面我們已經講過，分詞短語老是以修飾主句中主語的一個分詞起首的。 因此它是附屬于主句的。 但是還有一種分詞短語，它本身卻含有一個主語，如下：

He *being* a despotic ruler, the people disliked him.
Mr. Watson *being* too weak to attend the meeting, I went in his stead.

這樣的結構叫做'獨立分詞短語' (**absolute participial phrase**)，其取義是這分詞並非直接和主句中的主語連結，雖則這短語本身仍然是附屬于主句的。 其他例如——

Weather *permitting*, we shall go for a picnic on Monday.
God *willing*, I shall take care of your mother till the end of her days.
All things *considered*, he was the best boy in class.

There were a hundred seventy-two of them, **all** *told*.
There were a hundred seventy-two of them, **the** spoilt **ones** *excepted*.
You had better all go back, **Pan** *taking* up his old work and **you** *continuing* yours.
I paid for my friend, **he** *happening* to be out of pocket.
Then we went over the top, **the captain** *leading* the attack himself.
The **accused** *being* under sixteen years of age, we should not send him to prison, but to the reformatory.
There *being* no **evidence** against him, and **he** *denying* the charge, we could do nothing.
Your last **check** *being dishonoured* by the bank, I shall have to ask you for another one.
I should not advise you to go to Hangchow now, **this** *being* the rainy season of the year.

注意在這些例句中，大半是可以用別的較長的表現法代替，如 "if weather permits", "if you take everything into consideration."

但有一點要注意，就是在表明一般關係的分詞（參看上節第3項）的情形之中，分詞短語其實是修飾整句的一般意向，非祇主句的主語而已。所以下列各例是正確的：—

(*Talking* of the football match), who won?
(*Granting* that B—— College was defeated), were their men to blame?
(*Granting* his honesty), he may be mistaken in his enthusiasm.
(*Allowing* for minor deficiencies), the play was on the whole a success.
(*Coming* to the question of the proper marrying age), did not my father marry at twenty-nine?
There are thirteen left, (not *counting* the spoilt ones).

在上面所有的例句之中，可見分詞短語是把主要的陳述句當作整個兒來加以修飾的。

介 詞 短 語

9.50. 【介詞短語】 在英文所有各種短語之中，介詞短語是最最常用的。 只要舉一些例子，便足以表明最常見的短語大多數是屬于這一類的。

at first	*at* the meeting	*by* chance (偶然)
at last	*at* Shanghai	*by* luck (碰巧)
at least	*at* great cost	*on* purpose (故意)
at once	*at* me, you, him, etc.	*after* all (到底)
at the same time	*with* me, him, it, etc.	*in* case (倘若)
at the beginning	*by* her, him, it, etc.	*by* turn (輪流)
at the end	*through* us, you, them, etc.	*in* fact (其實)
at this price	*for* her, you, me, etc.	*in* time (及時)
at this time	(cook) *by* gas, electricity, etc.	*for* example (例如)
at this place	(go) *by* train, boat, etc.	*above* all (首先)

即就 in, at, on, for, to, down, up, before, after, by, through, with, without, against 一類介詞都在英文最普通的詞兒之列，而且每逢用到一個介詞，便形成一個介詞短語（參看 §2.11 中第 6 項）這件事實看來，這一層道理也就很容易明白了。 除去上面所舉介詞以外，下面這些極其普通的複合介詞，我們也不可忽略過去：—

as to, as for 至于，關于	by means of 以，依，因
on account of 因，爲	by way of 以爲，作爲
instead of 代替	for fear of 因恐
in spite of 不顧，不管	with (in) reference to 關于
in place of 代替，代理	with (in) regard to 關于
in view o 由～觀之，爲～之故	in accordance with 依照，根據，按照
in case of 萬一，如，若	on behalf of 爲（某），代（某）
in connexion with 關于	

關于介詞用法的其他例子，參看 §2.18 練習五。

【練習七十九】 試以上面所舉介詞及介詞短語造句。

9.51. 【介詞使文句簡潔】 試將下面幾句比較一下:—

(a) He died *of malaria* [死于瘧疾].
He died *because he had malaria.*

(b) He was convicted *of murder* [以殺人罪定讞].
He was convicted *as a man who had committed murder.*

可以立卽看出,用介詞時最大的便宜乃是造句可以短些,所以也就整潔一些.

【練習八十】 下列各句中用斜體字排的子句,試代以介詞短語,而使句子變短. 括號內所提供的介詞之後,用名詞或用加 -ing 的動詞均可.

1. There was a row [rau] (騷擾) *when they were holding the meeting.* (**at, during**)
2. The student was punished *because he came late.* (**for**)
3. He could not climb the mountain *because he had heart trouble.* (**on account of**)
4. Some work *in order to be wealthy* and some *in order to become famous.* (**for**)
5. The big Swedish concern collapsed *when Krueger died.* (**at**)
6. He went all the same, *although I advised him not to.* (**in spite of**)
7. He went away *and did not say a word.* (**without**)
8. He returned home, *taking a train.* (**by**)
9. I could not come *because I was ill.* (**on account of**)
10. *As Reuter* ['rɔitə] (路透社) *has reported,* the Japanese have seized the customs revenue at Dairen [大連]. (**according to**)

9.52. 【句末的介詞】 在別于迂腐寫作的通馴口語的英文里,介詞往往丟在句子或子句的末了. "He is the man you are looking *for*" 比較 "He is the man *for whom* you are looking" 來得通馴些. 這是因爲在英文里,介詞跟它們前面的動詞或形容詞形成含義非常確定的確定成語, 如 look for. 無論許多文法學家說的是什麽,要作成一種眞正自然而通馴的英文

筆調，總非常時容許介詞居于句子或子句的末了不可。下列這些極其普通而通馴的例子，儘夠說明英文的這種趨向了。

What are you doing that *for*?
What are you looking *at*?
That will give you something to think *about*.
You can never tell what this will lead *to*.
Do you think he is a man you can depend *on*?
People in famine districts will eat anything they can lay their hands *on*. (此處如果用 "Anything *on which* they can lay their hands" 未免太迂腐了).
That depends on what they are cut *with*. (非 "That depends on *with what* they are cut")
The Government did something you would never dream *of*.
Do you know who you are speaking *to*? (如果說 "Do you know *to whom* you are speaking" 可就失去了這句問話的力量了.)

注意，在上列各句中，爲要避免把介詞丟在句末，那就必須用 for whom, with which, about which 一類的成語，而這些結構老是笨拙而迂曲的。

9.53. 【But, Than】 "But"〔除去，舍～之外〕和 "than"〔比，較之〕這兩個詞兒，即使名作家，有時也把它們當作介詞用，後面附以賓位的代名詞，如下：—

All *but me* had fled.
No one wishes it more *than us*.

卻說這兩個詞兒都可以當作連詞用，所以用 but I, than we 也行。通例，在 but 和 than 可作介詞和主位代名詞用在一起的地方，平常是應該避免用賓位的。在現代英語里，than 作介詞後附賓位代名詞，只有在 than whom〔除他（那人）以外〕一成語里，才是絕對正確的慣用法，如：

The occasion called for a man of great wisdom and courage like Mr. R——, *than whom* no one could suggest a better candidate for the presidency.

Than 作連詞用時,可依照情形而用主位或賓位代名詞. 在 "They treated him worse *than her*" 一句中,意思是 "worse than they treated her" 在另一方面, "They treated him worse *than* she" 的意思便是 "worse than she treated him"

9.54. 【英文介詞的幾種特別用法】 有些介詞有幾種特別用法,可在此處加以注意. 在那一種地方用那一個介詞,這完全取決于習慣和慣用法,而且同一個意義,在各種語文里往往用各不相同的介詞來表達 (參看 §6.61). 下列英文介詞的幾種特別用法值得我們注意:—

With, 用于敍述的短語.

He came home a disappointed man, *with* his business ruined, his money gone, his health broken and his self-confidence visibly shaken.

With one of his legs gone, he was still able to go about visiting his friends.

I saw a woman walking in the street, *with* a baby in her breast and another child holding her hand.

With (或 for) + *all*, 意卽 "in spite of" 〔雖有,不管多麼~〕.

With all his experience and technical training, he could not build that bridge alone.

For all his thrift and care in spending money, he still remains a poor man.

For all his charity, Rockefeller [(美國) 煤油大王] took more from others than he has ever given back to the world.

Mr. F—— may be the owner of this property, *for all* I know (此處意義稍有出入,="as far as I know").

Under, 指一種未完的程序.

The bridge *under* construction; the question *under* consideration; the patient *under* treatment; the project *under* consideration.

To, 表明個人心理上所受的影響.

To my great surprise, he turned up at the last moment.
He failed to turn up, *to* our great disappointment.
We found, *to* our great delight, that the news wasn't true.

In, 描述患處或缺點.

He was blind *in* the eye; injured *in* the knee.
Chang is weak *in* algebra.

On, 意卽 "immediately after" 〔～之後立卽〕, 或 "as the result of" 〔一～(聽)之下〕.

On arriving at the scene, I found....
On examination, I found....
On second thought, I decided to change the subject.
On hearing the news, I went to see the manager.

On, 暗示一種暫時狀態.

On the move; *on* fire; *on* strike; *on* leave; *on* his best behaviour; *on* good terms with.

Through, 意卽 "by" 〔由于,因〕, 但暗示努力的結果.

He obtained the job *through* my influence (help).
It was *through* (=because of) you that we failed.
That was all done *through* (=because of) jealousy (ignorance, carelessness, etc.).

【練習八十一】 用上例各介詞造句,以示其用法.

關係子句

9.60. 【關係子句】 關係子句並不存在于中文里，但在英文及其同系的語文里，卻是最獨特的結構之一種. 關係子句乃是以關係代名詞或關係副詞導引的一個子句. 關係代名詞或副詞的本質就是，它既在子句中盡了它通常的文法作用，同時又充當連詞，把這個子句和前面的詞兒——卽所謂'先行詞'的——連結起來.

The man (*who* came here this morning) was my school friend.

在 who 至 morning 這個關係子句里，關係代名詞 who 當作一個尋常代名詞的主語使用，但它又充當介詞，把這個子句和它的先行詞 man 連結起來. 又如在——

We came to the room (*where* the emperor used to study and talk with the great scholars)

一句里，在 where 至 scholars 這個子句里，關係副詞當作一個副詞用，同時又充當介詞，把這子句和先行詞 room 連結起來.

關係代名詞是 who (whom, whose), which, that, as (前附 such, the same, 或 as) 以及 but (前附 no one 等).

關係副詞是 when, where 和 why.

這些詞兒的用法，將在以下各節中加以研究.

9.61. 【"That" 作闡明的關係代名詞用】 我們在 §4.61 里已經說過，who, which 和 that 這三個關係代名詞之中，who 用于人，which 用于事物，that 兩者都可用. 可是，在慣用法上，that 和 which 之間有一種分別，卽 that 是'闡明的' (de-

fining) 而 which 是 '評論的' (commentative). 這一種分別是不容易常常留意到，而且我們常常是不留意的。但是要注意，這種區別，除了使句子的意義更加明顯以外，還常時保證用熟語可以用得正確。

(A) This is the house *that* Jack built.
(B) Jack built this house, *which* was used for keeping malt.

在 "A" 句里，這關係子句是闡明或限定先行詞 house 的意義的。如果不把 "that Jack built" 這個子句加上去的話，那末主句 "This is the house" 的意義便沒有闡明得出。但在 "B" 句里，主句 "Jack built this house" 在意義上是十分完全的，而加上 which 至 malt 這個關係子句並不怎樣限定它的意義，只不過附加一種評論而已。所以 "A" 句里 that 的作用是一種 '闡明的' 或 '指明的' (demonstrative) 或 '決定的' (determinative) 作用，指出那一個 (which one)，而 "B" 句里 which 的作用是 '非闡明的' (non-defining) 或 '評論的'，而且往往是純粹敍述的 (descriptive). 此外如：

(A) This is the rat *that* ate the malt *that* lay in the house *that* Jack built.
The doctor examines the rat *that* carries the flea *that* harbours the germ *that* infects the poor Indian.
She was the first Chinese woman *that* (*who*) ever took a doctor's degree at Harvard [(美國) 哈佛大學].
The man *that* you saw this morning is my uncle.
It is something *that* can't be done in a few days.

(B) He is preaching Confucianism [孔道], *which* is steadily losing its influence today.
The system of parliamentary government, *which* sounds so well on paper, has failed in China.
Even if you could get the money, *which* isn't as easy as you think, you still would have to find the man to do it.

So we were forced to stop at the little village, *which* was against our original plan.

More and more people are beginning to learn English, *which* is becoming very popular in China.

He asked me to explain to him the art of writing poetry, *which* cannot be taught.

許多英文作家把 which 也用于闡明的意味 ("A" 組)，但是把 that 用于評論的意味 ("B" 組)，那可斷然是錯誤的。注意在 "B" 組，關係子句大可省去，而于句子無多大影響，然而在 "A" 組，關係子句一省略了去，便使得句子毫無意義了。

That 和 who 的區別更不容易留意到，who 又作闡明的詞兒又作評論的詞兒用，而 that 卻仍然祇用于闡明而已。

The man *who* came this morning (闡明) was my school friend.

I met Mr. B——, *who* seemed to be a very decent fellow (評論).

此處第一句的 who 可用 that，但第二句則不可。

That 作關係代名詞用時老是輕讀 [ðət]，不可讀 [ðæt] (這是作指示代名詞及形容詞時的讀法)，而 who 和 which 通常是重讀的。

9.62. 【"Which" 作評論的關係代名詞用】 這種用法在上面已經解說過了。因此 "which" 是在各種事物上加以評論，批評，或個人的判斷時用的。所以我們通曉了這種結構，便成爲個人文章作風的種種訣竅之一了。比方像蕭伯納 (Bernard Shaw) 這樣的作家，他滿肚皮是他私人的見解，有種種不同的評論要發表，所以用得着這種評論的短語或子句的地方很多，反之，一個人如果通常沒有許多評語可說，他就不需要它們，結果他的句子多少總覺得平淡無奇。茲再示舉一些用 which 引導的夾注式的批評或評論。

The protection of life and property, *which* is all the democracy the Chinese people need, or *which* is the only sort of democracy the people care for, etc.

The League of Nations [國聯], *which* is a great organization for the development of oratory, etc.

Wang is honest, *which* is more than you can say of most officials.

The Japanese have violated the integrity of the Chinese Maritime Customs [中國海關], *which* is the only support for Chinese credit at home and abroad.

His wife wasn't beautiful, *which* was a sin he could not forgive.

He entered Yenching [燕京(大學)] last autumn, *which* is probably the best university in China.

【練習八十二】 (A) 細讀下列子句，看看可以造什麼句子，以便將它們併合造去.

which isn't true
which isn't quite exact
which is a fact
which is a pure waste of time
which is a palpably false statement (a lie)
which is all you want
which was more than she had expected
which was an accomplishment of great merit
which might terrify less courageous people
which is all nonsense
which does more harm than good
which is something that cannot be taught
which cannot be learnt from books
which is a question of opinion (i.e., not of fact)
which is very questionable
which is the desire of her parents

(B) 將上列各例連同所造各句一併翻成中文，試看此種夾注式的評論必須放在各別的句子中者共有若干. 此種句子之譯文可與 § 9.61 that 子句比較.

9.63. 【修飾陳述句的"Which"】 在這兩個例句里——

Yenching, *which* is probably the best university in China, etc.,

His wife wasn't beautiful, *which* was a sin he could not forgive,

第一句的 which 有名詞 Yenching 作爲它的正當的先行詞，但是在第二句里，which 的先行詞卻不是形容詞 beautiful 而是

"She wasn't beautiful" 這整個的陳述句，因爲她丈夫所不能寬恕的便是'她不美麗'的這個事實。我們姑且再舉一例：—

If she pulls through [挨過] the third week, *which* is quite probable, she will be out of danger.

所謂"probable"〔可能的，可有的〕不是 week，而是她也許挨得過第三星期這個事實。

9.64. 【**In Which, from Which 等**】 Which 和 who 的結構，使用時是最容易弄錯了的。應該時刻牢記在心頭的一件事，乃是每個關係子句本身必須有一種完整的結構，可以變成一個獨立的句子。例如 which is quite probable 這子句便很容易變成 This is quite probable 一個完整的句子。但如——

We came to the room *which* the emperor used to work

這樣的句子便不對了，因爲不可說 The emperor used to work the room，而必須說 work *in* the room. 因此這一句應該表示如下：

We came to the room *in which* the emperor used to work.

下面是些正確的例句：—

I got a letter yesterday from my sister, *from whom* I had not heard for a long time. (I had not heard *from* her.)

We must work for our country, *which* we all love and *in which* we all believe. (We believe *in* our country.)

He ate a lot of indigestible food immediately after his recovery from typhoid, *than which* there could be nothing more dangerous.

At New York, he met the great composer, *with whom* he had been on most intimate terms years ago when they were studyiug together in Germany.

We met Mr. Wilkinson, the great novelist, *of whom* I had heard such a great deal.

【練習八十三】 將下列一對對的句子連結起來:—

1. I brought the girl to see the lawyer. To this lawyer, the father had entrusted the care of his daughter.
2. I brought the girl to see Mr. Yang. Through Mr. Yang, she obtained a new position.
3. Then we talked about communism in China. As to this (topic), there was a great diversity of opinion.
4. Then we changed over to the abolition of extra-territoriality in China. A great deal has been written about this (topic).
5. Finally we discussed the question of constitutional government. Against this, Mr. Chung expressed the most emphatic opinions.

9.65. 【**Which ~ It, Which ~ Them 等**】 另外還有一種困難,是由于作者忘記了 which 在關係子句內還是主語還是賓語。 茲列舉一些普通的錯誤,並附以正當的修正文:—

1. We began to play billiard, *which* my friend had not played *it* for a long time. (It 應該省去, 因爲在這子句里 which 已經是 play 的賓語了.)
2. The young bride was confronted with a series of new problems, *which* no one had told her about *them*. (Them 應省去: which 已經是 about 的賓語了.)
3. They showed the two men a letter, *which*, when we had studied carefully, seemed to be written by a woman. (改用 "when we had studied *it* carefully", 因爲 which 是當作 seemed 的主語用的.)
4. I gave him a picture, *which*, upon looking at, he recognized *it* to be that of his dead brother. (改用 "upon looking at *it*", 因爲 which 是作 recognized 的賓語用: recognized 之後的 it 删去, 因爲 which 已經是子句中動詞的賓語了.)

9.66. 【**That ~ to, That ~ for 等**】 That 有一種特性,便是它前面不像 which (*in* which, *for* which) 那樣可以用介詞的。 所以這種介詞一律放在關係子句的末了。

The people *that* you meet *with* are not always the people you wish to meet. (meet with 表明一種偶然的或無意的會晤; to meet a person 表明一種有意的會晤, 如 to meet him at the station.)

There is no sense in continuing a friendship *that* one no longer cares *for*.

I began to realize the financial situation *that* he had come *to*.

The subject *that* every one was talking *about*; the piano that had not yet been paid *for*; the debt *that* he is *in*; the person *that* he had referred *to*; the opportunity *that* he had prayed *for*; the missing letter *that* he had been worrying *about*, etc.

9.67. 【代替 "in Which", "for Which" 等用的 "That"】指時間,地方,方法,理由,情狀等時, that 可以當作關係副詞代替 in which, for which 等用.

The reason *that* I came is, etc. (比較 *for which* I came 好些.)

I don't like the way *that* he looks at me. (*That* 可省參看下節. 此處 *that*=*in which*.)

You cannot treat King George with the same familiarity *that* (*with which*) you treat your younger brother.

We are in the same position *that* (*in which*) he was a year ago.

What we see is not communism in the sense *that* (*in which*) Russia is communis

The last time *that* I saw him, he was ill in bed.

9.68. 【省去 "That" 的用法】 在通馴的英文里,無論說話或寫作方面,關係代名詞 that 如果在關係子句里是賓語的話,往往是省掉了的.

The books (*that*) I like.
The people (*that*) I know.
The poems he writes.
The things he spoke about.
The book you mentioned
The song everybody is singing.
The child you love.
The woman he married.
The flowers she picked yesterday.
The man he promoted.
The business he started.
The car he owned.
The cigar I like.
The money he left behind him.
The class I belong to.

英文里有一種縮短一切短語修飾語的普遍趨向（參看 §9.82），即如在上面這些結構之中把 that 省去，便和這種趨向是一致的。

9.691. 【"As" 當關係代名詞用】 除了尋常的關係代名詞 who, which 和 that 以外，還有兩個詞兒往往也有這同等的資格：as 和 but. 這兩個詞兒都可充當關係子句的主語，而同時又當介詞，把這子句和一個先行詞連接起來。這兩個詞兒的特點便是通常和某些別的先行的詞兒是並行的。As 通常用於 **such ～ as, that same ～ as, as ～ as** 等短語之中。

Such customers *as* drifted our way were generally strangers from the passing ships. (drifted 的主語)

There was *such* a confusion *as* might be caused by a theatre panic. (主語)

She did not turn out to be *such* a good travelling companion *as* we had expected. (賓語)

As many men *as* applied were admitted. (主語)

As many men *as* we found were taken up into the ship. (賓語)

We took in *as* many men *as* could be accommodated in the small ship. (主語)

He came by *the same* route *as* had been followed by his predecessors. (主語)

A revolution broke out, *such as* no one had seen before. (賓語)

單獨一個 as 的用法也是十分普通的.——

The play, *as* is well known, is based on a famous novel.

The ex-convict committed crimes again, *as* is usual (或: *as* is to be expected), and was arrested again.

As is often the case; *as* often happens; *as* might be expected (*As* often happens, when the patient is of the nervous type, etc.)

Many nasty things were said about him, *as* have been said about other people.

【註】 關于上列這些結構之是否合法，有些文法學家已經加以懷疑，他們堅持非加入別的詞兒作爲主語不可，如 "as *it* is well known" 或 "as *nasty things*

have been said about other people". 但是，把這個特殊成語以及英文中關于修飾的子句的普遍趨向仔細觀察一下，便不能擔保這種意見是正當的了. 像 "as is well known", "as is often the case" 這一類的結構實在太普通，而且得到慣用法的擁護，所以不容易把它們摒斥于寫作範圍之外: 加之 "as is well known" 中 it 的省略用法，和縮短修飾子句的這種英文特有的趨向是完全一致的 (參看 §9.82).

9.692. 【"But" 當關係代名詞用】 But 當關係代名詞用時，前面老是附加一個否定的先行詞，通常用 no one, 即〔無～(而)不〕之意. 這種場合的 but="who ～ not", "which ～ not", "that ～ not".

There is *no* one *but* knows (=no one who does not know=every one knows) about this affair. [這事人人皆知.]

Hardly a man came to the exhibition *but* was surprised by the originality and boldness of his conceptions.

Not a new man entered politics *but* was soon converted into an official of the old type.

There is *no* habit so old *but* may be cured by a strong will.

9.70. 【關係副詞 "When", "Where", "Why"】 正如關係代名詞是連詞性的代名詞一樣，關係副詞也就是連詞性的副詞，即它在關係子句中作副詞用，同時又把這子句和一個先行詞接合起來. 除了這一種分別以外，這關係子句的結構本身和上面幾節所講的是完全相似的.

關係代名詞: We saw the **man** *who* was a town broker.
關係副詞: We saw the **place** *where* the broker died.

第二句的 where 當作副詞，修飾 died.

The place where 〔其地〕:—

We had reached a stage *where* it was impossible to go any further.

Business had come to a point *where* increased sales did not mean increase.

(先行詞和關係副詞合併):—

I am *where* I should be.
Send him *where* he will be taken care of.

The time when 〔其時〕:—

He deserted her at the time *when* she most needed and deserved his sympathy.
That was the morning *when* we had so many guests in the house.

(先行詞和關係副詞合併):—

He deserted her *when* she most needed, etc.
Leave *when* you like.

The reason why 〔其所以～,其故〕:—

The reason *why* I came is this.
Let us inquire into the reason *why* he left in such a hurry.

(先行詞和關係副詞合併):—

I can't understand *why* he left.
Let us inquire *why* he left in such a hurry.

注意, the manner (或 way) how 實際上是決不會用的,只用 how, 或者只用 the way, 或 the manner (way) in which:—

The way (in which) he talked to his inferiors was ridiculous, but *the way (in which)* he talked to his superiors was disgusting.

Wherein, whereof 和 **wherefore** (=*in which, of which, for which reason*) 〔其中,就之,是故〕除了迂腐的文章,詩歌以及公文程式之中,普通現在是不用了,只有 wherefore 在 the whys and wherefores 〔緣由〕一成語中作名詞用. **Whereby** (=*by which*) 比較常用一點.

We must think of a means *whereby* Manchuria may be recovered by China.

Whenever〔任何地，隨地〕和 wherever〔任何時，隨時〕在結構上和 when, where 正是一樣的用法。

Leave *whenever* you like.
Go *wherever* you like.

9.71. 【"When Called", "When Resting"】 用 when, while 導引的關係子句往往把它的主語和有限式動詞省去：—

When (you are) *in doubt*, ask for "Capstan." [絞盤牌，俗稱'白錫包'，香烟名].
You must come *when* (you are) *called*.
While (he was) *talking* with Mr. Elliston, he was interrupted by a loud noise upstairs.
Listen to good music *whenever* (it is) *possible*.
You don't want to marry *while* (you are) *studying*.
When gambling, think of your mother, and *when drinking*, think of your wife.
When invited to a stranger's party, do not talk too much.
You cannot carry on a serious conversation *while playing* mah-jong [麻雀牌，'馬將' 譯音].
You can carry on a most entertaining chat *while* (you are) *on* the opium couch.

與此類似的結構有用介詞 if 的，如 if any, if possible, if desired, if required (=if there is any, if it is possible, if it is desired, if it is required), 可以作爲比較。

短語和子句修飾語的復習

9.80. 【短語修飾語和子句修飾語的總括】 上面的 §9.30 至 §9.71 包括英文中各種最重要的短語和子句。 就是：無限式短語，分詞短語，介詞短語，以及關係子句。

無限式短語可以修飾名詞 (a *lesson* to learn), 形容詞 (too *proud* to learn), 副詞 (too *quickly* to be seen), 或整個的陳述句 (To tell you the truth, *I wasn't there*). 又可以當做補足語, 以補足有限式動詞的意義 (*began* to see).

分詞短語老是修飾關係子句的主語的 (*I* came, acting as his representative). 獨立分詞短語中有一個主語是被這分詞所修飾, 而這整個短語是當做修飾主句用的 (*He* being too weak to go, *I went in his stead*).

介詞短語可以修飾名詞 (the *book* on the table), 或動詞 (He *came* from America / On coming back, I *found*, etc.).

關係子句可以用關係代名詞 (who, which, that) 或關係副詞 (where, when) 導引. 關係代名詞或副詞常常指一個先行詞而言. 這先行詞多半是名詞 (the *man* who came), 但有時也可以是一整個的陳述句 (*He says that I didn't care*, which is untrue).

9.81. 【修飾語在名詞之後的位置】 上面這種種短語修飾語和子句修飾語之用法的一種結果, 便是在英文里, 修飾的短語或子句往往是在它們所修飾的詞兒之後. 除了分詞短語也可以在它所修飾的詞兒之前, 其餘所有這些結構老是在被修飾的詞兒之後.

無限式短語: A **book** *to read.*
分詞短語: A **book** *selling for a dollar a copy.*
關係子句: The **book** *that I like.*
介詞短語: The **book** *on the top shelf.*

因爲中文修飾語和被修飾語的關係全靠'詞序'來表明，所以這種在名詞之後的位置在中文里是不可能的．在英文里我們可以說 the modified word 或 the word modified，但在中文里卻只可說'修飾語'，而'語修飾'便不通了．因此在這一點上中文不及英文的柔韌，而這種英文的修飾語翻成中文時，往往是笨拙而累贅不堪．〔不過就翻譯講，這有時也是譯筆的流暢和巧妙的問題．如果硬照英文的結構翻成中文的話，詞兒譯詞兒，短語譯短語，子句譯子句，那往往不是譯成很長很長的（甚至三五十個字的）句子，主語，賓語，以及修飾語在那里，教人尋起來如在大海里撈針，便是修飾語之中起碼有三五個'的'字．其實在中文里，往往兩個或兩個以上的句子在一起，就句子的形式看來，好像都是獨立句，其實在句法及意義上除了一個主句以外，其他都是副句的性質，所以在這種地方，應該酌量情形，不妨詞兒變短語，短語變詞兒，或短語變子句，子句變短語，或者將一句譯成幾句，或幾句譯成一句（引用一句時髦話，就是'化整爲零'，'化零爲整'），只要使得意義顯豁，只要句法嚴緊，讀起來便不至佶倔聱牙了．——譯者註〕

【練習八十四】 試翻譯下列各句，注意中文譯文中之詞序：—

1. This is the dog that worried the cat that killed the rat that ate the malt that lay in the house that Jack built.
2. It is untrue that I had borrowed three hundred dollars from him at five percent interest and that I had agreed to pay it back in a year.
3. It is for this reason that Japan has become a strong country.
4. I bought up the house on the corner of Kiukiang and Fukien Roads, but the house on Szechuen Road was rented.
5. I sent a letter to Mr. Jen-sen Yang, (of) No. 33, (on) Tatung Road, (in) Chungking, (in) Szechuen.
6. I found an old manuscript on the top shelf of a cabinet behind the door in the front room of the third floor.

7. Omit the second word, line 3, paragraph 4, of Lesson 37.
8. He is the third son by the second wife of Erh-lao-yeh [二老爺] of Chang family.
9. This was the first book published by the MacMillan Company.

[1, 2 兩句不妨這樣意譯: (1) 雅克所造的屋子裏有麥芽,給老鼠吃了,老鼠給貓咬死,貓又給狗弄死,這便是弄死了貓的那隻狗; (2) 有人說我向他借了三百塊錢,利息五分,並且答應一年後還他,這事是莫須有的.——譯者]

9.82. 【短語和子句的修飾語之經濟】 修飾的短語或子句是縮得越短越好,這種普遍的趨向我們已經知道了. 在某些結構里,有些詞兒往往是省掉的 (省略法: ellipsis). 最明顯的例子如:—

The man (that) I killed. (§9.38)
I found the handkerchief (that) you lost the other day.
Don't talk while (you are) working. (§9.71)
Send it to me, when (it is) finished.
Give it to me when (it is) ready.
He dropped in on Monday evening, as (it) was usual, *or* as (it was) usual. (§9.691)
The reason that (=for which) I came is this. (§9.67) *Or*, the reason (that) I came, etc.

又,注意類如 *all told* (=if you tell, or count, all), *everything considered* (=when you consider everything), *weather permitting* (=if weather permits) 這種極短的結構,參看 §9.42.

在修飾的短語和子句之中,這種表現法的經濟是很自然的,因爲它們在邏輯上是不如主句那樣重要的.

英文因爲有這種表現法的經濟,所以才達到了比別國文字 (比方說,德文) 更樸實更流暢的地步.

9.83. 【名詞短語】 這種經濟的法則又產生出另外一類的短語，跟 §9.42 中所舉的獨立短語很相似的。

(a) He was carried into the house, *head first* (=with his head first) [頭先進去].

(b) I can win it *hands down* (=without trouble) [易如反掌].

(c) We walked together, *arm in arm* [臂挽臂, (攜手)].

(d) He was carried into the hospital, *his face a mass of bleeding flesh* [血流滿面].

(e) The nurse entered the room, *pencil in hand* [手裏拿着鉛筆], to take down the patient's name and address.

(f) *Bit by bit* [一點點地, 漸漸], the patient recovered.

上面每一句里，都有一個敘述的短語，先以一個名詞來導引，後面再跟一個修飾這名詞的詞兒或短語。

獨立分詞短語不妨當作一種特別的名詞短語看。其所以不同于其他的名詞短語者，只在于它後面有一個分詞而已（如 weather *permitting*, everything *considered*）.

9.84. 【短語的接合】 一句里每每有幾個關係子句或幾個分詞短語碰在一起，于是形成 "which ～ and which" 或 "—ing ～ and —ing" 的結構。有時候不用 and 而用 but. 這是一種非常有用的結構，而且十分簡單，只要寫文章的人遵守這個方式便行。

(a) *Having finished* his official business
and wishing to take a little rest,
the king returned to the country.

(b) To be a millionaire is an ambition,
which many people cherish,
but which few people can fulfil.

這有一種很大的危險，便是學生們在全然不需要 and 時而用 and which 或 and —ing. 下例指明一種非常普通的錯誤：—

We had a most enjoyable picnic party *and* not *returning* till sunset.

此處這 and 完全是用不着的.

【練習八十五】 試矯正下列各句中之紊亂的文法結構：—

1. We were shown the great pearl *which* formerly belonged to the Empress Dowager *and looking* as big as a green pea. (Empress Dowager 本作'皇太后'解，但通常特指清朝的'慈禧太后')
2. We were shown the big pearl *which looking* as big as a green pea.
3. The pearl had been given by the Empress Dowager to Li Lien-ying [李蓮英 (前清太監)], *and who* was her court favourite.
4. A curio merchant found it sewn onto a silk gown, stolen by a family servant, *and which* was sold to a pawn-shop [當鋪].
5. A Japanese soldier entered the curio shop one day, saw the big pearl, took the gown away *and* not *paying* for it.

補足語當修飾語用

9.90. 【述語補足語】 述語或者只含有一個有限動詞，或者單是一個有限動詞還不夠，必須加上別的什麼詞兒，它的意義方才完全. 例如 "I killed him" 一句中賓語 him 也當作動詞 killed 的一種補足語看待. 在 §9.31 "b" 項里，我們也已經學過 began to see 這一形式，即無限式 to see 也當作使 began 意義完全的一種補足語用. 但，另外還有些其他形式的補足語，或修飾主語，或修飾賓語.

修飾主語的：

(a) He was elected *president*.
(b) He grew *pale*.

修飾賓語的：

(c) We made him *president.*
(d) I found him *sitting alone.*
(e) I made him *go.*

在 (a) 句和 (c) 句中是名詞充當修飾語的，在 (b) 句和 (d) 句中是別的詞兒——形容詞，分詞等——充當修飾語的。(e) 例待下節另行論述。

【練習八十六】 細讀下列各句，試看斜體字之詞兒或短語所修飾者抑係主語，抑係述語.

1. His younger brother turned *communist.*
2. He became *president* (或 *the president*) of the company.
3. We called him a *fool.*
4. We considered him the ablest *man* of the group.
5. The work is considered *perfect* (或 *finished*).
6. I found him *naked* and half *crazy.*
7. I found the child *in a ditch* and *unable* to get out of it.
8. It is thought *best* to let him alone.
9. His wife described him *like* a fool.
10. I found her *waiting* alone in the room.
11. This made me *furious.*
12. This turned him *crazy.*
13. Boil the egg *soft.*
14. He was made *King* of Iran.
15. He played the *fool.*
16. He got *well.*
17. Make it *nice* and *dainty.*
18. Hang it *high* in the air.
19. I found the money *gone.*
20. The girl looks very *pretty.*

9.91. 【"I Made Him Go"】 這個要特別加以注意。此處是敘述賓語的動作，其形式如下：一

(a) 從賓語的觀點看來，動作或者是被動的，如：

Have the shoes *repaired*
Have the letter *mailed.*
Have the linen *sent* out to be washed.
Have a doctor *sent* for.

I want to see the building *finished*.
I would rather see you *damned* first. [滾蛋] (一種不客氣的拒絕方式).
Keep the money *locked* in the safe [保險箱].

這些都暗示或明指對于賓語所有作爲的. 因此用過去分詞.

(b) 從賓語的觀點看來,動作或者是主動的,這時候表明這個動作的動詞是用無限式. 在 **make, let, see** 和 **hear** 等動詞之後,這個無限式的 to 照例是省掉的;在 **help** 和 **bid** 之後,有時省去,有時保留; 至于在其他類如 **ask, allow, want, command, urge, request** 等詞兒之後,則老是表出的.

(I) I made him *go*.
I saw him *go* up the stairs.
I heard him *say* (非 *said*) that Mr. Liu was ill.
Why not let him *go*?
Let me *pass*.
Make him *wait* outside (*pay* for it).

(II) Help him *finish* (或 *to finish*) the job.
This will help *pay* (或 *to pay*) the week's rent.
Won't you let me help you *do* it? (比較用 than *to do* it 好些.)
Bid him *go* (或 *to go*) away.

(III) Allow him *to finish* his supper.
I am not allowed *to* (do anything).
I could not ask him *to do* it.
Order some food *to be brought* to my room.

(c) 在 "I saw him *go* up the stairs" 〔我看見他上樓去了〕和 "I saw him *going* up the stairs" 〔我看見他走上樓去〕兩句之間有一種分別: 前者表明一種動作,而後者表明一種情況,正和上頁練習八十六第 10 句 "I found her waiting alone in the room" 完全相仿.

第十章 比較和等級

10.10. 【比較的等級：它們相對的性質】 在英文法里，通常公認形容詞和副詞的'比較的等級' (degrees of comparison) 有三個：即以 old, older, oldest 或 good, better, best 爲代表的所謂 '原級', '比較級', '最高級' (**positive, comparative,** and **superlative**). 現在我們應該明白這一點，就是關于詞形的變化方面，這三級只指形式上的詞尾 -er 和 -est; 至于文字的邏輯內容，它們卻決不能概括各種可能的比較的等級. 就邏輯上講，至少也應有五級，即 old, older, oldest, less old, least old. 例如：—

stupid——{ more stupid——most stupid
　　　　{ less stupid——least stupid

不但如此，在實際的語文中，還有種種的詞兒表明無定限的等級，如 extremely, somewhat, more or less. 這些詞兒用起來，並非在三兩件東西之間作比較，卻是概括地指明等級，如 "*somewhat* tired" 中的 "somewhat"; 或指一種假定的標準，如 "*too* old for her" 中 too 即以 her 作爲標準. 在這本文法書里，像這一類的表現法及其用法，我們都要研究，因爲它們都是表明等級意念的工具.

還有一點要注意，便是比較級和最高級只在三兩件東西之間作比較時用的. 比美國著名綁票匪首 Al Capone '好些' 的人 (a "better" man than Al Capone) 未必便是一個 '好' 人 (a "good" man); 比交通部長 '更正直' 的人 (a "more

honest" man than the Minister of Communications) 也許完全不是一個眞正'正直'的人 (a really "honest" man). 所謂這個小學生比那個小學生年紀大些 (older than), 這是比較的說法,但絕對地說起來,彼此沒有一個 '眞正年紀' 大 (old) 的. 所以原級 (old) 實則是絕對的,而比較級和最高級 (older, oldest) 都不過是相對的.

因此我們可下一結論: '好些' 的人未見得比 '好' 人好些, 並且 '最好' 的人並不是眞正比 '好些' 的人還要好些. '最好' 的人僅僅比較其餘所有的人都好些吧了. (The "better" man is not better than the "good" man, and the "best" man is not really better than the "better" man. The "best" man is simply "better" than all the rest.) 如果甲是十三歲,乙十二歲,丙十一歲,那末,甲雖是三人中年紀最大的一個,但他也不過是比乙丙的年紀大些. 所以甲的年紀實在一點也不大到那里.

10.11. 【比較的三級】 在英文里,指比較級和最高級是用詞尾 -er 和 -est, 如 old*er*, old*est*, 然而指 less old, least old 所表明的等級,卻沒有特別的詞尾,往往是用 younger, youngest 來表明它們. 而且,長些的詞兒不容許加這種詞尾,而和 more, most 用在一起. 一般的規則是:—

(1) 一音節的詞兒常常可以加 -er, -est 的. 如:

great	broad	new	deep
greater	broader	newer	deeper
greatest	broadest	newest	deepest

有時 more, most 這兩個詞兒也可用得。如 sound, sounder, soundest 固然常是正確的，但有時也可說 "This is a *more sound* proposition"〔這是一個更穩當的提案〕。

(2) 兩音節的詞兒有時加 -er, -est, 有時加 more, most.

clever	narrow	happy	lovely
cleverer	narrower	happier	lovelier
cleverest	narrowest	happiest	loveliest

stupid	cunning	learned
more stupid	more cunning	more learned
most stupid	most cunning	most learned

關于這種分別並沒有明白的規則，除非依照既成的習慣以及一種模模糊糊的諧音 (euphony) 的意味，而諧音又是基于習慣的。比方 clever*er*, clever*est* 可用，但 *more* proper, *most* proper 卻不可用 "proper*er*", "proper*est*". Handsom*er* 或 *more* handsome 以及 common*er* 或 *more* common 也都可以，但是 "cunning*er*", 或 "learned*er*", 或 "honest*er*" 斷斷不可。有 -y 詞尾的詞兒好像常和 -er, -est 並行不悖，如 dirt*ier*, health*ier*, craz*ier*, laz*iest*, funn*iest* (但通常用 *more* sticky, *most* sticky 而非 "stick*ier*", "stick*iest*"). 唯一比較明白些的規則彷彿是這樣：詞尾 -able, -ible, -ful, -ing 決不能附加 -er, -est. 比方像 "laughable*r*", "awfull*er*, "cunning*er*" 這樣的構造在英文里簡直是從未見過。有 -ly 的副詞 (early 一詞除外) 老是加 "more", "most", 如 *more* rarely, *most* surely.

(3) 三音節以及三音節以上的詞兒通常用 more, most, 用 -er, -est 眞正少見得很。如：

beautiful	convenient	interesting
more beautiful	more convenient	more interesting
most beautiful	most convenient	most interesting
generous	incomplete	comprehensive
more generous	more incomplete	more comprehensive
most generous	most incomplete	most comprehensive

可是，出乎常例地，我們有時卻爲強調關係而用 -er, -est, 如 "This is the *confoundedest* [kən'faundidist] problem I ever came across"〔這是我所遇到過的最最棘手的一個問題〕，這一句用 confoundedest 比用 most confounded 更其來得有力。其實這種情形是爲修辭上的特別理由，脫離正式規則而產生的畸形的偏向。

【註】 以 -y 收尾的詞兒加上詞尾 -er, -est 時，如果 -y 前是輔音，先把 y 改成 i，但如前面是元音，則 y 不必改動：如 happier, lazier, 但 gayer, coyer. 在發音學上說來，gayer 保持原有的'長 a 音' [ei]，不像在 prayer [禱文] 中那樣降低爲 [ɛ]: gayer ['geiə] 與 layer (名詞) ['leiə] 叶韻，不與 mayor, prayer, there, care [mɛə, prɛə, ðɛə, kɛə] 叶韻. 如果詞兒末尾是一個單輔音，而前面是一個單元音，那末加 -er, -est 時輔音要先重覆一遍，如 thinner, fatter, 但 quicker, cheaper.

10.12. 【"More Better", "Next Best" 等】 有兩種實例值得特別提出。在鄙語里以及中國學生之間，往往有 "more better" 這一個成語。這個跟良好的習慣不相符合，雖則在莎士比亞的著作中也找得到 "the *most* unkindest cut of all" 的短語。這種錯誤在心理上是由于爲求明晰以及強調的關係。

反之，像 "next best", "second best", "third best" 卻是十分良好而便利的表現方式，和中文'第二好'，'第三好'相等。英文里也有 the largest but one (two, three) 的表現法，等于中文'第二（第三，第四）大'。

要表明強調，可用 the very best, the very worst, the very first, the very last〔極好，極壞，極至最先，極至最後〕等表現法。Possible 這個詞兒也往往加在有 -est 的最高級詞之後以加強語調。

the *best possible* man for the job
the *worst possible* combination of fools and knaves
by the *quickest possible* route
at the *earliest possible* opportunity
make the *greatest possible* allowance

10.13. 【上等·平等·下等】 我們從 §10.10 看來，可以明白，關于比較等級的一種更合理的分類法，應該如 Jespersen 所提出的那種辦法，以平等和不平等爲標準。根據這種標準，應該有這三級：—

1. (>) older than ..... 上等 (superiority)
2. (=) as old as ..... 平等 (equality)
3. (<) less old than ..... 下等 (inferiority)

注意表明'平等'時用介詞短語 as ～ as，但表明'上等'或'下等'時則用介詞 than。不用 as ～ as，用 so ～ as 也可以。而且，這一對對短語之間可插入一個名詞，-er ～ than，也一樣可以。如：

He is as good a *player* as Morley.
He is a better *player* than Morley.

用 than 或 as 導引的這個短語，往往地，尤其是口語筆調里，因爲可以不言而喻而加以省略。

But this will do just *as* well (*as* that one).
It is even *better* (*than* that one).

Are they *as* keen about it (*as* we are here)?
But this is just *as* good an opportunity.
I don't think you can find a *better* substitute.
Oh, no, he is not *as* (重讀 [æz]) old, but older.

【練習八十七】 改變下列各句，用介詞 as ～ as, 或 -er (more) ～ than, 其間插入名詞.

1. Mr Harding and his wife are equally great gamblers.
2. In playing chess, Flexner is better than Harris.
3. Your correction and the original sentence are equally bad.
4. He and Hopkins are equally fast writers.
5. Hopkins does not write as fast as Murry.

拉丁字源的比較詞 superior, inferior, prior, senior, junior 之後用 to, 不可用 than, 如 *prior to* this event〔在這事件以前〕, *superior to* him in business ability〔經商的才具勝過他〕.

10.14. 【含蓄比較】 有少數的形容詞是只用于比較級而最高級而後面不可用 than 的. 這些全是指示'方向' (direction) 的詞兒: inner, outer, nether, upper 和 innermost, outermost (outmost, utmost), nethermost (罕用), uppermost. 我們可以說 the *inner* circle, 或 the *outer* circle, 但不可說 "This circle is *inner than* that one." 因爲這種比較是含蓄的. 注意這些形容詞的原級的詞兒都是介詞或副詞: in, out, beneath, up.

Former 和 latter 的後面也不能用 than: the *former* president, the latter half 可以用, 但 "former than" 或 "latter than" 決不可用. Latter 是指空間上的在後, 而 later 是指時間上的在後: the *latter* half of the book, 但 the *later* period,

Former, latter 這兩個詞兒的最高級詞是 for most, first, 和 latest, last 等. 原級卽以正式形容詞 fore 和 late 爲其代表.

我們可以說 *farther than* this, *further than* that. Farther 只是'更遠' ("more far"), 而 further 是在某一特別方向'更前進' ("more advanced") 的意思 (further back in history). 注意在英文里要說 *further* to the east, *further* eastwards, *further* to the right, *further* up, *further* down (非 more eastwards, more up 等). Further 的正當用法如下:一

I may *further* mention . . . .
And *further* (=moreover) we must remember . . . .
I shall inquire *further* into the question.
I shall furnish you with *further* details.
Shop closed until *further* notice.
Furthermore=moreover.

10.15. 【不可比較的詞兒】 某些形容詞和副詞在意義上是絕對的;所以不可加以比較. 一件東西或是 right 〔對〕或不是;決不會有一件東西比另一件 more right 〔更對〕. 我們可以說 more correct, 或 less correct 〔更正確;不怎麽正確〕以及 more in the right 或 more in the wrong 〔更正當;更不正當〕,但不可說 "more right" 或 "more wrong". 這是由于英文里'是', '非' 意味之判然不同,不容有等級之分的;試和中文'更是','更非 (不是)' 等意念互相對照:一

更 是 = more correct (非 more right)
更 非 = more incorrect (非 more wrong)
更 相 同 = more similar (非 more identical)
更 不 同 = differs more (非 more different)
更 與 事 實 不 符 = is farther from the truth (非 more false)

中英文里其他不容許有比較的形容詞無須特別留心。譬如 a dead body〔死屍〕決不會比其他的 deader〔更死〕，a piece of ice〔一塊冰〕也不會比另一塊 more frozen〔更冰凍〕。

在另一方面，有某些比較式很不容易翻成中文。在中英文里，我們當然都可以說一個人比另一人'更愛國'(more patriotic)　但，在英文里，我們甚至還可說"He is *more of a patriot* than another"，或 He is *more of a patriot* than a politician"。這是很可能從一個人可以是"a bit of a politician"同時又是"a bit of a patriot"的這意念上發生聯帶關係。這種比較是這個人在他兩種資格上的比較。所以這後一種結構，是不容許直譯而必須意譯的。同樣地——

That sounds like *more of a gamble* (than a proper trade).
It's *more of a propagandist novel,* written to preach socialialism (than an art novel).

"More often than not"這個結構也是很別致的；這成語沒有適當的，恰如其分的譯語，在這里含有'屢見不一見'，'數見不鮮'的意思。

(It happened) *More often than not,* our salaries were deducted on account of all sorts of special emergency taxes.
More often than not, he had to be helped out of his financial difficulties at the end of the year.

10.16. 【弱變的最高級詞】在各國文字中，最高級詞沒有不被濫用的。生意人都聲稱他們的貨物是"the best"〔最好〕。看了電影廣告，人都意想到，自從人類有了歷史以來，每一張片子(film)都是"the best picture of the year"〔本年度最好的影片〕，或"the most gorgeous spectacle"〔最恢宏壯麗的奇觀〕，或"the most stupendous production"〔最驚人的偉大出品〕，

或 "played by the greatest galaxy of stars"〔全體最有名的明星表演〕. 這種最高級詞的濫用祇是普通習慣的一種誇張方式,用于一種廣泛的,因此弱變了的,意義. 例如在現代的北京話里,'挺' 字已發展成爲那個更合邏輯的 '頂' 字的弱變最高級詞. '挺好' 和英文的 "very good" 意思極其相似(在說者一方面並沒有什麽了不得熱誠),而 '頂好' 乃是 "the best" 的意思. 在英文里, dearest 這個詞兒差不多往往是濫用的. 但是,這種慣用式姑置不論,弱變最高級詞在我們日常生活中也是天天要引用到的. 比方說 "He is a *most* learned scholar", "We spent a *most* agreeable evening", "I read a *most* interesting novel", 或 "He was the *funniest* man I ever saw." 在寒暄的談話中,我們不是往往說 "With the *greatest* pleasure" 以答覆人家的請求,或者說 "I shall be *most* delighted to see you" 嗎,其意義不過是 "with pleasure", "very delighted" 而已.

Very 雖不是一個最高級詞,但同樣地是經過弱變了的,它的作用常是比較側重諧音方面甚于邏輯方面的,(與中文 '很好', '很高', '很壞' 中的 '很' 字相似). 這種情形如今已發展到這個地步,乃至 many, few, little, much, far, near 等詞單獨用時不比 very many, very few, very little, very much, very far, very near 來得普通. 所謂這純粹是諧音的一點,只要看一看用別的副詞時這 very 便大可省掉的這個事實,便可以明白了.

There are *very few*, *so few*, *not few* people there. (比較 "There are *few* people there" 好些.)

It is *very far*, *not far*, or so *far*. (但決不可用 "It is *far*", 即 "It is *far* from here" 也很少用.)

I like you *very much*. (決非 "I like you *much*.")

He eats *very little.* (很少用 "He eats *little.*")
Very good. (比較 "*Good!*" 普通些.)

(注意中文里也說 '這個人很壞' 或 '壞透了', 但決不作興單說一個 '壞' 字.)

有標準的比較

10.20. 【有標準的比較】 我們要不是將三兩件事物相互比較,還有一種方法可用,卽以某種標準 (standard),無論表明的或含蓄的,而對一件事物加以比較. 此處上等是用 too, above 等詞兒以及 over-, hyper- 等詞首指明. 平等是以 as ～ as 或 so ～ as 的成語以及副詞 enough 表明. 下等是以 not enough 和詞首 under- 表明. Too 和 enough 都是與 to (導引比較的標準) 和 for (通常導引一個人作爲標準) 合用.

(1) **To ～ to, too ～ for** 及其類似語. 仔細注意下列各例句中所含的這兩種結構,並留心作爲比較 '標準' 用的那個詞兒或短語.

This exercise may be *too* easy *for* you, but it is *too* difficult *for* me.
Death is *too* good *for* him (=He should be punished by something worse than death).
Tennis is *too* strenuous *for* a man of my age.
It is *too* beautiful *to* be true (=It can't be true).
I am *too* busy *to* attend to this (*too* busy *for* that).
Nothing is *too* good *for* his new house. (He wants absolutely the very best material to be used).
For Confucius' taste, rice could never be *too* white, and mincemeat could never be chopped *too* fine (食不厭精,膾不厭細: could never be white enough = the whiter, the better).
Your gown is *too* bright-coloured *for* this occasion.
I am *too* tired *to* work tonight.

This food is *too* hot *to* eat, *too* hot *to* be eaten, *too* hot *for* me, *too* hot *for* eating, *too* hot *for* me *to eat*, *too* hot *for* comfort.

此外還有 *above* normal〔出乎常規〕, *above* my ability〔力所不及〕, *beyond* my power〔非我力之所能〕, *beyond* his means〔超出資力以外〕, *beyond* me〔非我力之所及,或非我所能了解〕, *beyond* (any) doubt〔無疑地,一定〕, *beyond* (any) question〔不待論,無疑,一定〕這一類的成語。又,注意表明與 too 相同的意念的詞首:— *over*eat (=eat too much)〔過食,飽食〕, *over*sleep〔睡眠過度〕, *over*work〔工作過度〕, *over*do ("Don't overdo it"=這事不可做得過分), *over*reach oneself〔過伸身體,(常假借作爲比喻)勉強行事,過分進行〕; *super*normal〔超過正規(標準)的〕, *super*natural〔超自然〕, *super*human〔超人〕, *super*dreadnought〔大無畏艦,即形式與無畏艦(dreadnought)相同而其大小,速力,排水量及砲之口徑則更形增加者〕, *super*fine〔(商業用語)=of extra quality, 超等〕; *hyper*sensitive(=over-sensitive)〔神經過敏〕, *hyper*critical(=too critical〔批評過于苛刻的,吹毛求疵〕, *hyper*tension (of nerve or blood pressure)〔(神經或血壓)過分緊張〕.

More than. 在 more than two 等通常用法以外,還有些別的形式更需要加以注意。細讀下列各種結構:—

(刪去主語)

He eats *more than* is good for him. (More than *what* is good for him. 關于這種省略法, 參看 §9.82)

You have talked *more than* is necessary.

I have done *more than* is required by the law.

(刪去賓語)

He eats *more than* he can digest. (More than *what* he can digest. 賓語 what 刪去.)
That is *more than* (*what*) I can say. (It is beyond my knowledge.)
He got *more than* (*what*) he asked for.
That was *more than* (*what*) he expected.

(後附無限式)

He knows *better than* to go out alone on such a night.
I am *wiser than* to believe that.

(後附形容詞)

This is *more than* fine: it is excellent.
She was *more than* pretty: she was beautiful.
He was *more than* clever: he was a great artist.
We have *more than* enough.

(2) Enough to, enough for, as ～ as 及其類似的表現法:—

There are *enough* bacilli in this test-tube *to* kill the whole city population. (bacilli [bə'silai], bacillus [-əs] 之複數, [桿狀細菌])
This room is hot *enough to* bake potatoes in.
In one year, he spent (或 she saved) *enough to* buy three villas.
This food is just *enough for* eight people.
We have *enough* eggs (或 eggs *enough*) *to* last us three days (或 *enough for* three days).
There is noise *enough to* wake up the dead.
I had *enough* to do *to* catch the tram (could barely catch it).
Enough *work for* today.

As ～ as 這種結構,在中文里全然沒有和它相同的東西. 例如:

as soon *as* possible
as often *as* you like
as soon *as* you are ready
as high *as* your shoulder
as heavy *as* can be borne (參看上面 "more than is good")

as hot *as* a furnace
as hot *as* ninety-two degrees
as hot *as* last summer
as rich *as* Baron Rothschild ['rɔ(θ)st∫aild]
as drunk *as* a lord
as dead *as* a doornail
as tall *as* he (或 *as* he is)
as interesting *as* a novel
as beautiful *as* a rose
as quick *as* lightning
as easy *as* A B C

So ～ as (後附詞兒或短語) 和 so ～ that (後附子句) 是十分普通的。兩者都是表明後面那個短語或子句所闡明的一種品性的等級,這在作用上和中文短語'熱得疼手','熱得頭昏'等之中的'得'字極其相似。

【練習八十八】 (A) 將下列各句譯成中文:—

1. *so* hot *as* to burn your fingers
2. *so* hot *that* one can scarcely breathe
3. *so* soon *as* I can come
4. *so* bright *as* to dazzle your eyes
5. *so* big *that* two can sit in it
6. *so* excited *that* he forgot his appointment
7. *so* fat *that* she could not climb the stairs
8. *so* quiet *that* you could hear a pin fall
9. *so* happy about it *that* she cried

(B) 將下列中文各句譯成英文,用 so ～ that 或 so ～ as 以描述一種等級:—

1. 我疲得不能走路。
2. 我熱得不能喘氣。
3. 那天熱得瓶中金魚都死了。
4. 日光亮得不能開眼。
5. 這機器熱得燙手。
6. 他急得要哭出來。
7. 他窮得沒錢買米。
8. 他窮得不能付每月房租。

(3) **Not enough 等。** Not hot enough 和 not so hot as 一類的實例所以異于 (2) 項中各例者,只在于有一個 not 加在前面。詞首 under- 有時用以表明'不足' (insufficiency)的觀念。

food is *underdone* (not cooked enough) [煮得不熟]
workman is *underpaid* (not paid enough) [工資低]
photograph is *under-exposed* (not exposed long enough) [曝光不足]
writer has been *underrated* or *underestimated* (not rated or regarded as high as he deserves) [估價過低]
article is *undersized* (size is smaller than the normal or than what is required) [尺寸過小]
man is *underweight* (weighs less than the normal for his height and sex) [體重過輕]

差別的等級

10.30. 【差別的等級】 表明兩樣東西相差的等級所用的工具，也值得研究一下. 在這一種場合，用介詞 by 是最普通的，這可由下面例句中看得出：—

Tom is older than Jim *by* three years.
Jim is taller than Effie *by* an inch and half.
Busy Bee [馬名] won (the horse race) *by* a neck [以一頸之差].
This is *by* far the best way of meeting the difficulty.
We won *by* 2-0.
I missed the train *by* three minutes.
Gold has risen *by* three points. [金價漲三點] (外匯行市變動的增減單位，謂之 pint，即 1/16 便士)

(在末了三例中，是含著比較.)

表明量度的名詞往往是作這種用處，而不加任何導引的介詞.

Jim is *an inch and half* taller than Effie.
Tom is *one pound* heavier than Steward.
She is *a year* older than her younger brother.
They are *miles* apart.
Prof. McMurray is *head and shoulders* above the rest of the faculty in his scholarship [在學位上，教授團體中其他各人不能望其項背].

"Easily the best" 也是一個普通的表現法，卽 "*by far* the best" 〔遠勝〕之意.

10.31. 【無定限的等級】 大部分等級副詞 (adverbs of degree) 是屬于這一類. 可約略分類如下:—

(1) **More or less** 〔多少〕, **to a certain extent** 〔有幾分，稍稍〕, **rather** 〔頗，微，尙〕, **somewhat** 〔幾分，略，些少〕, **fairly** 〔還好，尙可〕, 等:—

We did it *more or less* for **fun.**
He is *more or less* crazy.
I was *more or less* disappointed (或: *somewhat* disappointed; *to a certain extent* disappointed; *rather* disappointed).
To a certain extent he was wrong. *In a way* 〔多少，一點兒〕 he was wrong.
To a certain extent (to a certain degree), this is excusable. This is *more or less* excusable, or *in a way* excusable.
He understands English *fairly* well.
We had *fairly* enough (i.e., enough for practical purposes, though not *quite* enough).

(*Fairly*: 英國人往往用這個詞兒，作爲 "quite" 〔十分，很，極〕的婉和說法.)

I was *fairly* puzzled.
The opponent was *fairly* silenced.
The company *fairly* went to pieces.
I was *fairly* sick of the whole affair.

(*Rather* = "somewhat", "slightly", "in a way.")

I *rather* think you know him.
He came *rather* late.
I feel *rather* tired.
The performance was *rather* a failure.
It was *rather* good.
The singing fell *rather* flat.

(2) A little〔一點兒,些少〕, hardly, scarcely〔殆無,殆不〕, barely〔僅,纔,好容易才〕, 等:—

I was *a little* tired, unwilling, angered, frightened.
He was *slightly* [有點兒] hurt.
The little child was not *a bit* [一點兒] afraid. The big man was not *a bit* ashamed. He was *a bit* proud of his daughter.
I don't care *a bit (a rap, a twopence)* [絲毫] what you say. (twopence 讀 ['tʌpəns])

(*Little*: 和 *a little* 不同,其意義是否定的,等于 "not much"〔不很,不甚,不大〕)

He is *little* known round here. [在這兒左近不大出名]
The people live in houses *little* better than hovels.
You *little* know how much I suffered during your absence.
We had *little* more than three pounds a week to live on.
I am *little* interested [不很感到興趣] in your proposition.

(*Hardly* 和 *scarcely* 的意義也是否定的,等于 "almost not".)

Hardly (=almost not) a man turned up.
We had *hardly* (=almost no) time to finish the lesson.
I could *hardly* believe what he said.
That is *hardly* possible.
There was *hardly* a soul there.
I had *hardly* a penny left.
I *hardly* ever (=almost never) see him.
That is *hardly* better than what he gave him.
He is *hardly* known outside his native town.

(上列各句中,凡用 hardly 的地方,都可用 scarcely.)

(*Barely*="only just", 其意義上否定的程度比 hardly 稍差.)

We had *barely* (=only just) enough.
He was *barely* five feet tall.
It is not *barely* (=only just) a question of money.

That is *barely* possible.
We had *barely* five minutes left.
We had plenty of coal, *barely* enough rice, but could get no vegetable.

(3) **A lot**〔許多,多〕, **very, much**〔遠,大,甚,極〕, **considerably**〔大,頗,甚〕, 等:—

This way of doing it is *a lot* (*lots, far*) better.
We got *a lot* (*lots*) more room that way.
I can tell you something *far* (*a lot*) more interesting.
A is *far* (*greatly* [大大地]) superior to B.
I am feeling *a lot* better (或 *much* better, *a great deal* better, *a good deal* better, 有時可用 *a deal* better).
He was *to a great extent* responsible for the failure.
After ten o'clock, the patient felt *considerably* better.
M—— was *far* too clever for him.
The sales have been *considerably* (或 *noticeably* [顯然]) increased.

decidedly [斷然] heavier	*appreciably* [多少, 幾分] lighter
considerably greater	*greatly* changed
noticeably affected	*tremendously* [極其] successful
remarkably [顯然] clever	*exceptionally* [格外, 異常] beautiful
markedly [顯然] improved	*incomparably* [無比, 無雙] the best

"Very" 和 "Much" 的分別. "Very" 通常跟形容詞用在一起 (*very* ill, *very* good, *very* interesting); 而 "much" 通常跟過去分詞用在一起 (*much* pleased, much influenced, *much* improved, *much* destroyed, 或 very *much* pleased 等). "Much" 也跟比較級用在一起 (*much* better, *much* greater, *much* smaller, *much* more difficult). 但是有一類的過去分詞因爲用得多,差不多已經變成形容詞了. 比方可以說 "I feel *very* tired", 但決不可說 "I feel *much* tired" (比較 a *very* tired look on his face). 所困難者,就是慣用法在這一方面

變化多端，以至于那些過去分詞能當作形容詞用，那些不能夠，這很難劃出一條界限來．除非用 very 時有把握覺得是正確的，那末過去分詞前還是應該用 much 的好．Pleased, delighted, surprised, worried 和 frightened 等詞兒，只要後面沒有 by，那末，（除用 much 以外）用 very 也不會出毛病的．在這後一種情形之中，它們在那個特殊場合，實則還是當作過去分詞用的．遇有疑惑時，可以 greatly 代替 very.

反之，凡形容詞只能用于敘述語（在名詞之後）而決不能用于形容語的（在名詞之前）通常跟 much 而不跟 very 用在一起．例如："I am very *much* afraid"（我們不可說 "a *very* afraid man"）/ "He is very *much* like his father" / "She is very *much* behind the others" / "They are very *much* alike".

【練習八十九】下列各句空白處，試填入 very 或 much（或 very much）：—

1. I shall be ———— pleased to see you.
2. A ———— celebrated writer was present at the meeting.
3. After years of absence, he found his wife ———— changed
4. The sale has been ———— increased through this new method.
5. While in Paris, he was ———— influenced by one of his fellow-students.
6. He was ———— worried about the affair.
7. He was ———— surprised to find only three men in the room.
8. The picture was ———— admired by many visitors.
9. The professor cut the tail into two, and placed them ———— apart.
10. After two weeks' rest, his condition was ———— improved

11. I hear a _____ exaggerated story.
12. The story has been _____ exaggerated by him.
13. I feel _____ concerned about it.
14. He was _____ disappointed by her absence.
15. Lucy went home alone, _____ disappointed.

(4) Quite, almost, principally, largely, wholly, partly 等. Largely 意卽 "for the greater part" 〔大半,多半〕, 而 greatly 意卽 "very much". Principally, chiefly 和 largely 差不是一樣的意思, 作 '大抵, 大半,大都' 解. Wholly entirely, completely 和 perfectly 〔全部,完全,全然〕等用于合意與不合意的性質和情況都可以,但是 utterly 和 totally 〔全,盡,全然〕通常是限于不合意的性質和情況, 並且這些詞兒一律是和 partly 〔一部分,稍稍,多少〕相反的. Absolutely 〔絕對地〕是和 relatively 〔相對地〕或 comparatively 〔比較地〕相反的. 下面舉一些例子:—

it is *perfectly* clear
is *absolutely* sure, sincere
is *relatively* certain
entirely successful or unsuccessful
entirely his own
perfectly useless, right
perfectly happy, contented
partly my mistake
partly broken, conquered
largely his fault
largely through my help.
wholly, completely successful
principally caused by
utterly wrong, useless
utterly forgotten, mistaken
totally ignorant
totally unaware of, unprepared for
chiefly for that purpose
chiefly for gain
chiefly mathematics and English
quite broken-hearted
quite absorbed
quite meaningless, cold, common, proper
almost blind
almost penniless

【練習九十】 (A) 試以上列各例造句,或自行舉出類似之成語造句亦可.

(B) 試仿本節 "3" 項範式用下列副詞造句:—

considerably	*markedly*	*exceptionally*
greatly	*appreciably*	*immensely*
remarkably	*noticeably*	*reputedly*
decidedly	*tremendously*	*knowingly*

(5) **Not too**〔不十分〕, **none too**〔不甚〕, **not over**〔不過分〕, **not altogether**〔並非〕, 等. 英文因爲以厭惡'露骨表情'(being over-demonstrative) 以及避免用最高級詞,算是一種形式上美妙的問題, 所以生出常用否定詞或相反的表現法的結果 (看參 §3.45). 例如 "very unhappy" 往往用 "*not too* happy" 以及 "very unpleasant" 往往用 "*not (none) too* pleasant" 表現. 這種形式現在已經常用于表明不合意的性質, 每每含有'非難' (disapproval) 的氣味. 例如 Not too clever〔不十分伶巧〕往往是表明對于蠢笨行爲的一種警告或非難. 其他例如:—

He was *none too pleased* about it.
He went as ordered, but was *none too quick* about it.
I am *not over-hopeful* about the situation.
They didn't get along *too well* together.
He wasn't *over-happy* about the whole affair.
I didn't have *too much* money to spend for such idle purposes.
Don't be *too sure* about it.
I wasn't *over-enthusiastic* about it from the very beginning.
This was *not altogether* an *easy* task (a success).
She was *not altogether unwilling* (was, in fact, quite willing).

10.32. 【界限】 As ～ as 的用法我們在 § 10.10 第 2 項內已經學過了. 關于品性的等級, 有一種微微不同的界限的意味,在下列這樣的表現法里透示出來:— "I am willing to go *so far and no farther*", 或 "He will stay *as long* (或 *so long*) *as* his finances will permit" 這意思便是,這種品性或動作的

等級只容許達到某一點。最典型的例句便是 as far as ～ is concerned"〔僅就～而論〕這個英文成語。

As far I *am concerned,* you can go anywhere you please.
As far as the accused *are concerned,* it is up to the court to settle the question.
As far as the creditor *is concerned,* the debt must be paid. (He does not care how the money is obtained to pay it.)
As far as the question of international debts *concerns the United States,* the problem is whether to have all the gold flow to America or to have her trade revived.

又,注意下列成語:—

As far as I know, nobody was in the room this morning.
I will take up the matter *as far as I am able to.* (To the best of my ability.)
He took down *as much* of the conversation *as he was able to* understand (and left unrecorded what he could not understand.)
Stretch your arms *as far as possible.*
Eat *as much as you can.* [能吃多少吃多少; 儘量吃吧]
She was *as good* a mother *as could be.*

So long as 和 **inasmuch as**〔以～之故,因〕是表明這一種界限的別的詞兒。如 *The* sooner, *the* better〔愈速愈妙〕中等級副詞 the (參看下節 §10.33) 一般,這些詞兒也吸收一種偶然關係的觀念。

So long as you persist in your old ways, I cannot give you any money.
So long as there is no politilal stability in China, industry cannot be developed.
So long as the people's ideas are not changed, a change in the form of government will mean nothing.
So long as things remain what they are, communism and banditry are bound to grow in China.

Inasmuch as you know the story already, I will not tell it again.
You shall be forgiven this time, *inasmuch as* you realize you error.
Mr. Chen ought to be consulted, *inasmuch as* he is paying the money.
In so far as this matter concerns all of us, we should take a united action.
In so far as you were responsible for the starting of this scheme, you ought to pay more for it than the others.

10.33. 【累積等級】 還有一類觀念是用 "He is getting *better and better*" 這一類的表現法表達出來，這種地方所指明的不是一種什麼一定的等級，而是一種遞進的級數。這個有時單單用 gradually〔逐漸〕一個詞兒提示出來，如"Judaism *gradually* went out of existence in China"〔猶太教在中國漸漸滅跡了〕，但有時用 smaller and smaller, weaker and weaker, poorer and poorer 這一類的成語，中文作 '越～越～' 解釋。茲舉例如下：—

While he was growing *richer and richer*, his country was becoming *poorer and poorer*.
The attacks (of epilepsy, melancholia, etc.) became *more and more frequent*.
The patient *steadily* grew worse.
He was daily becoming *weaker and weaker*, and was compelled to take *bigger and bigger* doses of sleeping powder [安眠藥粉].
He found it *more and more difficult* (or *increasingly* difficult) to resist the temptation.
As his health and his will-power [意志力] grew *weaker and weaker*, he indulged himself [放縱] *more and more*.

令人感到特別興趣的，是這種場合的 the 當作等級副詞用，意即 "by so much" 或 "by that much". *The* more he

flatters me, the more I dislike him〔他越發恭維我，我越發不喜歡他〕，就是 "*By so much* he flatters me, *by that much* I dislike him".

The older we grow, *the* more shameless we become.
The sooner you can come, *the* better (it is for me). *The* sooner, *the* better.
The more she keeps him away [避他], *the* more he admires her.
The more people there are, *the* merrier it is. *The* more, *the* merrier.

由 "by that much" 的意義，the 轉爲 "on that account"〔因此〕另一意義，正如上列各句中第二個 the 所提示的。由此又得到 *all the better* (=so much better on that account), *all the worse* (=so much worse on that account), 或 *so much the worse*〔越發不好了〕這一類表現法。

And if I am mistaken and he is right, then *so much the worse* for China.
He has left the town? *So much the worse* for him (=so much worse on that account [更可證明他是畏罪而逃了]).
A long delayed home letter is *all the more welcome* (=on account of the long delay.)
He has tried to buy me all sorts of presents, but I do not like him *the more* for it.
He was *none the better* for having a diploma, and I *none the worse* for not having it.
We shall invite him, and if he won't come, *all the better*.

【練習九十一】 試仿上列範式用 none the worse, all the better, so much the worse 等成語造句。又完成下列各句：—

The longer you wait, ...
The less he hears about this, ...
The more you urge him to go, ...
The poorer he becomes, ...
The older he grows, ...
The more I think of it, ...
The richer he becomes, ...
The more people oppose him, ...

選擇和比較

10.40. 【選擇(Choice)和比較："Had Better" 和 "Would Rather"】 選擇（在兩個不同事物或品性之間的選擇）和比較(在同品性的各種不同的等級之間的比較）兩者是有分別的. "I like apples *rather than* pears" 就是'我喜歡蘋果,實在不喜歡梨子'的意思;但 "I like apples *more than* pears" 這一句的意思卻是'兩者我都喜歡,但愛好蘋果的程度比愛好梨子的程度更深'. 因此我們又可以在兩種相反的品性之間,敘明一種選擇或考慮. 比方我們說 "This is deep brown *rather than* yellow" 的時候,問題是這件東西到底是否是黃的,而不是比另一件東西的顏色更黃或沒有它那樣黃.

Would rather〔寧～而不～,與其～不如～〕. Rather 這個詞兒是最常用于敘明兩種不同的品性或動作的時候. 指動作時用 would rather 是很正常的一種方式,同時 had rather 也未嘗不可以用. 在多半的情形之中, than 之後是用略去了 to 的無限式. 仔細觀察下列各例中的時制和結構:—

I would rather *die* than *surrender*.
He *resigned* rather than *stifle* his conscience.
Dying rather than *surrender* (=dying-rather-than-surrender) was the decision of every one of the garrison.
Rather than *undertake* to keep three Russians at Shanghai under surveillance, the Municipal Council [工部局] *deported* them.
He would rather *have died* than *refused* (省去了 *have* 的不定法;非過去時制).
I would much rather not *go*.
Use *soft* water rather than *hard*.

He showed the desire to seem *clever* rather than *honest*.
I had rather *err* with Plato than *be* right with Horace.
I had (或 would) rather not *say* anything about it.
I would rather *leave* the posts vacant than *fill* them with inferior men [寧缺毋濫].

Had better 〔不如,毋寧,寧可～的好〕後面跟一個略去 to 的無限式,是提出勸告 (advice) 的一種普通方式. 它是指明一種動作比較別的一種動作更其可取. 指明兩件東西或兩項動作之間的選擇,也往往用 prefer 〔寧取〕, 卽 '寧取某種較合意的事物或動作而不取某種不合意的事物或動作' 的意思. 不過要注意 prefer 之後用 to, 不用 than. 茲舉數例如下:—

Don't you think you *had better go* home now?
You'*d better run* along.
You'*d better find* out what he is doing.
He *preferred* the English *to* the French.
She *prefers* working *to* begging.
He *prefers* water *to* wine.
X *prefers* Egyptian cigarettes.
Y *prefers to* stay (would rather stay than go).
Z *prefers to* be left alone.
I *prefer to* say nothing about it.
Noulens [牛蘭夫婦] *preferred to* die of starvation rather than submit to this treatment.

比較和位的關係

10.50. 【比較和位的關係】 凡是一種比較,常時至少需要兩件事物才能加以比較. 要緊的是,我們把這樣比較的事物先要自己弄個明白. 在"She loves him *more than* the child" 一句中,這種比較可以是介于女人和小孩之間 (more than the

child loves him), 或者是介于丈夫和小孩之間 (more than she loves the child). 僥倖地, 用了一個代名詞, 這意思便由代名詞的位而弄得明白: "She loves the child more than *he* (loves the child)," 或 "She loves him more than (she loves) *him*". 試看下列各句中所含的意義:—

You could do it better than *I*.
I could talk French as well as *he*.
There is no better man than *he* to take up this job.
They were admiring the Queen rather than *Confucius*.
The remark was intended for him rather than *me*.

又, 注意下列各句中所比較的人或事物:—

Matthews wrote a longer essay than *mine*.
Her dress is a prettier pink than *my wife's* [waifs].
Your house is better situated and has bigger windows than *mine*.
These stories are quite as interesting as *those* written by Andersen.
The climate of Shanghai is not so damp as *that* of Hongkong.
The grammar of the Chinese language is quite different from *that* of Japanese.
His was a newer hat than *Mr. Johnson's*.
The arms of the chimpanzee are longer than *those* of man.

【練習九十二】 矯正下列各句中的錯誤, 或決定斜體字排的詞兒, 應用何者指明所比較的人或物方爲正當:—

1. I smoke more cigars than *him* (*he*?). (Can one smoke him?)
2. The leaves of the orange-tree are smaller than bananas.
3. The goods at Wing On are cheaper than Sincere.
4. The Chinese can roast ducks better even than France. (Can France be roasted?)
5. Mrs. Davis is a taller woman than Mr. Davis. (Compare the height of the two persons.)

6. My child is older than *you* (*yours*?).
7. The cat has sharper claws than *you*. (Compare the cat's claws with your finger-nails.)
8. Her rooms are better furnished than *I* (*me*? *mine*?).
9. The distance between Shanghai and Nanking is greater than Hangchow.
10. The skin of Chinese women is, as a whole, finer and smoother than foreign women.
11. The charges for printing English books are higher than Chinese books.
12. The period of infancy of human beings is longer than the donkey.

第十一章　動作的各方面

11.01. 【動詞之研究】 動詞及其變化的研究，往往看做文法里最重要的，也許最困難的，一部分。 不錯，動詞是任何一句里最重要的詞兒，因爲賦予整句以生命而將各成分合成一個邏輯的整體的乃是動詞。 方比，拿 She is picking roses in the garden 和 She roses in the garden 比較一下，前一句給我們描繪出一個滿意的心理上的景象，而後一羣詞兒所表現的這一串影象是死的，不相連貫的。

而且，無疑地，動詞比較任何別的詞類變化更多，因此處理時更要小心（例如和名詞的比較上的堅定性相比較）。 正如動作所涉及的關係比物件或品性更錯綜複雜，所以動詞也就比名詞或形容詞蒙收更多的變化了。 一種動作應該直接預先有一個發動的人（動作的主語），而且很容易影響別人或某一特殊的事物（間接賓語和直接賓語）。 其次，動作老是要佔有時間的，然而物件或品性卻未必含有'時間意念'（time-notion）。 最後，動作本身是形形色色，不一而足，如主動或被動，繼續或完成，眞實或假想，等等，等等。

在普通的文法書里，動詞是分爲三類：內動詞，外動詞和助動詞；每個外動詞有兩種'態'（voice），卽主動及被動；每一態有若干語氣，如疑問，直說，命令，和無限；而直說語氣和疑問語氣又有若干時制，如現在，過去，未來，以及若干附屬時制，如單純現在，現在完了，現在完了進行式，等等。

這本書，既然是依據意念的原則，所以研究動詞時，我們只把它們分成四大項：（*a*）動作的各方面（Aspects of Action，第十

一章)，(*b*) 外射動作 (Transitive Action)，特別是主語和賓語的關係 (第十二章)，(*c*) 動作時間 (Time of Action，第十三章)，(*d*) 動詞的語氣，或事實和想像 (Verbal Moods, or Fact and Fancy，第十四章)。 所以，除去主語和賓語的關係，以及時間和語氣的各種意念和表現法以外，其餘所有的變化，一律包括在'方面' (Aspects*) 這一名稱之下討論。

11.02. 【方面是什麽?】 動作的一個'方面'是指一類的動作。 動作自然可以分爲各種各類。 如:

repeat, reiterate, return, recover, regain [重複，反覆 (申言)，回歸，恢復，復得]

是屬于一類動作，只要它們有一個共同的方面，即所有的動作都包括重複做一件事或回復到某件事上去。 一個或幾個相同的動作可以根據不同的方面分類。 即以 repeat 這個詞兒爲例，我們可以從另一方面來觀察它，說它是一個外動詞，由于它這種動作擴展及于某種事物，如 repeat a song 〔複唱〕。 在這一方面，可以把 repeat 和 kill (a man), tell (a story), eat (some food) 這些外動詞歸入一類，以別于 go, come, rest, sleep 這一類的內動詞。 因此對于動作之是外射的或內凝的這種考慮可以認爲是一種'方面意念'。 再，動作可以看做是'長期的' (know, remember, love) 〔知道，記得，愛〕，或'短期的' (learn,

*"Aspect" 是文法學者作印度歐羅巴語之比較研究時所常用的一個名稱，但是除在斯拉夫文里這個詞兒另有其一定的意義以外，這個名稱所表明的東西是各各不同的。 在理想的文字里究應分別標明出有多少 aspects [方面]，文法學家各持一見，至今還未能——其實也不必要——趨于一致。 其所以如此，是因爲有某些動詞的方面，在某些語文里是公認的，而在其他語文里卻完全置之不理。 可是，研究任何一種語文，要注意那種語文中的'方面意念' (aspect-notion)，不特是全然可能，而且是極其必要的事。

remind, fall in love)〔得知,想起,鍾情〕. 或者一個動作是主動的 (I tell a story), 或被動的 (I am told). 還有'習慣動作', (I smoke a pipe)〔我抽烟〕和'單純現在' (I am not smoking today)〔我今天不抽煙〕之間也是有分別的. 因此, 同一個動作以及同一個動詞可以屬于不同的'方面'或種類. 有些方面是由于動詞的性質本身而決定 (外射——內凝), 有些可以看它如何用法而決定 (主動——被動), 或者看時制的變化 (完了——繼續).

在每種文字之中,都有某些動作方面是顯然公認的. 如不把這些方面意念弄清楚了,不管'變用表' (conjugation tables) 載得如何明白,動詞的正當用法是決不會眞正了解的.

比方,拿 I wrote 和 I have written 之間的英文區別來看. 這個通常是當作一種時制的區別而分類的,但是最重要的區別卻在于方面而不在時制. 在這種形式上的區別的背後,另有方面意念的存在,一個動作還是指它本身 (I wrote) 還是指它的結果 (I have written) 而言. 最要緊的是要認清潛伏在這些形式變化之內的這種方面意念.

11.03. 【英文的動詞方面】 下面這些英文里最重要的方面意念,是應該細心研究充分了解的. (1) 動作和情況的分別. (2) 外射動作和內凝動作的分別. (3) 動作的主動方面和被動方面的分別. (4) 完成動作和未完動作的分別. (5) 發動方面,繼續方面,停止方面,或動作的開始,繼續和終止. (6) 長久 (長時間) 動作和暫時 (短時間) 動作的分別. (7) 習慣動作. (8) 試驗動作. (9) 表明役使,重複,反射,交互等動作的各種次要方面.

動作和情況

11.10. 【動作和情況】 第一個而又最重要的方面的區別便是動作和情況的不同. 誠然 I am recovering (from illness) 是'現在繼續時制', I have recovered 是'現在完了時制'. 但是一面用 I recover 或 I recovered, 一面用 I am recovering 或 I have recovered, 而說這是時制的分別,這可不對了. 這兩者之間眞正的不同之點是方面的不同, 卽 recover (-ed) 是指明'復原'的這種動作,而 am recovering 和 have recovered 所指明的不是動作而是情況.

中國學生不斷地把這兩個方面弄得混淆不清,把'動作方面' (action-aspect) 過于用得多了,其實有些地方應該是用'情況方面' (condition-aspect) 的. 例如像 You *p ay* with fire 的這種完全不是英文的說話,我們往往可以聽得到. 這意思乃是指明 You *are playing* with fire 〔你正在玩火〕的一種'情況'. 這一類的錯誤是極其普通的.

He *comes* here. (用 *is coming*)
You *make* a great mistake. (用 *you are making*, 或 *have made*)
He *deceives* you. (用 *he is deceiving*, 或 *has deceived*)
I *consider* this question now. (這一句是不可能的,要用 *I will consider* 或 *am considering*)
You *fool* me. (用 *you are fooling*)
The child *plays* alone in the room upstairs. (用 *is playing*)
I *do* not *smoke* this week. (用 *I am not smoking this week*)
I *do* not *see* anybody today. (用 *I am not seeing*)
I *stay* at the Y.P.S. Hotel. (用 *I am staying*)
I must *go*. (用 *I must be going*)
He *gets* better now. (用 *he is getting*)
He *suffers* from a headache. (用 *he is suffering*)

也許有人要問"I must be going"這個事實爲什麼當作情況而不當作動作表明呢。正是這種英文思想法上的特點要加以注意。現在不定式（present indefinite）的用法現在正是越發有限制了，而已由或正由現在繼續式取而代之的範圍是非常之廣大的。實則，一個動作往往經過一個長的時間，以至動作變成情況，所以繼續式或完成式是比較妥當些。因此像 I *stay* at Y.P.S. Hotel 或 I *do* not *see* anybody today（現在不定式）這樣的句子，在英文思想法上，是和實在情形不相符合的。I stay 和 I do not see 似乎只表明一種經過很短的瞬間的動作。I am staying（現在繼續）at Y.P.S. Hotel 就是不僅這時候住在那旅館，而且今天早上今天晚上也還是住在那里。假如我今天不願意見客，我不特這時候不接見（I am not seeing them，現在繼續），而且今天上半天下半天也還是不接見的。

所以現在不定式大都用于三種場合。第一，指示習慣動作：如 *Do* you *play* tennis? / He *smokes*. 第二，用于一般陳述：如 The earth *moves*〔地球轉動〕/ The moon *waxes* and *wanes*〔月有圓缺〕/ The results *depend* on your own effort〔結果靠你自己的努力〕/ The balloon *goes* up by its own weight and lightness〔氣球由于它自己的輕重而上升〕/ It *pays* to advertise〔登廣告是合算的〕/ As soon as the vessel is filled, it *topples* over〔船一裝滿，就翻掉了〕在所有這些例句里實在沒有指明是現在的動作。第三，用于動詞本身儘夠指明一種長久的動作。有許多動詞是有這種性質的：know, see, realize, think, understand, fear, hate, love, like, live, be, remain 等等。例如：He *knows* (*feels, sees, realizes*) his

mistake〔他知道（覺得，明白，認識）他的錯誤〕/ I *think* you ought to go / I *understand* what you mean / I *fear* you are wrong / I *hate* to go alone / He *intends* to come back / You *forget* that you *owe* him a debt of gratitude〔你忘記你欠他的情〕Where *do* you *live?* / That *is* a mistake / That *remains* to be proved〔確否待證〕.

注意被動態是一定不移地指明這樣一種情況而非這樣一個動作：He *is killed* / The watch *is lost* / The jar *is broken* / I *am told* / You *are* not *allowed* / He *is* greatly *respected*〔他極受人敬重〕等等.

因此說凡用助動詞 to be 和 to have 造成的時制，一定是表明情況而非動作的，也未始不可.

過去不定式（past indefinite）（如 He *took* away my umbrella / We *won* / This *happened*）用起來當然比現在不定式更自由些，因爲大半的動作是屬于過去的. 一件事或者是'不久以前發生'（*happened* some time ago），或者'是現在發生的'（*is happening* now）. 這就是過去不定式所以和現在繼續式一樣是常用的原故.

11.11. 【存在和行爲】 在所有的英文動詞之中，動詞 to be 佔有一個很特殊的地位. 事實上，可以當作自成一類的看待，可能跟那些指示'成爲'的程序的類似動詞，如become, grow, get, turn 等放在一起. 動詞 to be 敘述主語的存在（is），其他的動詞則敍述主語的行爲（does）. 在下面這些句子里特別明顯：

（行爲） He *told* me to go alone. That was what he *did*.
You *left* the party in the middle of the dinner. You oughtn't to *have done* that.

You are the only person who *likes* sour things. All the others *don't*.
Some people *go* to church, and some *don't*.
(存在) Some people *are* sensitive to such remarks, others *are* not.
He *was* afraid to go alone. Indeed he *was*.
(關于這種區別，尚有其他例子，見 § 3.40)

這種區別的結果便是，既然動作的動詞可以有賓語，那末動詞 to be 決不會有賓語的，只可加補足語以補其意義之不足 (It is *important* / He is *dead* / The boy is *my son*). 因此，代名詞在動詞 to be 之後時，是用主位，而不用賓位.

It is *I*. [是我; 我哇.]
This is *he* who started the trouble. [是他先吵起來的.]
Who is it? [是誰呀? 誰呀?]
If it wasn't *he*, it was *somebody* else. [不是他，便是別的人.]

又，助動詞 do 可以跟別的動詞用在一起 (*does* not *go*, *does* not *wish*, *does* not *have*), 但 to be 卻沒有這樣用法 ("does not be" 是不曾見過的).* 動詞 to be 完全不可當作動作的動詞看待. 所以 "verb" 在中文里譯作 '動詞' 只有不適用于動詞 to be, 其他都可以. 在德文里，verb 叫做 '時詞' (*Zeitwort* ['tsaitvɔrt]="time-word"), 這個，在這一方面，是比較滿意的.

外動詞和內動詞

11.20. 【外動詞和內動詞】 這是平常最重要的一種動詞分類法. 在平常的文法書里，動詞分爲三類: (1) 外動詞, (2) 內動詞, (3) 助動詞. 這種區別是這樣重要，以至所有的英文字典里都注明一個動詞還是外動詞 (v.t. = verb transitive) 還

*助動詞如 must, can 之前也不可用 do, 但它們是不可變用的. 可變用的動詞中只有動詞 to be 是不可跟 do 用在一起的.

是內動詞 (v.i.=verb intransitive), 因爲不知道這一點,動詞便不會用得正確. 主要的區別乃是外動詞有賓語,但內動詞沒有. 照方面意念講來,其別區是: 在于外動詞,動作是射及(或達到)別的事物,而在于內動詞,動作是內凝于(或止于)主語本身. 下面列舉一些有趣的成對的內動詞和外動詞:—

內動詞	外詞動
I *fall* down. [跌]	I *felled* a tree. [砍倒]
I *rise* from bed. [起身]	I *raise* my pencil. [舉起]
I *lie* in bed. [躺臥]	I *lay* the book down. [放下]
He *was sitting* there. [坐]	He *set* his foot on England. [涉足]
He *looks* round. [張望]	He *sees* something. [看見]
He *listens* carefully. [聽]	He *hears* the order. [聽見]
You *are talking*. [談]	Can't you *say* something? [說]
Speak! [(你)說吧!]	I have nothing to *say*. [(無話可)說]

其他內動詞的例子如: live, run, go, come, fly, swim, walk, sleep. 最要記住的一件事是,內動詞不能直接帶賓語,而外動詞就能夠. 如 *see* (v.t.) the water, *enter* (v.t.) the garden 〔看見水,進花園〕可以用,但是 *swim* (v.i.) the water, *walk* (v.i.) the garden 〔泅水,走花園〕* 卻不可用.

許多動詞在某一特別上下文中是外動詞,而在另一上下文中卻是內動詞,在這些情形之中應該仔細留心慣用法的不同.

*注意在英文里 swim the water 是不通的,但是'泅水'在中文里卻是非常之通順的,這不妨當作'內動詞在形式上當外動詞用'的偶看待. 又,在中文里'走花園'固然也是不通的,然而在'走索','走路'卻又是很通的. 這也是內動詞當作外動詞用. 照譯者的意見,'泅水','走索','走路',如果把它們當作整個的詞兒看,那必然是內動詞了;但如果把它們那分成兩個觀念,那又是中文的一種慣用法,便是,只要在常理上推斷起來決無淆混的地方,內動詞儘可在形式上當作外動詞用,介詞是全然不需要的. 倘使硬要說'泅水'是'泅于水','走索'是'(作)走于索上(之游戲)','走路'是'于道路上行走',卻未免刻足適屨了. 要知道文法是爲語文而設,不是語文爲文法而設的.——譯者註.

例如 swim 和 walk 通常是內動詞，但在下列各成語里卻可當外動詞用：*swim* the channel〔泅過海峽〕，*swim* one's horse across〔策馬泅水而過〕，*walk* the hospital〔在醫院實習〕，*walk* the plank〔走跳板〕，* *walk* the street〔沿街賣笑，當野雞〕。(參看中文'走馬上任'，'走馬觀花'，'走漏風聲'。) 又，*talk* a language (English, French)，*talk* nonsense 可以用，但不可用 *talk* a story 或 *talk* this sentence.

仔細研究下列同一動詞作內動詞以及作外動詞的各種慣用法，並注意這種用法上的不同，往往完全看它和一個特殊詞兒或短語怎樣的聯合。

內動詞	外動詞
I am sure he *drinks*.	Let's *drink* his health. [舉杯祝其康健]
He can't *eat* now.	He will *eat* anything.
He *spoke* at the meeting. [演說]	Actor *speaks* his part badly. [說白]
You *talk* too much. [說話太多]	Don't *talk* nonsense. [不要胡說]
I shall not *move* (=take steps) in the matter. [採取步驟]	*Move* heaven and earth. [驚天動地] This *moved* him to anger. [引他動氣]
The ship *floats*.	*Float* a loan. [募集，發行(公債)]
You shall *hang* (=be hanged to death) for this. [處以絞罪]	*Hang* a picture on the wall. He *hangs* his head in shame.
The child walks before he *runs*. *Run* for your life. [逃命] Hope *runs* high. [希望蓬勃] River *runs dry*. [(河)乾涸]	*Run* a fox down. [窮追而獲] *Run* him to death. [使人疲于奔命] *Run* a candidate for office. [立候補者] *Run* a boat, a machine. [划船，開機器] *Run* a rope round his neck. [用繩索捆]
He *writes*.	He *writes* a letter.
I *believe*.	I *believe* you.
Do you *sing*?	*Sing* a song for us.

*此是海盜殘害俘虜的一種方法，用一塊跳板，一端懸空在水面上，一方面把俘虜的眼睛蒙起，而强迫他走上跳板，不上幾步，跳板一動，俘虜便跌下海里去了。

這里有一點可以注意，便是，在這每一對的兩個動詞之中，內動詞通常是含有一種更普遍的意義，往往是指一種普遍的習慣或能力：drink＝有喝酒的習慣，speak＝演說，float＝能浮起，run＝能跑，write＝寫字，believe＝相信（基督教），sing＝能唱歌．在另一方面，外動詞的用法，因爲它和一個賓語確實相聯的關係，所以老是更有限制，更其具體些．

又，注意 *consult* a person〔請教某人〕和 *consult with* a person〔與某商議〕的分別；又，*meet* a person＝'路上遇人'，*meet with* an accident＝'遇見某事；出事'，plan *meets with success*＝'計畫成功' / *know* a person＝'認識某人'，*know of* a person＝'聞名而未見面' / *shoot* a person＝'鎗斃'，但 *shoot at* a person or thing＝'向某人或某物射擊'．

11.21. 【內動詞和介詞】 可是要注意，內動詞和外動詞的分別往往純粹是造句法上的分別，完全關于動詞的能不能直接帶一個賓語．內動詞不能帶賓語，但可用一個介詞短語修飾它．例如 He comes the room 不可用，但是 He comes *into the room* 卻可用．實際上，He comes (v.i.) into the room 就和 He *enters* (v.t.) the room 相同，He was looking (v.i.) at the game 就和 He was *watching* (v.t.) the game 相同．然而，在文法上講起來，coming 和 looking 的內凝動作仍然不認爲是直接射及（或達到）目的物，而 entering 和 watching 的外射動作卻是如此的．

因爲有這點區別，內動詞是最常和一定的介詞聯合，甚至內動詞和介詞往往形成一個意義非常確定的短語．例如 look at＝to watch〔觀看，注視〕，look upon (it as shameful, as a

failure)＝to regard〔認爲〕, look up to＝to respect〔敬仰〕, look down upon＝to despise〔卑視〕, look into (a company's accounts)＝to search〔查閱〕. 從學生的觀點看來,要緊的是注意和內動詞聯合的那個介詞以及因此發展的新的意義. 好的字典應該常時表明什麽介詞用于什麽場合.

'袖珍'或'簡明牛津字典'(*The Pocket* or *Concise Oxford Dictionary*)對于介詞之用于任何特別場合說得很明白,而對于動詞作外動詞或內動詞的用法反不十分明白. 茲舉一例,並加說明,使得學生們可以在使用這兩本字典時獲得充分的利益. 例如在 dig 一條下([ ]內的字是爲作說明而加上的)便是:— "v.i. & t." [v.i. and v.t.]... "Turn up (soil) with spade or other implement or claws &c." [v.t., 因爲 'soil' 一詞放在括號以內]... "d. [=dig] the soil (*down, deep,* &c.)" [v.i., 因爲 'soil' 一詞不在括號以內]... "make (hole &c.) thus" [所以把 hole 放在括號內者,是表明可以用 'dig a hole', 因此是 v.t.]... "bring (buried object) *up* or *out* thus" [v.t.]... "make way *into* &c. thus" [v.i., 可以用 'dig into']... "thrust (one's nails, point) *into* something or *in*" [v.t., 可以用 'dig his nails *into* something' 或 'dig it *in*']... "(fig.) [=figuratively] make search (*for* facts &c., *into* documents &c.) or find *out* by search" [可以用 'dig *for* facts', 'dig *into* documents', 兩個都是 v.i., 但又可以用 'dig something *out*', v.t.]

所以學生們應該常時領會這些用于特別意義的特別介詞. 茲選擇一些比較有用或有趣的結合列舉于下:—

care *for* person or thing 心愛某人或某物
touch *upon* a topic (mention) 略提
dilate *upon* topic 縈說,詳述
refer *to* a subject 涉及,說及
hint *at* possible arrangement 暗示
insist *on* or *upon* something 堅持
persist *in* error 知過不改
consist *of* parts, *in* doing 由～而成,在于,存乎
desist *from* some attempt 中止企圖,某事作罷
refrain *from* bad language 口不出惡言
refrain *from* doing 抑制,愼戒
shrink *from* something objectionable 畏避可厭的事物
laugh *at* person or thing 嘲笑人或事物
laugh *over* some joke 一笑置之
live *on* food, fruit, etc. 靠食物,水果等生活
live *on* certain income 依賴某種收入生活

live *for* object in life 以人生某種目的爲樂而生活
hear *of* news, accident 聽說有某種消息或事件
hear *from* person (receive letters *from*) 聽到人的消息 (收到信)
die *of* illness, shame, *by* weapon, *from* a fall 死于疾病，羞死，死于刀下，跌死
improve *upon* something 于某事某物加以改良
bask *in* person's favour, *in* popularity, *in* sunshine 沐恩，孚物望，晒太陽
play *at* be*ing* a poet 裝扮詩人爲戲
pass *for* her husband (pretend to be) 假裝她的丈夫
confess *to* a feeling, a fault 生～之感；自認，自白
dispose *of* subject, person 解決事端，打發某人
apply *to* person *for* permission 請求人，求人允許
subscribe a newspaper [定閱報紙]，但 subscribe *to* fund, *to* a view, theory 認捐；同意，贊成；承認原理
thing admits *of* no delay 事情不容耽擱
deal *with* person, *with* subject, *in* cloth, dry goods 與人相處，對付；議論；賣布，賣乾貨
look *over* lesson 閱讀功課
talk *over* matter 談論事情，議事
glance *through* a book, *at* a person 瀏覽書籍，瞥見某人
think *about* subject, *of* some one absent 想到某項問題，憶及某人
reflect *upon* subject 回想或沈思某項問題
quarrel *with* person, *at* some point, *on* some topic 與人爭論，爲某點爭執，打筆墨官司
remonstrate *with* person 規勸某人
reason *with* person 與人理論
come *to* a bad situation 達于困難之境
lead *to* a result 奏效
thing happens *to* person 事情臨及某人之身，某人遭某事
stumble *upon* a discovery 偶然有所發現
idea occurs *to* person 念頭出自某人，心生一計
revelation dawns *upon* person 某人漸漸明白某種啓示
fall *in* love, fall *out* (quarrel) *with* person 鍾情，與人爭執
something falls *to* one's lot 某人幸有某事，某人當～之重任
burden falls *upon* person 責任落在人身上，負擔加在人身上
wait *at* table, *on* or *upon* (serve) person, *for* person or thing 侍宴，服侍某人，等待某人或某事
attend *to* business, guests 料理事務，招待賓客
venture *upon* an undertaking 貿然從事一種事業
send *for* doctor 打發人去請醫生
infringe *on* another's rights 侵犯別人的自由 (權利)
consent *to* agreement, request 承諾，應允
agree *to* suggestion, *with* person, *on* some point 容納提議，與人同意，在某點上同意

differ *from* another 此異于彼
crave *for*, long *for*, person or object 渴望，深冀，某人某物
despair *of* object 無～之望，斷念
aim *at* goal 瞄準目標 「求
comply *with* request 應許請求或要
argue *with* person, *about* topic, *against* opponent 與人議論，議論某題，辯論
correspond *with* person, 但 *to* analogous part or parallel 與人通信，交通；與某部分相當或類似
abstain *from* drink, etc. 戒酒等
what becomes *of* person? (what has happened *to* him?) 某人消息如何？
object *to* proposal 反對提議
proceed *with* business 重整業務
count *on*, rely *on*, reckon *on*, depend *on*, support 依賴或憑藉某種援助 「加注意
matter calls *for* attention 某事須
yield *to* person or his demands 屈服于某人或順從要求
indulge *in* bad habits 溺于惡習
plunge *into* water, new subject, new business 跳入水中，突然討論新的問題，急遽開始新事業
linger *at* or *around* a place, *over* subject of discussion 逡巡某地不去；耽延討論 「及
cry *over* spilt milk 覆水難收，後悔莫
jump *at* conclusion 陡作結論，陡然結束 「追求女人（'釘梢'）
chase *after* bandit, girl 追緝盜匪，
call *on* person 訪問人

上表所舉的僅僅是些內動詞帶介詞的例．形容詞，分詞和名詞又各有它們的特別介詞．有時兩個同語源的詞兒也許需要不同的介詞：derogate *from*〔貶抑，減除〕，但 derogatory *to* a person's reputation〔損壞人的名譽〕．別的詞兒也許當外動詞時不需要介詞，但當名詞時卻需要介詞，例如：*prefer* something〔寧取某物〕，但 *show preference for* desired object〔對于所求之物表示偏愛〕/ This *precedes* that〔這在那之先〕，但 This *takes precedence of* that (義同) / *consider* that poor man〔體恤窮人〕，但 *show consideration for* the poor (義同)/ *dislike* a person or thing〔嫌厭人或物〕，但 *conceive a dislike to* (或 *for*) a person or thing (義同).

11.22. 【內動詞當外動詞用】 有時候內動詞是當外動詞用的．這和上面在 § 11.20 所討論的動詞在某些場合當外動

詞，在別的場合當內動詞用的那些實例不同．在這里我們是討論某些動詞有一定的用法，它們仍然保有內動詞的意義，但顯然是可以帶賓語的．

(1) 第一，類如 *dream* a dream〔作夢〕，*die* a natural (或 easy) death〔壽終，善終（即非橫死）〕，*smile* a (sweet) smile〔笑一笑（笑一個甜密的笑）〕和 *sleep* the sleep (of the just)〔高枕而眠（無憂無慮的鼾睡）〕等，並沒有眞正的賓語，實則不過是動詞的複述而已．

(2) 第二，如 smile consent, smile acquiescence．這一類成語，即'以微笑表示承諾或默許之意'．承諾或默許不好'被笑'(smiled)，實則不過以微笑表示而已．其他如：

She *looked* her *consent*. [她以目表示承諾（頷首）.]
He *looked* the *thanks* he could not express. [從他眼光里發出非言語所可形容的感謝.]
He said nothing, but *looked* all *love* and *sympathy*. [他一句話也不說，但兩眼充滿了仁愛和同情.]
Mr. Astor said nothing, but *laughed dissent* (showed his dissent by a laugh). [. . . , 但大笑以表示異議.]

(3) 第三，也是最有趣的一類，便是如 *sleep* the day away, *talk* the night away, *cry* one's eyes out, *talk* the horse's hind leg off〔睡而度日，通宵談話，痛哭，絮絮多言〕的一類成語．注意在所有這些成語之中，是省去 until〔直至〕的觀念 (cry *until* the eyes are out, talk *until* the horse's hind leg is off)，即'睡得把白天都錯過了'，'談得把夜天都談跑了'，'眼睛都要哭掉了'，'說得馬的後腿都飛掉了'的意思．所以這些也可算是英文里取得經濟的種種方法之一．注意下列各例

中，賓語是一個受動作影響的名詞或代名詞（往往用 oneself），後面跟一個描述動作的後果的詞兒或短語。

sleep the clock round (sleep until the clock comes round to the same point, i.e., twelve hours) [睡了十二小時]
sleep off a headache, sleep the headache off [睡得頭痛好了]
dream the hours away [虛度時光，終日在睡夢中（醉生夢死）]
cry one's heart out [哭至斷腸，椎心泣血]
cry oneself to sleep [哭得睡着了]
laugh a person (或 an idea) out of court [笑得人無地自容（或笑得人難以爲情）]
laugh a person out of a bad habit [笑得使人除去壞習慣]
laugh him down (silence him by laughing) [笑得使他沈默下來]
look him into submission, into doing something [看得他垂首就範，或使他做某事]
look yourself blind [看到眼睛瞎]
look a person out of countenance [看得人侷促不安（怪難爲情的）]
look one full in the face [直視其面而無愧懼之色]（這個實例不是含有動作的任何後果的.）
eat oneself out of house and home (until one is broke) [吃得傾家蕩產]
drink oneself ill [飲酒成病]
drink oneself out of a job (until he loses it) [因飲酒而失去職業]
drink away the night [飲至天明]
drink a person under the table (until he is drunk and fall under the table) [醉倒，醉如泥]
drink away one's reason [酒迷心竅，酒醉而失其本性]
talk oneself hoarse (until one's voice is hoarse) [說得力竭聲嘶]
talk one's way to success (attain success by talking) [說成功]
talk a child to sleep [講故事或談心，使小兒入睡]
talk black into white [(說黑爲白)，指鹿爲馬]
talk one to death [講殺人]
talk him round (until he changes his opinion and agrees with you) [說動人，勸服人]
talk him down (until he yields or gives up) [說服人]
talk her into marrying the butler [說得她（願意）嫁給屠夫]

所有 sleep, dream, cry, laugh, look, drink, eat, talk 這些詞兒，用在這里，就意義講還是正式的內動詞.

主動和被動

11.30. 【'態'之名稱的解釋】 動作有一個很重要的方面，即主動和被動的區別，在文法里叫做'態' (voice). 這名字只要僅僅把它當做空泛的命名，正和別的任別名稱一樣，並不妨事. 總之這個名稱的用法，不應使我們想到它跟其他所有的'方面'有任何不同之點，或者有什麽神祕的作用. 它的作用僅僅是表明一個動作方面. 我們只可把它當做一個命名，切不可深究它的意義. William James 在他的"Talks to Teachers"〔與教師論教學法〕一書里敍述一個故事，舉出硬要想把"voice"這名稱弄得明白因而生出的一種悲慘結果. 一次，教師對一個小學生講: "Suppose that you kill me: you who do the killing are in *the active voice*, and I, who am killed, am in *the passive voice*." 〔假設你把我殺死了；你是殺我的，便居于"active voice" (主動態)，而我呢，被你殺死的，便居于"passive voice" (被動態).〕 那小學生說: "But how can you speak if you're killed?" 〔但你已經給我殺死了，怎樣還會說話呢?〕 (在英文里，"voice" 通常作'聲音'解，所以那小孩子誤會了). 那末教師就回答她. "Oh, well, you may suppose that I am not yet quite dead!" 〔唉，唉，你不妨當我還沒有絕氣，還能夠說話呢!〕 第二天，教師在課堂上教那小孩子講 the passive voice, 她就說道: "It's the kind of *voice* you speak with when you are not quite dead" 〔就是你還沒有絕氣時候

說話的那種聲音〕.* 這是講的這個英文名稱，卽如我們中文里把 voice 譯成'態'，也不可認眞把它當做什麼'狀態'或'態度'的意思，其結果也必定是弄得'牛頭不對馬嘴'的呀.

11.31. 【被動態的構成】 在英文里要造成被動態，是用動詞 "to be" 的任何形式加上過去分詞 (p.p. = past participle). 無論被動態的形式是怎樣的變化，這公式卻是一定不移的. 試將下列主動態中動詞的變化和被動態中動詞 "to be" 的同等的變化互相比較，看看它們完全一致到何等地步.

	主動 (動詞變化)	被動 ("to be" 變而過去分詞不變)
現在不定式	I *see*	I *am* seen
過去不定式	I *saw*	I *was* seen
未來不定式	I *shall see*	I *shall be* seen
現在完了式	I *have seen*	I *have been* seen
過去完了式	I *had seen*	I *had been* seen
未來完了式	I *shall have seen*	I *shall have been* seen
現在進行式	I *am seeing*	I *am being* seen
無限式	*to see*	*to be* seen
完了無限式	*to have seen*	*to have been* seen
分詞	*seeing*	*being* seen
完了分詞	*having seen*	*having been* seen

于此可見造成被動態的各種時制的時候，只要把動詞 "to be" 變用 (decline) 一下，跟變用其他任何動詞一樣，而同時過去分詞的形式仍舊不變.

通常只有外動詞可以成爲被動態，例如把主動態的 "Jack *kills* (v.t.) Jill" 變成被動態的 "Jill *is killed* by Jack"，這是

*此故事爲 Jespersen 所引用，見 "Philosophy of Grammar" 第 164 頁.

非常容易的，但是要把主動態的"I *sleep* (v.i.)"變成一種被動態—— 卽 is slept by me——那可不容易，因爲這個沒有意義. 但是，內動詞後附介詞的，卻是很可以造成被動態，如"The accounts *must be looked into*"〔帳目必須查核過〕(由主動態的"We must *look into* the accounts"變成，參看 § 12.41

【練習九十三】 將下列各主動短語變成被動短語. 爲練習起見，主動態之主語不妨省去.

1. We *spent* a great deal of money.
2. We *have spent* a great deal of money.
3. They *give* him the rank of a minister.
4. They *have given* him, etc.
5. They *are giving him*, etc.
6. They *show* a picture to the audience.
7. They *will show* a picture, etc.
8. They *were showing* a picture, etc.
9. They *have* already *shown* a picture, etc.
10. *Having told.* *Considering.*
    To tell. Without *seeing.*
    To have told. *Having known.*
    Must realize. *Is looking* for.
    Should regard. *Will have finished.*

11.32. 【被動態的用法】 在 Jack kills Jill 和 Jill is killed by Jack 兩者之間，顯然是沒有什麼了不得的區別，不過是一句話的兩種說法吧了. 但是有許多地方，可必須用被動式，或者用被動式比用主動式要好得多. 例如報館記者發覺了有人被刺，但是無法知道凶手是誰，那末他所能報告的當然只是"A man *was murdered* in his flat on Avenue B——, etc."〔某人在 C. 路其住宅內被刺身死〕. 因爲在被動態中，可以避免敍出動作的主人(卽主動者). 有時候，主動者是不明的 (如上例)，或者很不一定 (*it is said*——by whom?)〔據說，聽說——誰說

呢，並無一定的人〕，或者是文義已明，大可省卻的（*student was dismissed*——by the school authorities of course）〔學生開除了——當然是被學校當局開除了〕，或者對于聽者及說者的關係不及對于受那種動作影響者之深（*a house was burnt*——we are interested in the house burnt and not in the fire which burnt it）〔房子燒掉——我們所關心的是被燒掉的房子，而不是燒了房子的那個火〕。還有時候，如果把一件事情的主動人說了出來，反而不妙，不討好，如下例：—

So the Kuomintang *was turned* into a personal organ and China *was sold* through the disgraceful treaty.

I *was given* to understand [聞得，得知]——never mind by whom——that no more should be written or published in the papers on this topic.

【練習九十四】 下列被動表現法均極常見，試習其用法：—

It is said that	It is proposed that
It is rumoured that	It is understood that
It is reported that	It has been decided that
I have been told that	Is considered to be
I am told that (to)	Is regarded as
I am surprised to	Is supported by
I am accustomed to	Is rendered possible
He was annoyed at	The story is told that
She is disappointed to	The fact is established that
No reason has been given	The news has been spread that
No arrangement has been made	It is considered best that (to)
It has been pointed out that	It should be remembered that
A plan has been suggested to	He has been invited to
You are requested to	A telegram was sent
It is forbidden to	A meeting will be held, etc.
I have been asked to	A proposal has been made

11.33. 【主動名詞和被動名詞】 這一章雖然是專論動詞的各方面，但是有一點應該指明，那就是名詞和形容詞往往也包

括或含有主動的或被動的動作。英文的詞尾 -er 或 -or 表明事情的主動者，而詞尾 -ee 表明接受者或受這動作的影響者。試對照下列的詞兒：—

employer [雇主，東家]	employee [受雇者，雇員]
payer [交付人，付款人]	payee [收受人；收款人]
addresser [發信人；陳述者]	addressee [收信人；聽受者]
lessor (lease+or) [租主，出租人；房東]	lessee (lease+ee) [租借人，租戶；房客]
vendor [賣主，出售人（用于法律語中）]	vendee [買主（用于法律語中）]

又，注意 *appointee* (person appointed) 〔被任命者；被指定者〕，*nominee* (person nominated for office) 〔被指名爲候選人者，受任(職)者〕，*committee* (board to which certain duties are committed or entrusted) 〔委員會〕，*referee* (judge of games, i.e. person to whom questions are referred) 〔評判員，公證人〕。詞尾 -er 是非常之普通的，如：

fisher	seeker	receiver	traveller
teacher	finder	sender	shop-keeper
singer	preacher	hawker	hair-dresser

mixer (of drinks) [(飲料之) 混合人]
founder (of societies) [(會社之) 創辦人]
owner (of a car) [(車) 主]
subscriber (to a paper) [(報紙之) 定戶]

又，注意下列各詞兒的 -or:

instructor	guarantor	debtor	confessor
professor	sailor	creditor	originator

加 -ed 的過去分詞往往是當做名詞用，以表被動的主語，如 the *accused*, the *unemployed*, the *wounded*, the *deceased* 〔被告，失業者，傷者，已故者〕。

11.34. 【主動形容詞和被動形容詞】 形容詞里面也含有主動和被動的動作，這個也要注意：

contemptu*ous* (鄙視的)..... contempt*ible* (可鄙的)
desir*ous* (願望)..... desir*able* (合意的)
credul*ous* (輕信的)..... cred*ible* (近情可信的)
incredul*ous* (懷疑的)..... incred*ible* (荒唐難信的
forget*ful* (易忘的)..... unforget*able* (難忘的)
respect*ful* (恭敬的)..... respect*able* (可敬的)

詞尾 -able, -ible 通常指被動方面 (passive aspect), 如:

eat*able*	vis*ible*	permiss*ible*	understand*able*
drink*able*	count*able*	leg*ible*	intellg*ible*
aud*ible*	unbeliev*able*	question*able*	digest*ible*

但有時也指主動方面 (active aspect), 如 *susceptible*, capable of receiving; *perishable*, easy to perish; *forcible*, by use of force. 夠稀奇的是 suspicious 這個詞兒,既有 "prone to suspect" (He is *suspicious* by nature 〔生性猜忌〕) 的主動意義, 又有 "arousing suspicion" (His conduct is very *suspicious* 〔形跡可疑〕) 的被動意義. 像 fearful, frightful, terrible 這類詞兒所指明的方面,中國學生往往誤會了. 應該用 I *fear* very much 〔我很怕〕 的地方,不可說 "I am very *fearful*" 〔我很可怕〕 (a *thing*, it, is fearful, 但 a *person* fears). 試看下例:—

誤	正
I am very terrible	I am very much terrified
I am very frightful	I am very much frightened
I am very delightful	I am very delighted
I am very interesting	I am very interested
I am very exciting	I am very excited

好的字典通常都注明一個形容詞是適用于人,還是適用于事物的. 比如'人焦急' 可以說 A person is *anxious*, 但'事情或處境危急' 卻不可用 A thing or situation is anxious (事急

="critical").* '事情或物件有趣' 要說 A thing is *interesting*, 但通常 '人感覺有趣' 只好說 A person is *interested*, 除非說這人跟人交朋友或者著作者筆下有趣, 那末才可以說 "He is *interesting* (as an author or friend) to others". 一種情景或環境可以 '令人迴憶往事', 這可以用 A scene or situation is *reminiscent* of some former situation, 但是 '人' 卻不可用 reminiscent, 只可說 A person is *reminded* of that former situation 〔回憶往事〕. 又如 '事物或佈置令人滿意' 應該用 A thing or arrangement is *satisfactory*, 但是 '人滿意' (=感覺滿意) 卻非說 A person is *satisfied* 不可. 所以我們學英文時最要時時刻刻注意什麼形容詞適用于人, 什麼形容詞適用于事物, 或者兩者都適用.

現在分詞 (表主動) 和過去分詞 (表被動) 的主要區別, 在 §2.33 里已經講得很明白了 (a *terrifying* noise, 但 a *terrified* look 等).

11.35. 【僞主動態】 在這種用法之中, 又可以發見英語表現法的經濟的另一實例, 這是很可以喜悅的一件事. 正如英國人寧說 sleep the clock round 而不用那個較長的 sleep until the clock comes round 的情形一般, 他們說 '牆的顏色暗黑得很' 時用 the wall *looks* gloomy 而不用 the wall seems dirty

*但是, 由于熟語的巧妙, 卻有 an *anxious* moment [煩躁不安的時刻] 這一成語. 其他如 a *lazy* time, a *dying* wish, *easy* money [偷懶時候. 臨終遺言, 儻來之財] 這一類成語 (已見 §9.20) 之中, 也可以發見這種邏輯上的歪曲. 因爲 moment 或 time 本身都不會是 anxious 或 lazy, wish 本身不會是 dying, money 本身也不會有什麼 easy 或 hard 之分, 所謂 anxious, lazy, dying, easy 是指人或其手段而言.

when you look at it, 雖然我們明明知道牆決不會生出眼睛來看東西的。這一種便是'僞主動態'(false active)的例,因爲要用那較合邏輯的被動態時,非借重較笨的表現法不可,因此用這種'僞主動態'來頂替蒙混了。

可以這樣用的只有某些一定的動詞,並非個個動詞都可以的。這種僞主動態的動詞都載明在字典里。下面舉一些比較常見的例:—

The book *sells* well (really it is sold).
The poem *reads* smoothly (is smooth when you read it).
This pen *writes* very smoothly (really you write with it).
The song *sounds* very beautiful.
That rose *smells* wonderful(ly).
This fish *smells* awful(ly).
This chicken *tastes* delicious.
This window *looks* out on a patch of green lawn.
This stove *cooks* very well.
The sofa *measures* twelve feet.
Mine *compares* favourably with yours.
This kind of cloth *washes* well (stands washing).
This pipe does not *draw* easily (you cannot draw the smoke through it easily).

完成動作和未完動作

11.40. 【完成動作和未完動作】 如 I have eaten〔我吃過了〕和 He has come back〔他回來了〕這一類的表現法是屬于'終結方面'(conclusive aspect),因爲它們是說一種動作已經完成了。這里所表明的主要觀念不在動作本身,反而是成爲那種動作結果的一種情況:並不是說 I ate〔我吃〕或 He came back〔他回來〕,而是說'我在吃過了飯(肚子不餓)的情況之

中'或者'他在已經回來了(不是在外面或沒有出去)的情況之中'. 因此這種表現法是表明成爲某一過去動作之結果的一種現在情況.

所以,這種形式,卽所謂'完了時制'(perfect tense),是屬于終結方面(表明已完成的動作),而不是如原始那樣指時間的. 這同一方面可以有'現在'(I have eaten),有'過去'(I had eaten)或'未來'(I shall have eaten). 把'時間意念'和'方面意念'分開來,而不把它們混在'時制'那個意念之內,這樣就清楚得多了,其實'時制'便是時間和方面合併起來的一樣東西.

中文助詞的'了'(輕讀[lə])完完全全是表明這種終結方面,而不僅僅是指過去而言. '下雨了'是說正在下雨,已經開始下雨,而不是下過了雨. '快要下雨了'就是說現在已經達到馬上就要下雨的一種情況(成爲可能的未來動作之結果的現在情況). 又,比較'米快要完了'(The rice is running out / We haven't got much rice left). '事不成了','事糟了'(The plan is doomed to failure / The thing has been spoiled)也是指的這種終結方面.

11.41. 【現在完了和時間副詞】 爲了現在完了是指一種現在的情況,所以照英文的慣用法,不可和指過去的副詞同用,雖則我們明知這動作是發生在過去的時間. 例如"I *have come* back *yesterday* 是不行的. 這動作誠然是發生在過去的時間(這只可用 I *came* back yesterday),但是我們是說的現在的情況(應該用 I *have come* back now). 又,比較這兩句:

He *has written a* letter *now*. [他此刻信寫好了.]
He *wrote* a letter *just now*. [他方纔寫好一封信(寫好不久).]

第一句是說明現在的情況，第二句是說明過去的動作。

【練習九十五】 本來發生于過去的動作，往往最容易弄錯，把它作當做現在的情況，又插入指過去時間的副詞. 下列四句，如有錯誤，須加改正：—

1. I have met him several times this week.
2. I have met him several times last week.
3. He has lost some money in business last year.
4. We have talked over this matter in his house last night.

11.42. 【完了的用法】 (1) 下列各例說明完了時制的正常用法. 注意這些例句中指的是一種'情況'(condition)，或個人的'經驗' (experience)，'經歷' (record) 或綿延及于一個長時期的'成就' (achievement).

What *have* you *got* there? (現在情況)

I've *forgotten* what he said in the letter. (現在情況，比較: "I *forgot* to tell you.")

I *have* not *seen* more than three such vases in my life-time. (長時期的經驗)

He *has travelled* a great deal. (現在情況: He knows a great deal about foreign countries.)

I *have known* him for a long time. (長時期的經驗: 此例及下列二例，參看 § 11.61, "4")

I *have* always *regarded* you as the ablest man of the party. (長時期)

I *have* always *wanted* to see you.

He *has* repeatedly *captured* the first prize in college contests.

In his service as a diplomat, he *has shaken* hands with kings and queens, *(has) sat* at the same table with the greatest poets and philosophers, and *(has) seen* all that is worth seeing in the country. (經驗)

The affair *has turned* out differently from what he expected.

I *have said* what I wanted to say.

S—— *has graduated* from Nankai. (即 He has the standing [資格] of a Nankai grandua e; 比較: "He *graduated* from Nankai last summer.")

We *have worked* together and *played* together as children; we have *quarrelled* and *made up* many times, but we *have* never *ceased* to be very fond of each other. (長時期)

He *has written* several volumes of poetry. (經歷)

He *has studied* at Oxford and Berlin, two of the best universities in Europe. (這是他的資格，但如人家問 "Where did he study?" 這一句，須回答 "He *studied*, etc.")

The mother says, "I have *cared for* him, *sent* him to college, and *given* him the best of everything in life."

(2) 現在完了和過去不定時制的區別，可由下列一段假想的談話中看出：—

Scrupps: Where's Thomas?
Howard: He *has gone* away. (現在情況)
Scrupps: I didn't know that. When *did* he *go*? (過去動作)
Howard: He *went* away on Monday. (過去動作)
Scrupps: What's he doing? *Have* you *got* any news from him? (現在情況)
Howard: Yes. He *sent* me a telegram from Cologne. (過去動作)

這其間的區別之點是：(1) 現在完了指現在，而過去不定時制指過去；(2) 現在完了說明情況，而過去不定時制（除非與動詞 "to be" 同用）則說明動作；(3) 因此現在完了經過一個長時期，而過去不定時制（通常）說明一霎時。 如果說 *Did* you *see* the President? 時，是問人看見過沒有（一個動作）；但如問 "*Have* you *seen* T—— lately? 是問人最近幾天以內（綿延的時期）看見了沒有？ 所以 "I *saw* him just now" 或 "I just *saw* him" (一霎時) 可以說得，但 "I *have* not *seen* him for a long time" (長時期) 是指一個時期而言。 又，注意下列這些通則的表現法：—

This is the best book he ever *wrote*.
但: Of all the books he *has* ever *written*, this is the best.

It was the longest funeral procession I ever *attended*

但: Of all the funeral processions I *have* ever *attended*, this was the longest.

(3) 用于 "since" 的場合時,我們老是說'自從某時以後或自從某事發生(一霎時)以來,別的事發生了(since some time ago or since s mething *happened*, something else has happened), 如 Since he arrived yesterday, he *has* not *been seen* 〔自從他昨天到了以後,還沒有人看見過他〕. 這句的意思是他'到了'——比方說昨天下午六點鐘(一霎時),但從那時一直到此刻(長時期),'沒有人看見過他'. 細讀下列各例:—

Since that quarrel (Since they *quarrelled*), they *have* never *met* (或: *spoken* to each other) again.

I *have* not *been* able to write a single word since last week.

Lord Lytton *has made* half a dozen calls since his arrival.

There *have been* three floods in China since 1910.

Husbands and wives *have quarrelled* since human marriage *began*

Man *has sinned* since the world *began*.

I *have* not *been* to Europe since I *return* I in 1910.

He *has joined* the communists since his mother *died*.

Many things *have happened* since you *went* away.

He *was* once *bitten* by a dog during his childhood, and since then, he *has* never *dared* to come near a dog.

The patient *has made* great progress since he *entered* the hospital.

(4) 過去完了表明過去某一時的'終結方面' (Conclusive Aspect), 例如:—

He *had arrived* before me (*or* before I arrived).

When I arrived, he *had signed* the check already.

It *had begun* to rain before I started, so I was well provided.

They *had decided* to go already, so I could not say anything.

The girl *had been neglected* by her aunt with whom she was living (consequently she looked very thin, etc.).

I *had* not *been* able to send him any money.
Still he *had* not *appeared*.
I did not go to meet him, because I *had* not *been* notified.

"I had intended", "I had expected" 這一類成語往往是表明'有意'或'期望'做的事卻從未發生過.

I *had intended* to call on you yesterday afternoon (but some friend called, so I was not able to go).
I *had expected* some help from him (which never came).
I *had thought* some sort of arrangement might be made (but later realized that this was impossible).

(5) 未來完了表明未來某一時的終結方面,如:一

At fifty, you *will have made* enough money to retire comfortably.
By that time, Freddie *will have grown* up into a big boy, and Eda most probably *will have been married*.
You post this letter now, so that when you go to see him the day after tomorrow, he *will* surely *have received* it already.

(6) "Have had", "had had". 這個結合,我國學生往往弄不分清. 其實這個很簡單,因爲第一個 have 或 had 是作助動詞(如在 have come, have been 中),而第二個 had 是作本動詞用的. 在英文里,作本動詞用的 have 甚至可用于被動態:

Flour *can be had* at 10 cents a pound.
Nothing is *to be had* there (=There is nothing to buy at that place).

因此 had 在 "have had" (指現在), "had had" (指過去) 中作本動詞的用法便不難了解了. 注意作本動詞用的 have, had 讀 [-æ-], 決無弱式.

Look here, we've *had* enough of this. (Don't make any more trouble.)
Have you *had* your dinner? Thanks, I've *had* mine already.
Waley *had had* (i.e., had gone through) a most unpleasant experience in his first African trip.

【練習九十六】 試讀下列各句，並說明所以用完了時制或過去不定式的理由；如有錯誤，可即行改正：—

1. *Haven't* you *eaten* enough at last night's dinner?
2. I always *regarded* (*have regarded*?) this as a risky business.
3. While he was principal of the middle school, he *has* always *been* on the best terms with the Bureau of Education.
4. The company became bankrupt, and as a result, the outstanding debts *are* (*were*? *have been*?) left unpaid.
5. A great deal *was* (*has been*?) written on the subject of extra-territoriality.
6. News *has been* (*was*?) received from home saying that his grandmother is dead.
7. The patient *recovered* (*is recovering*? *has recovered*?) since he came under my treatment.
8. This was the second marriage for both the bride and bridegroom. They both *had* (*had had*?) a most unhappy marital experience. Both *were* (*had been*?) very unhappy in their first marriage. Since the second marriage, they *live* (*have lived*? *are living*?) most happily together.
9. Of course your suggestion was received with great applause. Nobody *had thought* of it before.
10. *Have* you *seen* the famous spiritualist when he was in Shanghai last December?

11.43. 【未完成：進行式的用法】 有兩種時制形式是屬于'非終結方面'的：(1) '繼續' (continuous) 或 '進行' (progressive) (I am writing You are listening) 以及 (2) '完了繼續' (perfect continuous) (I have been writing / You have been listening)。這第二式的兩個例句卽 '我已經寫了一些時間，此刻仍然在寫着'，'你已經聽了一些時間，現在仍然在聽着' 的意思。

甲于現在動作的正常形式是 '現在進行式' (present progressive) 而實在不是現在不定式 (present indefinite)，這在

§11.10 已經說過了. 我們說 "At this time, some people *are dying* (非 die), some *are being married* (非 are married) and some *are being born* (非 are born) into this world". 又如, 'Look here, I *am holding* (非 I hold) my book".

過去進行式表明過去某事正在進行中——尤指另一事發生(happened)之時;某事正在進行之中 (was going on). 如:

I *was reading* upstairs, when I *heard* the windows shaking and bottles clinking in the cupboard. [正在樓上看書的時候,我聽見窗戶震動的聲音,碗櫥里的瓶子丁丁當當地響.]

They *were dancing* and *drinking*, when the police *broke in*.

I *was waiting* in the station when I *saw* a woman's face, which seemed very familiar to me.

I *was looking* at the sailing clouds when some one *slapped* me on the back.

注意上列各例中 when 的位置與中文中'當～之時'不同. 這個句式比較 "When I was looking . . ., some one slapped . . ." 的另一排列法更其普通.

【練習九十七】 將下列各句譯成英文, 當心 when 一詞應置于何處:—

1. 正在彷徨不定 (hesitating) 之時, 我們看見前面一輛汽車開來.
2. 他正講了一半, 他的太太走出來了.
3. 我正坐在大椅看報, 忽然A跑進來.
4. 我們都已熟睡了, 忽然聽見窗外嘩剝的響.

11.44. 【分詞和終結方面】 被動態之通常指明已完成的動作,這是它的特點. 一件事情'被做' (is done), 它是已經做好了. 如果一個人'被殺' (is killed), 那末他是已經給人家殺掉了. 一隻瓶子'打壞' (is broken), 那它已經壞了,一隻錶'丟了' (is lost), 它是已經失掉了. 非終結的被動態 (non-con-

clusive passive voice) 的表現法比較少見，如 A man *is being killed* 〔人正被殺掉〕/ A picture *is being shown* at the theatre 〔影片正在戲院里開演〕.

因爲這個原故，過去分詞（用于被動態）表完成的動作（終結方面），而現在分詞（用于進行式）表未完成的動作（非終結方面）.（當然另外還有現在分詞表主動方面而過去分詞表被動方面的那一種分別.）例如 *boiling* water 是仍在滾沸中的開水，而 *boiled* water 便是滾沸過了的開水. A *returning* traveller 〔踏上歸途的旅客〕還在路上走，而 a *returned* student 卻是已經回到本國來的留學生. 又，參照 the *growing* boy 〔正在發育中的男孩〕和 the *grown*-up man 〔成人〕的不同 (見 § 2.33).

要以被動態表達非終結方面，那就非用 being 不可: the officer *being* elected 〔正在遴選中的職員〕/ the course *being* decided upon 〔正在裁奪中的方針〕. 因此可得一表如下:—

	終結	非終結
主動	having elected	electing
被動	elected (或: having been elected)	being elected

【練習九十八】 細讀下列各句，並視其屬于終結方面，抑屬于非終結方面:—

1. The man being looked for.
2. The watch lost yesterday.
3. The party exploring the North Pole.
4. The company being formed.
5. The company formed.
6. The judge passing the verdict.
7. The man being tried.
8. The man being held for ransom.
9. The problem being discussed.

10. The house being built.
11. A person having held three posts successively.
12 A person holding three posts now.
13. Three battles fought and won.
14. The war being waged against the communists.

開始·繼續·終止

11.50. 【開始·繼續·終止】 開始,繼續,終止三方面,在英文里是用 (a) begin to 或 begin ～ing, (b) keep ～ing 等, (c) stop ～ing 或 cease ～ing 這些表現法來表達的.

(a) **begin to 等.** 這一方面在英文里應用的範圍比較在中文里更廣. 唯其如此,我們更應該細心研究. 例如'疑心起來','正萌此意' 須用 "I *begin to* suspect", "I *am beginning to* think" 而不用 "I suspect", "I think", 這時候是說'懷疑'或'意思的轉變' 循着一個漸次的步驟而來. 其他的例如下:—

begin to realize	am beginning to suspect
began to understand	am beginning to fear
began to get tired of	is beginning to decay
began to repent	has begun to be talked about
begin to think otherwise	had begun to play

Begin 後跟一個加 -ing 的動詞也是常用的: *begin* build*ing* at once *begin* tell*ing* me a story / *begin* wash*ing* his car〔(房子) 立刻動工起造,開始講故事,開始洗車子〕.

(b) **Keep ～ing 等.**

keep going	went on reading
don't keep telling me that	remain sitting
keep on talking	remain living with him
goes on raining	continue standing

我們可以說 *continue to* talk 或 *continue* talk*ing*, 但不可說 "keep to talk" 或 "remain to talk". 重複副詞 on and on 也常用: He talked *on and on* 〔他繼續說下去〕/ He ran *on and on* 〔他向前走個不停 (前行復前行)〕.

(c) **stop ~ing: stop to.** 這兩個表現法的意義是相反的. You never *stop to* think 是 '自始至終不加思索', 而 You never *stop* think*ing* 卻是一刻不停地加以思索的意思. 在另一方面, *cease* pray*ing* 和 *cease to* pray 意義正相同, 都是說 '停止祈禱' (stop praying).

He did not even *stop to take* a drink.
A never *stopped to look* at a lady; B never *stopped looking* at ladies.
I have never *stopped (ceased) loving* you
Many people *cease to study* when they have *ceased going* to school.
H—— has never *ceased to believe* in you.
Unless you two *stop fighting*, I will call in the police.

長久和暫時

11.60. 【霎時和期間】 由于時間的久暫, 動作可看做 '暫時的' (punctual), 卽一霎時發生的, 或者 '長久的' (durative), 卽綿延一個時期的. 明瞭了這一方面, 在動詞的正當用法上便可以思過半了. 這分別可用前面已經舉出的兩個例來說明.

Husbands and wives *have quarrelled* (久) since human marriage *began* (暫). (§ 11.42, "3")
I *was reading* (久) upstairs, when I *heard* (暫) the windows shaking, etc. (§ 11.43)

這個 '久暫方面' 在使用 begin to 這一類短語時也不可不注意到. From that day, he *began to* lose hope 比較只用 he

lost hope 恰切些；因爲'失望'是需時較久的一個步驟，而 began to〔開始〕只表明某一時間以內 (that day) 發生的事. 所以，又如 From *the third day*, the patient *began to* recover 一句比較只用 the patient *recovered* 恰切些. '身體恢復'這步驟需要幾天或幾星期的綿延時間，而'開始恢復'卻可以在某一時間以內即便發生的.

不定時制的動詞中只有一部分指'霎時'，而'完了'，'繼續'，和'完了繼續'各時制 (perfect, continuous and perfect continuous tenses) 卻全是指一個延長的'期間'而言.

11.61. 【暫時動詞和長久動詞】 在英文里，我們可以發見許多成對的動詞或動詞短語，其意義差不多相同但是屬于不同的時間方面. 例如我們在某一特別時間以內'結識某人' (*got acquainted* with a person)，那末從此便'和他相識'或'認識他' (*know* him) 了：got acquainted 是暫時的，而 know 是長久的. 男女一經'鍾情' (falls in love) (暫時)，那末便'在戀愛中' (is in love) 了 (長久). 我們可以在一秒鐘內'把人喚醒' (*wake* a man *up*)，但他也許因此通宵'睡不着' (*lie awake*) 了. 其他的例子如：

暫	久		暫	久
get [得]	have [有]		receive [收到]	keep [保有]
learn [得知]	know [知道]	['暫']	get frightened [受驚]	fear [恐懼]
remind [回憶]	remember [記得]	(或	arrive [達到]	stay [居留]

動詞 "to be" 最足以代表長久動詞，而動詞 "to do" 最足以代表暫時動詞. 一個人'懶惰或不誠實' (*is* lazy or dishonest)，即在睡眠中也'是'懶惰或不誠實的. 在另一方面，一個人也許今天'偷' (steal) 了東西而明天不偷. 我們不喜歡一個人，往往

不是爲了'他的所行所爲'(what he *does*)而是爲的'他的爲人'(what he *is*). 值得注意的一些獨特的暫時動詞如下例:—

That *reminds* me I have still two letters to write.
It *occurred* to me we might send Miss Ch—— along.
He *went* to bed and *fell* asleep. ('睡覺了'在英文里的正當說法是用 *is asleep, is sleeping* 或 *has fallen asleep.*)
I *came* to the conclusion that.... (很少用 *I concluded.*)

這種久暫動詞的區別有四種實際效果. (1) 要以暫時動詞來表達長久動作,我們不得不用'完了','繼續','完了繼續'等長久時制之任何一項. 如 come 是暫時動詞,但要用它表明一個延長的動作,則不妨用 I've *come* to know him. Stop 也是一個暫時動詞,但我們可以用 I *have* never *stopped* lov*ing* you, 以表明一個長時期.

(2) 要以長久動詞來表達暫時動作,我們不得不用 come to, began to 這一類的輔助短語. 如 know 是長久動詞,然而'開始知道'(暫時)的動作可以用 came to know, learned to know, began to know 這一類的短語表達.

(3) 許多長久動詞,如 know, understand, think, believe, regard, consider, value, despise, hate, love, fear 等,本身儘夠表明它們的長久的性質了. 這些詞兒通常不需要繼續時制以表明一種延長的情況. 例如 I *know* (決非 I am knowing) you are wrong / I *despise* (決非 am despising) that fellow / I *believe* (非 am believing) he is in love.

(4) 用這些詞兒時,在平常要用完了繼續時制才達得出的意思,只要用完了便夠了.

I *have known* him for years. (實在等于 I *have been making* friends with him for years. "I have been knowing" 不是英文句法. I have known him 雖則是'完了'時制,卻不是說'識認他'的那個動作業已完成或完了. 我在今日此時仍然認識他.)

I *have* always *believed* in your innocence. (這也並非'停止了相信的動作'之意.)

I *have* always *regarded* you as a talented beggar. (And am still regarding you that way now.)

He *has remained* a symbol of honesty and purity to me.

He *has* always *stood* at the head of his class.

11.62. 〔介詞的持續性〕 這種霎時和期間的區別,介詞也受它的影響. 表明霎時的介詞之中要推 at 和 on 爲首,而表明期間的普通的詞兒是 in, during 和 pending. 比方說 *at* nine o'clook *in* the morning; 又如 *at* sunrise, *at* sunset, *at* midnight, 但 *in* the night 或 *during* the night. *On* 的用法也很值得注意. 它是有所選擇的. 正如我們想到一隻鳥棲止在一顆樹上 (a bird alighting *on* a tree) 而不在另一顆樹上,我們也想到一件事發生在某一天 (a thing happening *on* a certain day) 而不在另一天,例如 Christmas falls *on* Friday 這情形尤其顯明. 在于這種意味上, Friday 或者隨便星期幾,跟其他的日子比較起來,實在可看做一霎時的. 因此我們可以說 *on* that morning, *on* that evening, 這是把它當做許多日子之中的一個早上或晚上,但如把它本身便看做一個長時間,那就用 *in* the morning, *in* the evening 了. 又,注意 once upon a time 這個成語.

"During" 〔在～期間〕更明顯地佔有所指的整個時期: *during* the evening, *during* the week, *during* the meeting. "Pending" 卽 during the interval until 〔在～以前〕之意: *Pending* his arrival (=from this time until he comes),

we shall go on as usual〔在他未來以前，我們照常進行下去〕. "In the course of" 含有'某一期間之一點' (any point during a pe iod) 的意思: I shall pay you *in the course of* next week〔我在下星期以內付錢給你〕. "By" 暗示時間的經過: *By* that time you will be quite a rich man, 意卽'你的錢一天天多起來，直到所說的那時候，你就成了一個大富翁了'. Have the dress finished *by* Saturday〔衣服儘星期六做好〕是至遲星期六，或者在星期六以前做好，也未可知的意思.

習 慣 動 作

11.70. 【習慣動作】 英文的現在不定時制有一種用法便是表明'習慣動作' (Habitual Action): Do you smoke? / She *sings* / We play tennis everyday. 這些都表明現在的習慣，而動作未必限于現在這一刻兒的辰光. We play tennis everyday 含有'昨天也打網球'的意思. 在 She sings 例中，是說'她會唱歌' (She can sing) 或'她是一個歌者' (She is a singer)，指其能力而言，而能力自然不只限于現在而已. 下面再舉些例句: 注意眞實的現在動作用現在進行式，如 § 11.10 所說明的.

He *gets* up at eight and *goes* to bed at ten (習慣). 參照: He *is getting* up now (現在).

The boy *goes* to school (卽 He is a schoolboy——習慣). 參照: The boy *is going* to school (現在).

She *sends* him letters everydav (習慣). 參照: She *is sending* (或 *has sent*) a letter to him (現在).

The boat *sails* fourteen miles an hour (有此能力). 參照: The boat *is sailing* north (現在).

Do you *go* to church? (習慣). 參照: *Did* you *go* to church? (過去動作) 或 *Are* you *going* to church now? (現在)
Smithey never *yields* (習慣). But he *is yielding* now (現在).
Joey *swears* terribly (即: 他有口出惡言的習慣).

表過去的習慣動作,最普通的方法是用 used to〔慣常,慣于,習慣〕一短語.

We *used to* play together.
They *used to* live in the same room.
The boat *used to* run between Tientsin and Shanghai.
She *used to* stop at Tsingtao for a day or two.
We *used to* let off fire-crackers and make new year calls on New Year's Day.
There *used to* be a boat race on the Dragon Boat Festival.
The Chinese emperor *used to* get up at four o'clock in the morning and hold audience with his ministers.
We *used to* meet every Saturday evening in his house.

說也奇怪,否定式 (依邏輯應是 did not use to) 卻未曾聽見過,而 never used to 和 used not to 又覺得怪難看似的. 這種否定式可用 usually not, 或只用 never: *Usually* he did *not* turn up〔照例他是不來的〕. He never smoked〔他向不吸烟〕.

被動式 be used to〔習于,慣于〕之後要用一個名詞: I *am used to* that sort of treatment〔那一種待遇我已受慣〕. 這個可用于肯定的或否定的說法 (I *am not used to* that sort of treatment), 以及任何時間 (I *was* not *used to* sleeping on wooden boards〔木板我睡不慣〕). 由此生出 get used to〔弄慣〕這一個成語來: He *got used to* her piano music and she *got used to* his smoke / We can easily *get used to* your pronunciation〔你的口音我們很容易聽慣的〕(參看中文'司空見慣', '習以爲常', '積習', '習染' 等成語).

試 驗 動 作

11.80. 【試驗動作】 這一方面在中文很熟，但用的範圍不及在英文里那麼廣泛. 通常的形式是 try to, 強調的形式是 attempt to 和 make an effort to. 如 *tried to* capture the city 這類短語便很難把它恰如其分地翻成中文. '來攻某城' (攻下與否未曾明言) 也許含有這個意思，也許不含這個意思，而'試攻某城' 卻不是中文本色. 中文顯然只具備成功或終結方面: '攻下'. 如 *try to* persuade 和 persuade 或者可翻成 '勸' 和 '勸動了'. 但是如 *try to* work hard, *try to* do your best 這一類短語又將如何翻譯呢?

又，注意 tend to 和 be inclined to 〔有～傾向，輒欲，好〕這兩個英語表現法: The movies *tend to* encourage crimes / He *is inclined to* be lazy. 這些也是表非終結方面，要把翻成馴熟的中文也是很爲難的.

在另一方面，我們中文里卻另有一種表試驗動作的方式，如'嘗一嘗，試一試，打一打，敲一敲，碰一碰，走一走，問一問'. 這個很可以叫做'偶然方面' (casual aspect), 意卽這動作是偶然做一做，並無任何重要目的. '跟他講一講，說一說' 便是 '勸勸他看，他不聽，就作罷' 的意思. 在英文里，最與這一方面相近似的見于 take a look, have a taste, give it a trial, have a go at it 〔看一看，嘗一嘗，試一試，碰一碰造化〕等.

各 種 次 要 的 方 面

11.90. 【役使·重複·反身·交互】 有些別的次要方面，如下:

(1) 役使動作 (**Causative Action**). 這個包括兩種形式: 或者我們叫某人作某事 (cause a person *to do* something), 或者要某事給做成 (cause something *to be done*). 如 We *have* the shoemaker *repair* the shoes, 或 We *have* the shoes *repaired* by the shoemaker. 這兩種形式在 § 9.91 里都已經詳細說過.

(2) 重複動作 (**Reiterative Action**). 在英文里,這個有時用詞首 re- 表達,如 *re*iterate, *re*peat, *re*build, *re*address, *re*convert, *re*consider, *re*assemble, *re*organize, *re*value, *re*enter, *re*-open 〔重複,覆述,重建,再致辭 (改寄信件), 再改宗, 重行考慮,再集合,改組,重新估價,再 (加) 入,重開〕. 這個詞首 *re-* 在英文里是活用的,它可以附加在任何動詞上表明 '再, 重,復,更' (once more, again, repeatedly, back to some former state) 之意. 有時這種重複的意思用 again and again, over and over again 〔一再,再三再四〕等短語,如 He asked the question *again and again*.

(3) 反身和交互的動作(**Reflexive and Reciprocal Action**) 一個動作可以在主動者 (主語) 本身有直接關係,如 Save *yourself* that trouble. 〔給你自己省了那個麻煩吧〕, 這叫做 '反身動作'; 或者如果有兩個或兩個以上的主語時, 這動作可以有交互關係,如 Tell *one another* stories 〔彼此講說故事(你講給我聽, 我講給你聽)〕, 這叫做 '交互動作'. 這兩個方面的表現法在 § 7.23 (反身和交互代名詞) 里已經講過了.

第十二章 主語和賓語

(外射動作)

12.10. 【主語和主動者】 我們現在要看主語，賓語和動作的動詞之間的關係。 我們要認清動詞的'主語'和動作的'主動者'(doer) 未必老是一樣東西。 在平常，主語便是動作的主動者，這是不錯的，如 *He* teaches English / *She* plays piano. 但是在被動態，可就立刻看出這是不對了，如 *I* am told 和 *The officer* has been impeached, 主語 I 和 officer 都一無舉動，只受所說的那兩個動作的影響而已。 又如 *This* is a book, 這也沒有半點動作的意思在內，主語 this 也絲毫無所作爲。

通常主語是當做我們所談論的人或事物解釋，而關于這主語所說到的一切便叫述語 (動詞和賓語包括在內)。 這個普通界說在實用上是足以應付的，雖則在 He teaches English 這一句里我們實在是說的'教授'(動詞) 和'所教的東西'(賓語)，兼及'教的人'(主語)。

所以我們應該認清，'主語'這個意念是純粹文法方面的。它僅僅指明句中某種文法作用而已。 英文動詞老是需要一個主語，而中文動詞卻不盡然。 在英文里，我們說 It rains, 雖則未必眞正知道什麼下雨；或者是'天'，或者 (更妥當一些) 是'雨'本身。 在中文里，如果動詞的主語不存在的時候，我們不必一定要把它找出來或表達出來，例如'下雨了'(比較'雨下了')，'不行了'，'不對了'。 又如'有一次'，'有一天'我們實在並不知道什麼是這動詞'有'的主語。

12.11. 〔賓語和受影響者〕 賓語老是受動作的影響者. 在 He told *me* 一句里,當然賓語 me 是指蒙受'告訴'這動作的影響的. 但,反過來說,受影響者卻未必老是賓語. 也許是被動詞的主語,如 *I* am told 中的 I. 又,注意動詞 "to be" 既無所謂動作的,當然沒有受影響者,而因此便沒有'賓語',只有一個'補足語',如 He is her *husband*, husband 僅僅補足 is 的意思 (參看 § 9.90).

賓語受了一種動作的影響,通常——但不老是——當作那動作的接受者,如 He opens the *door*, 賓語 door 當然可說是直接接受這個動作的,但是有兩種特別賓語,其受影響的情形是不同的. 第一是'結果賓語' (object of result), 如 dig a *grave* 〔掘墳墓〕,'墳墓'是'掘'的結果. 在未掘以前是沒有墳墓的,所以實在並無所謂受這動作影響的東西. 這一類賓語如: We make *cakes* / They form a *circle* / He writes a *letter* / He paints *flowers* 〔我們做餅,他們圍成一個圈子,他寫信,他畫花卉〕. 還有一種可以叫做'重複賓語' (repetitive object), 實際是將動詞重複一遍,如 She dreamed a *dream* / He smiled a *smile* / Fight a good *fight* 〔她作了一個夢,他笑了一笑,你們好好打一仗〕. 依邏輯講,這和 "Rain rains", "Snow snows" 的觀念很相似 (雖則在英文里是要用 It rains / It snows).

12.12. 【文法主語和文法賓語】 上面已經說明'主語'和'賓語'這兩個名稱只不過指它們的文法作用而言. 這個再舉一些例句便可了然了. 如 "The statue *stands* (in the yard)" / "The mountain *stretches* (to the north)" / "The street *turns* (to the right)" / "The bridge *spans* (the river)" / "The food *agrees* (with my stomach)" 〔雕像立在 (天井里),

山（向北）伸展，街（向右）轉灣，橋梁架在（河面），食物合（我的胃口）〕，'像'，'山'，'街'，'橋'，'食物' 這許多東西，實際上沒有一件做了什麼動作的。在于抽象名詞，這個更加顯明："The question *arises*"，"School *opens*" "The semester *begins*" / "The problem *includes* (many factors)" / "A lawsuit *drags on*, or *hangs on* (for years)"〔問題'發生'，學校'開學'，學期'開始'，這問題'包含'（許多因子），訴訟'拖延'（多年）〕。此處主語實在不能有任何動作。

同樣地，在 We hold a *meeting* 句中，很難看得出對于賓語 meeting 有任何動作，又，在 Give him a *warning* 或 Teach him a *lesson* 等句中，這'警告'或'功課'怎麼樣受那要'給'要'教'的人的影響，也不容易看得出。在 take a *bath*, take a *look*, take a *seat*〔洗澡，看一眼，就坐〕這些短語里，我們對於'澡'，'眼'，'坐位'到底眞正有沒有什麼動作呢？又如 He cut a fúnny *figure*〔顯露頭角〕句中，那個無形的東西'頭角'又是怎樣受'顯露'的人的影響呢？

這一切都表明'主語'和'賓語'所指的不過是文法上的關係而已。所以我們還不如一方面分別動作的'主動者'和動詞的'主語'而在另一方面分別'受影響者'和'賓語'來得妥當。'主動者'和'受影響者'這兩個名稱屬于意念的，而'主語'和'賓語'這兩個名稱卻是屬于文法的。

【註】因爲'邏輯主語'（"logical subject"）和'心理主語'（"psychological subject"）這兩個名稱的定義各文法學家言人人殊，還是以避免引用爲是。這兩個名稱有時指心理上最'重要'或最'顯著'的詞兒（He is *wrong* / I am *right*），有時指第一個出現的詞兒（*They* saw him / *She* married him），有時指已經明瞭的東西，而同時不十分明瞭的作爲述語（*The man* was her brother），有時指主動者（He was loved by *his father*），有時又指重讀的詞兒（You can't

deceive me), 諸如此類, 不一而足. 作爲這種種意義時'心理主語'只好比作一張現成圖畫里的焦點, 而要把那焦點限于那一個詞兒上, 這是萬萬辦不到的. 往往整句形成一個統一的觀念,沒有中心焦點,或者有一個平均焦點,那末就只好承認整句是'主語', 但這在文法上講起來又是荒謬之論. 這一類問題要屬于邏輯範圍以內才比較正當,不應該在文法里討論.

主語的種類

12.20. 【主語的種類】 英文里主語的種類可以下列各例做代表:

名 詞	The *garden* is in bloom.
名動詞	*Fishing* is a pleasant pastime.
代名詞	*He* was a fool. *It* is winter.
無限式	*To talk* is easy; *to act*, difficult.
子 句	*How he did it* I can't understand.
	Whether he did it or not is none of my business.
	That this is wrong is admitted.
	Who breaks pays.
	Who steals my purse steals trash.

這些都是標準樣式.

我們先把文法範疇和意念範疇的區別記在心里,再進而討論一些實例中有的主語在意念上是含蓄的,在英文里不把它們表達出來. 下列各式所表達的實則是一樣東西:—

(A) *Who believes such a story* is a fool. [肯相信這樣一個故事的是個癡子.]
(B) *He who believes this story* is a fool. [相信這個故事的人是個癡子.]
(C) *He* is a fool *to believe this story*. [癡子才相信這個故事]
(D) *He* is a fool *if he believes this story*. [如果相信這個故事眞是癡子了.]

就文法上講, A 句里 who believes such a story 是主語; B 句里 he 是主語,加上關係子句 who believes this story 來修飾它; C 句里 he 是主語,外加無限式短語 to believe this story,

來修飾動詞 is; D 句里，he 又是主語，加上附屬子句 if he believes this story 來修飾動詞 is. 這是一件千眞萬確的事，因爲他如不相信這個故事，他當然不'是'癡子了. 所以 C 句里的無限式短語和 D 句里的'if 子句'當然是修飾動詞 is 而非主語 he 的. 但是，就意念上講，它們跟 B 句里 he who believes this story 之以'who 子句'修飾主語 he 而非動詞 is 豈不是毫無二致嗎? 又，就意念上講，B 句里 he who believes this story 豈不是如 A 句里 who believes such a story 一樣都是 is 的主語嗎? 再——

Believing this story, he is a fool
和 *If he believes this story*, he is a fool

還不是一樣的意思嗎? 所以在 He is a fool if he believes this story 一句里，要說我們實在就是 He-who-believes-this-story is a fool 的意思也是正確的. 因此，在意念上講起來，he-who-believes-this-story 是動詞 is 的主語.

12.21. 【"It" 作主語用】 (a) 下列各句中，斜體字指動詞的眞正的——雖則不是文法上的——主語.

It is wrong *to tell a lie*. [說謊是不對的.]
It is true *that I dislike him*. [我不喜歡他是實在情形.]

這兩句和下面兩句是一樣的意思:—

To tell a lie is wrong.
That I dislike him is true.

所以用 it 作文法主語的，是因爲這樣極便于把短的述語顚倒放在前面，然後再把長的主語說了出來. 我們彷彿是說 *It* is wrong，然後要回答 "What is *it*?" 時再說 to tell a lie. 所以 to tell

a lie 可算是和主語 it 居于'同位'. 在 *It* is true *that I dislike him* 這一句里,主語 it 可以當作關係子句 that I dislike him 的'先行詞'(參看 § 7.45 中其餘各例).

(b) It 又往往沒有顯明的意義,只是滿足英文文法需要一個主語的那個條件而已,如 *It* rains / *It* was winter / *It* is never too late to mend〔補過決不致太晚('過則勿憚改','亡羊補牢,未爲晚也)〕,我們實在並不知道,也不一定要知道 *What* was winter? 或 *What* is never too late to mend?

12.22. 【"There is"】 There is 這個特殊結構和中文'有'字相當: *There is* a boy〔'有'一小孩〕. 在這類句子里,我們只好假定跟在 there is 以後的那個名詞是主語;如 There is a boy, boy 便是主語, is 是動詞. 實際上這一句和 "A boy is *there*" 卻未必盡同. 在發音學上講起來, there is, there are 中的 there 老是不讀重音: [ðə (ðə'riz, ðə'rɑ: 或 ðərə)]. 這情形在下句中尤其顯而易見:—

There is a boy *there*. [ðə'riz ə 'bɔi 'ðɛə] (那里有一小孩.)

第一個 there 輕讀作〔ðər〕,而第二個 there 卻重讀作〔ðɛə〕. 這第二個 there 作補足語用,指明地方,而第一個卻毫無所指.

【註】 There's 通常讀〔ðɛəz〕,有時亦作〔ðəz〕.

在 Let *there* be light* 句中, there 很有類似名詞的嫌疑(參看 Let *it* be done). 可是我們卻不得不稱它是名詞以外的東西,把這一句分析成爲 Let light be *there*. 其實最好還是把

*見聖經(Bible)創世記(*Genesis*): And God said, "Let *there* be light"; and *there was* light. [上帝說要有光,就有了光.]——譯者註.

there is 或 there be 當作一個複合動詞，大可寫作一個詞兒，作 "exist" 〔存在，生出〕解釋. Let *there be* light 意卽 "Let light *exist*" 或 "Let light *come into being* (或 *existence*)"

又，因爲 "live", "is born", "come", "go" 等都和 '生存', '存在' 有關，所以下列各例也是常見的. 這就是仿 there is 的結構.

There once *lived* in China a famous general called Yo Fei [岳飛]. (=Once *there was*, etc.)

There was born a baby boy to the old parents. (=A child was born, etc.)

As early as in the beginning of the Yuan Dynasty, *there came* to China a foreigner whose name was Marco Polo [馬哥孛羅] and who afterwards became an official under Emperor Kublai Khan.

有時 there is 的意義和 it 或 that 相同，如下例：—

There is no use (no good, no harm) in trying [=It is no use (no good, no harm) trying]. [試亦無用 (試亦無傷)]

There's a good boy (=That's a good boy). [乖乖的!] (參看 §7.44)

Go to bed now——*there's* (=that's) a dear. [去睡吧，好孩子 (乖乖).]

There's the difficulty. [其困難在此.] (參看 §7.44)

又，下列兩句 there is 的意思也夠模糊了，其模糊的程度和上節末了講的 it 差不多：—

There is no saying what may happen (=*It* is impossible to say what may happen). [什麼事要發生不能斷定.]

There is no denying (或 gainsaying) the fact that . . . (=*It* is impossible to deny *or* gainsay that . . .) [事實不容否認～]

(參看: *There is* no accounting for tastes [人各有所好].)

這些不妨把 "there is no ～ing" 當做一種表現法看，似乎更加妥當.

外射動作和賓語

12.30. 【外射動作】 外動詞可以有賓語 (I kill; I kill *him*), 但是內動詞不可以 (He is sleeping). 在前面 (§ 11.21) 已經提起過, 外動詞 (v.t.) 和內動詞 (v.i.) 的這種區別純粹是文法上的. 一個外射動作可算是以種種方法射到它的賓語上面, 而一個內疑動作則不然: I *see* the boy, 但 I *slept*. 本來在 I kill him 句中, 這個動作分明是通到賓語 him 身上, 但在 I see 句中, 這動作是不是眞正射到 boy 身上去呢? 又, 注意 enter 是外動詞 (He *enters* the room) 而 come 是內動詞 (He *comes* into the room), 但是實際上在 He enters the room 和 He comes into the room 這兩句里可有什麼區別呢? 所以這種區別顯然是文法上的而非邏輯上的. 這種文法上的區別便是, 內動詞要使它能夠跟任何賓語相連, 就需要一個介詞, 而外動詞則不必.

12.31. 【直接賓語和間接賓語】 外動詞有時可以有兩個賓語. 在 I give you a knife 句中, knife 叫做直接賓語, you 是間接賓語. 這樣間接賓語實在是賓語附加一個隱藏的介詞 (to 或 for). 依照英文成語的規矩, 于可能範圍內我們通常把這介詞丟掉, 而把間接賓語放在直接賓語之前. Buy *me* a new hat 便比 Buy a new hat *for me* 更加通順. 試讀下例:

Will you do *me* a favour? (非: "Will you do a favour for me?")
Send *him* the story. (非: "Send the story to him.")
Wish *me* good luck. (非: "Wish good luck to, *or* to , me.")
Pay *him* the money. (非: "Pay the money to him.")
You do *me* a great honour. (非: "You do a great honour to me.")
Save *me* the trouble. (非: "Save the trouble for me.")

Save *him* some money. (非: "Save some money for him.")
Spare *me* that agony. (非: "Spare that agony from me.")
Show *him* the picture. (非: "Show the picture to him.")
Teach *him* a lesson. Kiss *him* good-night.
Give *him* a warning. Call *me* a taxi.

括號以內的各式並非不通,有時也用得着,但是實在不十分通馴。注意這兩種方式在中文里都可以用,如'送我一本書','報告你一個消息','給他十塊錢','救人一命,勝造七級浮屠'以及'把一本書送給我','把這消息報告給他','拿十塊錢給他','替我穿上大衣','饒了他們的狗命吧'等等。不過恰巧相反,英文里把間接賓語放在直接賓語之前省去介詞的時候多,而中文卻比較是常用'把','給','替'這一類介詞的結構,尤其在白話里。(在文言里像'春風多便,惠我數行','陽貨饋孔子蒸豚'是把間接賓語放在直接賓語之前的。但奇怪得很,中文里有時反而在直接賓語之前用介詞,如'付以十元','告以故','曉以大義','以其人之道,還施其人之身'等。這在英文里是不可能的,例如 pay him ten dollars, tell him the reason 是可以的,但如用"pay him *with* ten dollars", "tell him *with* the reason", 那便不通了。)

在于有些動詞,或在間接賓語或在直接賓語之前附加介詞,如 I present you *with* a new book〔我拿一本新書送你〕或 I present a new book *to* you〔我送一本新書給你〕, furnish him *with* information〔將情報供給他〕或 furnish information *to* him〔供給情報給他〕。別的動詞只能'統攝'事物而不能統攝人來做它們的直接賓語: explain a thing〔解釋一件事〕, 但 explain *to* a person〔對人解釋〕, 因此 explain that to me, 或 explain *to* me something, 但決不可用 explain me

還有些動詞是人和事物都可以統攝得了的，如 forgive a person 和 forgive a fault, excuse a person 和 excuse his appearance。我們通常用 forgive him his past fault〔不咎既往〕。在于加 -ing 的動詞，我們常用 excuse a person *from* ～ing (coming)，或 forgive a person *for* ～*ing* (not attending).

【練習九十九】 英文里像 show me / tell me / bring me something / serve me a good dinner / sing me a song / buy me a hat / do a man a good turn / serve him a warning / call me a car 這一類的成語很多。這些成語的用法要多多學習。再，將下列各句譯成英文：—

1. 給我叫一輛車.
2. 把這事情告訴他.
3. 借我一百元(把一百元借我).
4. 替我買一把洋傘.
5. 給他一個警告.
6. 給他一個差事.
7. 衣服給我帶來.
8. 給我做一雙新鞋.

又，將中文里有 '把'，'對'，'給' 等字的句子翻譯出來，看看在英文里應該如何說法。注意任何介詞的用法或省略，以及詞兒排列的順序，完全看是用的那一種動詞.

被 動 主 語

12.40. 【被動態動詞帶賓語】 把 Jack kills Jill 轉換爲 Jill is killed by Jack 的方法是很簡單的。但是有兩個賓語時，其中一個可以轉變成爲被動句里的主語，另一個仍然保留着。例如由 They told **him** *a lie* 可以變成 **He** was told *a lie*. 細讀下列各例：—

He was never *told the truth*.
He was *given a great welcome*.
She was *paid three pounds* a week.
We were *denied entrance* into the park.
We were *given the privilege* of going out at night.
He was *shown a picture* of deceased.

When only ten years old, she was *taught French and violin.*
When only twelve, she was *given a scholarship.*

【練習一百】 試將下列各句變成被動式:—

1. They asked him an awkward question.
2. They paid her thirty cents for a day's work.
3. They allowed her two eggs and one pint of milk per day.
4. They gave him the job as a reward for his services.

12.41. 【被動的內動詞】 要把不帶賓詞的內動詞變成被動態,那當然是不可能. 例如 She slept there 當然不可能變成 "Something was slept by her". 但是和介詞短語連結的內動詞卻可以變成被動態. 例如 No-one *has slept in* this bed, 可以變成被動式的 The bed *has* not *been slept in*, 意即往常睡在這牀上的人昨天晚上沒有回來睡覺.

以前在 §11.20 和 §11.21 兩節里,我們已經講過內動詞和它們的介詞之間的密切關係,如 look at, look up, look into 等都形成一些確定的觀念. 又,上面也已經說過, "*enter* (外動) the room" 也就和 "*come* (內動) into the room" 是一樣意思. 因此 come into 便形成一個確定的觀念,用起來極其像一個外動詞. 所以我們能把內動詞和它的介詞併在一起,然後再變成被動態,這個道理也就不難明白了. 以下再舉一些例句:—

She resents *being looked at.*
He *is looked upon* as a leader.
The accounts of last year must *be looked into*
A doctor has *been sent for.*
The lost watch has *been looked for* all over the place.
She is the most *talked about* girl in town.
I *am done for.* [我上了當了; 大勢去矣] (注意此句無主動式)
He *is* never *listened to.*
That is a thing devoutly to *be prayed for.*

That is a question which has *been* greatly *debated about* (或 *upon*).
Who likes to *be laughed at*?
From her childhood, she has never *been* properly *looked after*.

【練習一百零一】 將上列各句轉變爲主動態，凡無固定的主動者的地方用 they, we 或 no-one 等詞兒.

非人稱主語

12.50. 【非人稱主語】 在英文里,有許多動詞可以和'非人稱主語'(impersonal subjects)用在一起,和我們中文里'事情發生,'東西遺失'很相似的. 除非我們注意這一種用法,我們極容易把動詞的用法弄錯了的. 例如 "a *dress* **becomes** a person" (=looks well on him or her)〔衣服稱身〕, "*food* **does not agree** with a person" 〔食物不合人的胃口〕(非: a person does not agree with food), 以及 "an *idea* **occurs** to a man" 〔人轉念頭〕(非: a man occurs to an idea). 中文'我遇見某事'一句應該說 "I *came across* something" 或 "Something *happened to* me", 決非 "I *happened to* something". 細讀下列許多用于非人稱主語的動詞的例句:—

The door *opens*.
Shops *open* at 9.0 a.m. (非: *are opened*).
The semester *begins*. (但: Work *is begun*.)
Here the letter *ends* [信止于此 (說者指其所讀之信而言)]. (但: The task *is ended*.)
Winter *begins* on Dec. 21 and *ends* on Mar. 21.
The disease *progresses* very slowly.
The interest gradually *accumulates* (非: *is accumulated*).
That doesn't *count* (=should not *be counted*).
It *amounts* to over a hundred dollars.

Something (which has been worrying him) *weighs* upon his mind.
A picture *was hanging* (非: *was hung*) on the wall.
The subject *acquires* a new interest for me. 又: *I acquire* a new interest for the subject.
The problem *presses* for solution.
A doubt *arises* in my mind.
The fact *remains* that he did not pay his debt. (非: *is remained* ——這是中國學生的一種普通錯誤.)
How time *flies* (非: *is flown*)!
A desire *awakened* in her breast (非: *was awakened*).
This knife *will last* me a life-time (非: *will be lasted*).

要定下一條規則來說明那些動詞可以用非人稱主語那些不可以,那簡直是一件不可能的事. 我們只要時時注意某一動詞是否用于非人稱主語,把它養成一種習慣就行了. 唯一的規則是遇有疑惑時去檢查字典. 曾經有這麽一個留學生竟把'人滿屋'這句寫成 "The men were *full of* the house" (應該是 The house was *full of* people), 就因爲他沒有把句子整個學來,也沒有注意 full of 這個成語應該怎樣和非人稱主語用在一起.

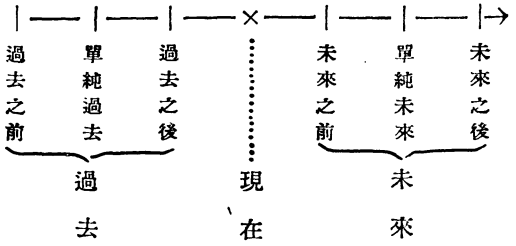
【註】 僞主動態的用法 (如 poem *reads* / book *sells*) 已經在 §11.35 里講過. 賓語的動作 (如 made him *come* / saw him *go*) 也已經在 §9.91 里講過. 反射賓語已見 §7.23.

第十三章　動作時間

13.10. 【時間表：現在・過去・未來】 時間通常分爲三大類：現在，過去和未來，例如 I *saw*, I *see*, I *sha'l see*. 在這三大類里面，某一時間以內，又可以說某事已經發生在它之前，以及某事將要發生在它之後。 因此共有九個時制 (tense)，如下表：

過去之前 (Before-past)	*I had seen*
單純過去 (Simple past)	*I saw*
過去之後 (After-past)	*I was (going) to see*
現在之前 (Before-present)	*I have seen*
單純現在 (Simple present)	*I see*
現在之後 (After-present)	*I am going to see / I shall see*
未來之前 (Before-future)	*I shall have seen*
單純未來 (Simple future)	*I shall see / I am going to see*
未來之後 (After-future)	*I shall be going to see*

注意在中間一層‘現在’實在是疊牀架屋。‘現在之前’實際上就是過去，而‘現在之後’實際上便是未來。 參看下列圖表：一



英文里‘現在之前’和‘過去’的區別是保存在 I *saw* 和 I *have seen* 這兩式上，但如法文里 j'ai vu [ʒɛ vyu] (=I have seen) 通例是作過去用的。 不管這種文法區別是否保存，這個動作本

身終究是發生于過去的. 在另一方面,'現在之後'和 未來'在英文里卻實實在在混而爲一,因爲在現在之後所發生的事情天然是未來的. 可是還有一種極微妙的分別值得注意,卽在 I *am going to* do it *now* 或 I *shall* do it *now* (現在之後) 以及 I *am going to* do it *tomorrow* 或 I *shall* do it *tomorrow* (單純未來)之間是有分別的.

注意 shall 的過去 (should) 的用法因爲不是表時間關係的 (non-temporal) (卽不屬于時間本身的), 所以它的變化是不全的,不能用于'過去之後', 也不能單獨形成'未來之後'. 在另一方面, be going to 這表現法卻有一個完全的各時制的'活用' (conjugation). 事實上, be going to 正如 shall 或 will 一樣是表未來動作的一個重要的方式.

又,動作可以綿延一個很長的時間. 因此又得到一個長期時制的表:—

過去之前:	*I had been seeing*
過　去:	*I was seeing*
現在之前:	*I have been seeing*
現　在:	*I am seeing*
未來之前:	*I shall have been seeing*
未　來:	*I shall be seeing*

在這種情形,所謂現在之前實則起于過去,一直繼續到現在. 未來之前沒有什麼實際界處.

現　在

13.20. 【現在是什麼?】 如果我們想像時間在一條直線上駛過,要想爲現在劃定一個界限,那末立刻看出它只佔有一個無

限小而永遠飛逝的一霎時間. 在邏輯上講,所謂現在的時間僅僅只有一秒,凡在前頭的都屬于過去(甚至連上一秒鐘),凡在後的都屬于未來(連下一秒鐘在內). 因此之故,現在老是侵入過去或未來的領域以內. I have just seen him 照名分叫做現在,實在指一種過去動作,而 I shall do it now 實在指未來所要發生的動作. 所以在現在要'做'什麼事,是很困難的. 在現在這一秒以內能做的事,眞正少極了. 因此,現在的現在動作決不會用單純現在式,而另以現在進行式代替它: 如 I am doing it now, 表明一個延長的時期. 其結果,不是我們'做了某事'(We *have done* a thing), 便是'將要做'(We *are going* to do it), 或者'此刻正在做'(We *are doing* it right now). 詳細說明見 §11.10.

13.21. 【習慣動作和永遠眞理】 可是,事實上我們的確不把現在式當作僅僅一霎時以內的東西. 它是常常含有'今天','本星期'或甚至'今年'的意思. 例如 I *am staying* at the X Hotel **this week** 〔這個星期我住在 X 旅館〕, 或 We *dine* at eight **this year**, last year we dined at seven 〔今年我們是八點鐘吃晚飯,去年是七點〕. 第二例句不是指眞正的現在動作,而僅僅是一個現在習慣. 或者,如 know, believe, think, be 這一類的詞兒,它們的意思實在表明'知'和'信'包括一個長的時間. 又如 The earth *moves* around the sun 是表明一種'永遠眞理'(eternal truth), 有時至少表明一種'一般陳述'(general statement), 如 A carriage *has* four wheels / A hansom *has* two wheels / A statue *stands* in the yard / The Japanese *eat* a lot of beans and fish / Bread *is made* from flour / If you take the plug off, the current *is cut* off / There *is* not

enough ventilation in this room〔這房間的空氣不十分流通〕。由此可見英文里用單純現在表明習慣動作，如 know, love 等包括長時間的動作，以及永遠眞理或一般陳述。但是眞正的現在動作決不用單純現在來表明。例如一個人正無意地把小孩子打死，你對他說，"You *are killing* the boy!" 而非 "You *kill* the boy!"，這則殺人也許只需要一秒的幾分之一的時間（參看 §11.10）.

未　來

13.30. 【未來的表現法】未來動作所不同于現在動作的，是未來動作實際還沒有發生，因此這動作不是一種既成事實，而僅是一種'願望' (wish), '義務' (obligation), '可能' (possibility), 或 '期待' (expectation): He *will* go / He *shall* go / He *may* go / He *expects* to go. 這種動作多少常含有一種'不定' (uncertainty) 或'意向' (intention). 最純正的形式即所謂'單純未來' (simple future): He will die soon 或 He is going to die soon. 這些形式可以列入下列各項:—

(1) 單純未來 *I shall come again / He will die soon.*
(2) 意　向 *I will come again.*
(3) 命　令 *Come! / You shall come this afternoon.*
(4) 可　能 *I may come again.*
(5) 義　務 *I am to see him this afternoon.*

13.31. 【"Shall" 和 "Will"】英文的 shall 和 will 的用法在中國學生好像覺得極其困難。其實最清楚又最簡易的說明是把它們分成三項：(1) 命令，(2) 意向，(3) 單純未來。

單純未來		命 令
I shall	*we shall*	都用 *shall*
you will	*you will*	
he / *she* / *it* } *will*	*they will*	意 向
		都用 *will*

(1) 命令，如：You *shall* be punished for this. He *shall* be kept indoors. Each one *shall* have two eggs for his breakfast. You *shan't* see her again. (這種 s all 作'須要','得','須得','務須'的意思講.) 因爲沒有人對自己有所命令，所以 I shall, we shall 不會作命令的意味用的. Let's 可以作這種命令用法：*Let's* go.

(2) 意向，如：I *will* come again, they *will* come tonight. He has decided that he *will* not stay here any longer. (這種 will 作'要','想','打算','願意','肯'的意思講.)

(3) 單純未來，如：I *shall* be going *soon*. I *shall* be away tomorrow. You *will* be sorry for this. The school *will* close soon. It *will* rain soon. Tomorrow *will* be Saturday. It *will* be impossible to do anything tonight. (這種 will 只作'將','要'的意思講.)

在問句中，你期望回答什麼詞兒，便用什麼詞兒：—

Shall you be here tonight?	I *shall*.
Will you come again?	I *will*.
Shall they come, too?	They *shan't*.
Shall I tell him?	Do. (*You shall.*)
Will he die?	I'm afraid he *will*.

要緊的是單純未來用 I shall 和 we shall 而非 I will (問句中用 shall I? 而非 will I?), 我們要養成這種習慣才行. 如 I *shall* not be able to 不可用 I *will* not able to, 因爲這是單純未來, be able (能) 不是你所能'決意' ("will") 的事. 在現代英語中,現在有一種用 I'll (本來是 I will 的縮寫式) 以代 I shall 的趨勢 (表明單純未來), 因爲 I'll 短些,容易讀些,如: I am afraid *I'll* die soon (嚴格地應用 I *shall*). 這在美國及蘇格蘭的慣用法尤其如此. 但是我們無論如何,應該先養成遵從 I shall 的正確慣用法的習慣.

"Will" 通常讀 [l], "shall" 讀 [ʃəl] 或 [ʃ-l]: I'*ll* [ail], he'*ll* [hi:l] they'*ll* [ðeil], I *shall* [ai ʃəl]. *Shan't* 讀時 [ɑ:] 音很清晰: You *shan't* [ʃɑ:nt] do this. Will 還有一種特別用法, 意即 "insist" [一定要], 讀時要完全讀出 [wil] 音.

I told him not to go, but he *will* go (即: he insists on going).
Boys *will* be boys (即: you can't expect boys to behave like grown-ups). [小孩子究竟是小孩子 (脫不了孩子氣的).]
But things *will* happen against our wish.

又,作完全動詞 (非助動詞) 時, will 也要完全讀出: God *wills* (或 *willed*) ['wilz ('wild)] that it should be so / God (Heaven) *wills* it (或 *has willed* it) ['wilz it (həz 'wild it)] [此天意也].

【練習一百零二】 試就下列各句填入 shall 或 will 以表單純未來:—

1. They say he ——— be promoted soon.
2. No one ——— be able to stop him.
3. I am afraid I ——— not be here tonight.
4. Who ——— speak at tonight's dinner?
5. ——— he take part in the contest?

6. I —— not dare to tell him.
7. If we are caught; we —— all be sent to prison.
8. —— we stay away very long?
9. —— we go very far?
10. The matter —— be settled soon.

13.32. 【中文的'將'和'要'】 單純未來和意向的區別在它們的中文等價語 (equivalents) 里解釋得最清楚. '將'* 和'就'† 本來是'行', '往', '欲', '隨', '即' 的意思, 如中文文言成語里有'愼重將事' (=愼重行事, 愼重下手), '將信將疑' (=欲信而不信), '就教' (=往而受教于人), '就正' (=去求人指正), '就緒' (=即成), '就醫' (=去請醫生看病), '從容就義' (=從容赴義), '就地正法' (=隨即在當地正法) 等, 就好像英文的 going to, 而且跟 going to 一樣, 也是表明單純未來的. It is *going to* rain (單純未來) 不費心思就譯成'將 (要) 下雨了'和'就 (要) 下雨了.' It *will* be finished soon 或 It is *going to* be finished soon (單純未來) ='就' (要) 完了'. (這在法文里, 情形亦復如此, 如 je vais venir [ʒə vɛ vənir] ="I am going to come" 也是表明單純未來.)

'要'字本來是表明意向的. '他要來不要來?" = *Will he* come or not (is it his intention)? 但是跟英文的 will 差不多, 它也另外含有一種意義, 不是表意向而是表單純未來的: He *will* die soon = 他快要死了.

---

*【將】 (1) 甫始之詞 [是以君子'將'有爲也, '將'有行也.——易經]. (2) 幾及之詞 [今滕絕長補短, '將'五十里也.——孟子]; (3) 進也 [日就月'將'.——詩經]; (4) 從也, 隨也 [九夷賓'將'.——漢書]; (5) 猶去也 [時幾'將'矣.——荀子].

†【就】 (1) 從也 [先王之制禮也, 過之者俯而'就'之.——禮記]; (2) 即也 [所'就'三, 所去三.——孟子]. (俱見辭源)——譯者註.

13.33. 【**"May" 和 "Is to"**】 Shall 和 will (加上 be going to) 包括三種表未來動作的尋常表現法：單純未來，命令和意向。另外兩種形式，'可能' (possibility) 和 '義務' (obligation) 通常用 "may" 和 "is to" 來表達。如 He *may* or *may* not come 和 I *may* go away tomorrow 也正如 I *will* go 或 You *should* go tomorrow 同樣是表未來動作的。注意 I hope he *will* go 和 I hope he *may* go 兩者都表明未來動作。

當作表明未來的義務的一種方法時，is to 往往比 shall 更加有用。即如命令，You *are to* hand in the exercises next Monday 用起來正如 You *shall* hand in, etc. 是一樣平常，尤其指明幾個主語的時候，is to 大概比 shall 還要來得方便：The first year students *are to* enter first, and the second year students *are to* follow them (以代 students *shall*, etc.). 又，陳述在過去某一時間以內就要發生的事 ('過去之後')，恰當的表現法反而是 was to 而不是 should. The ship *was to* arrive that afternoon (非 ship *should*) 意即在過去那一個時間船還沒有到，不過就要到了。

【練習一百零三】 將下列中文各句譯成英文：—

1. 明天也許他不在家.
2. 也許明天他不見了，這是很可能的事.
3. 這齣戲 (play) 成功不成功不一定
4. 子路應在前走，子貢應跟着他.
5. 我就走了，因爲我還要去看幾位朋友. (過去)
6. 那天下午正要開學.
7. 你們一聽嘯號 (whistle)，就得齊集操場 (playground) 上.

13.34. 【代未來的現在式】 在英文里,有兩種情形是用現在式表明未來動作的. 第一,表'去'或'移動'的觀念的動詞往往是這樣用法. 如不用 I shall come, 而單說 I *am coming* (tomorrow 或 next week), 非 "I am going to come". 所以 I am going 和 I am coming 實在表明未來動作 (比較: I am thinking, I am working now). 其他例如:—

I leave tomorrow for Peiping.
The ship *sails* next Saturday
He *starts* this afternoon.
You *are* not *going* to tonight's meeting, are you?
He *is going* away this summer.
He *is coming* back next autumn.

第二,一切含有假設的子句里都用現在式代未來. 如 If it *rains* tonight, I *shall* not *go* (決非 if it *will* rain tonight).

Give him my best regards *when you see him.*
By the time you return, there will be nothing left.
Don't wait for me for supper, *if I don't come back before seven.*
If you do this again (或: *If this happens again*), you shall be duly punished.
Tell him to wait for me, *in case he calls.*
When he graduates from college, he will be twenty-two.

過 去

13.40. 【過去的動作是事實】 世界上的事情有百分之九十九以上是發生于過去的. 因此在陳述事實時,最常用的是動詞的過去式. 照這種意味講起來,過去式恰巧和那表明願望,可能或至多在期望中的事情的未來式遙遙相對 (參看 §13.30). 我們說 He *killed* a man 時這就等于說'殺害'是一個既成事實,但是說 He *will* kill a man 時,這僅僅是一種臆想,即如 I

will kill you 這一句，依法律的眼光看起來，至多成爲一種威脅而已。

13.41. 【過去的用法】 因爲過去動作是事實，過去式的最普通的用法在于報告事件。卷帙浩繁的歷史，只除去對話和作者的意見和附注而外，都可以用過去式加以記載。製造科學或非科學的報告，都應該老用過去時制。下面是一個正式的科學報告的舉例：—

"When the Congress of the Behaviourists *assembled* on the third day, a public experiment *was carried* out in the presence of the delegates and the local university professors to test the ability of pigs to distinguish artificial pearls from real ones. Two professors *were* in charge of the pigs in the yard, properly numbered from one to twenty-four. After the President *called* the meeting to order, Professor Lavinsky *led* Pig No. One by the right ear to a square previously marked. A thermometer *was put* in the pig's mouth, and the professor's assistant *listened* with a stethoscope held close to the subject's sides in order to observe its heart reactions, while a string of artificial pearls *was held* forth about thirty centimeters from the pig's snout for thirty minutes. After the reactions, if any, *were* properly *recorded*, a string of genuine pearls *was produced* at the same distance, and the subject's reactions *were observed* and *recorded* in the same manner. The number of gruntings *was* also *recorded*. The experiment *was applied* in identical manner to all the twenty-four subjects. After the complete series of experiments *was carried* out, and the records *showed* no noticeable difference in the subjects' reactions to real and artificial pearls, the Congress unanimously *came* to the conclusion that pigs *are* [此指永遠眞理或一般陳述，故用現在式] not capable of distinguishing between real and artificial pearls of the kinds used. The meeting *was adjourned* at 12.30."

過去式另外有一種非常普通的用法中國學生應該注意的，便是見于 I knew, I t ought, I didn't know, I didn't quite

realize, I forgot 這一類成語之中,這些都是表明先前的思想或意念在現在是已經放棄了的, I thought 正和'我以爲'相同,含有我現在已不作此想了. I knew=我早知道,意卽在事情發生以前已經知道. I told you long ago〔我老早告訴你過了〕的意思和這個差不多. 這些形式都是極其有用的.

I knew you would do it. [我老早知道你會這樣做的.] (見了別人經你勸說已經允許照辦時所用的一種贊語)
I knew he couldn't do it. [我早已料到他不能做了(表明我的眼力不錯).]
I thought you didn't want me to come along. (很好的道歉)
Oh, *I didn't know* you had a friend here. (闖入時的道歉語)
I thought you had decided to cut out smoking. (婉轉的規勸)
I thought you were an honest man. (諷刺語)
I thought I was dealing with an honest man.
He thought he could get away with it. (Now he knows he can't: 說時頗爲得意)
That was what *I thought*, too. [我也以爲是這樣(這錯誤我也有份兒).]
I told you long ago not to believe him. (But you would not believe me until it is too late.)
I forgot to tell you that A wasn't coming.

13.42. 【形象化過去 (Past Visualized): '戲劇式現在'】敍述故事時,尤其在逼眞描寫的部分之內,明知是過去了的事件,卻往往用現在式. 著者和讀者的精神都可算是完全凝注于記事之中,彷彿這些事情就發生在眼前一般. 這就叫做'戲劇式現在' ("**Dramatic Present**"), 例如:—

Achilles *is* so *angered* by the death of his friend Patroclus that he *changes* his mind. He *swears* that his friend's death *must be avenged*.

So Achilles once more *appears* before his camp. With a great shout, he *enters* the battle. The Greeks *are overjoyed* to see their hero again, while the Trojans *gird* themselves for a severe battle.

Achilles *sees* Hector, and the two *close* in combat. Hard and furiously the two great warriors *fight* against one another, while around them the battle *rages*. The Trojan women *look* on from the ramparts with breathless excitement, for it *is* the greatest battle they *have* ever *witnessed*. Back and forth the tide of battle *turns*. Spear *clashes* with spear, and shield with shield, while the noise of chariots and horses and men's war-cries and women's shrill voices *are heard* in the general confusion.

At last, Achilles's spear *pierces* through Hector's body. The great Trojan *falls*. A great shout *goes* up from the soldiers of Agamennon and *rends* the sky. The Trojan women *are seized* with fear and bitter sorrow. Some *weep* and some *wail*, while Hector's own mother and sister *stand* quietly, silent as death.

In his fury, Achilles *takes* off the helmet of Hector, and binding his dead body to the chariot, he *drives* it around the city wall, with Hector's head trailing in the dust. Three times Achilles *drives* his chariot around the city, while the Trojans *look* on aghast and terrified.

It *is* a great day for the Greeks, and towards evening, there *is* great rejoicing in their camps.

13.43. 【副句的時制】 通常如果主句是過去時制，副句的動詞也應該用過去時制。 如，Barker *said* (主句動詞) that he *was coming* (副句)。 It *was reported* (主句動詞) that Mr. Soong *was going* to resign (副句)。 這種用法及舉例詳見§7.61.

不 規 則 動 詞

13.50. 【不規則動詞】 現在，過去和過去分詞叫做動詞的三'要部' (principal parts)。 規則動詞變過去和過去分詞時加 -ed, 如 return, return*ed*, return*ed*。 在英文里，有許多動詞其中有些非常普通的，如 come, go, speak, write, stand, sit 等)，

變過去和過去分詞時卻不是這樣，所以叫做‘不規則動詞’. 這種不規則的情形是由于早期印度歐羅巴語形式的歷史發展而成，而同時現在有許多規則動詞當初是不規則的. 出于拉丁文或法文的動詞老是規則的 (return, commence, cease, remember)，而一切不規則動詞原來都是條頓語 (加上與現代德國，荷蘭，丹麥和斯堪的那維亞各國語文有關聯的形式).

爲實用起見，我們只須把這些動詞分成三項來研究：(a) 一式，(b) 兩式，(c) 三式.

(a) 有些動詞毫無變化，只有一個形式.

現在式	過去式	過去分詞
bet	bet	bet
burst	burst	burst
cast	cast	cast
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
hit	hit	hit
hurt	hurt	hurt
let	let	let
put	put	put
set	set	set
shut	shut	shut
slit	slit	slit
split	split	split
sweat [swet]	sweat	sweat
thrust	thrust	thrust
rid	rid	rid
shed	shed	shed
spread [spred]	spread	spread

注意這些全是單音節的詞兒，末了有 t (只 rid 等詞兒除外). Hitted, cutted, setted 是斷斷不行的. 在另一方面，卻有些一

式和兩式互見，如 knit 和 knitted, wed 和 wedded, quit 和 quitted.

(b) 動詞有的是兩式，過去和過去分詞形式相同. 這些動詞之中，過去分詞決不以 -n 收尾（只除去實際上應歸入 "c" 項的 beaten 以外）. 加星號 (*) 的那些動詞也有加 -ed 的規則過去和過去分詞.

現在式	過去式	過去分詞
bleed	bled	bled
breed	bred	bred
feed	fed	fed
meet	met	met
lead	led	led
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]
* light	lit	lit
cleave	cleft	cleft
leave	left	left
flee	fled	fled
creep	crept	crept
sleep	slept	slept
sweep	swept	swept
keep	kept	kept
weep	wept	wept
* burn	burnt	burnt
* learn	learnt	learnt
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant [ment]
deal [di:l]	dealt [delt]	dealt [delt]
* dream [dri:m]	dreamt [dremt]	dreamt [dremt]
* dwell	dwelt	dwelt
feel	felt	felt
kneel	knelt	knelt
* smell	smelt	smelt
* spell	spelt	spelt
* spill	spilt	spilt

現在式	過去式	過去分詞
* spoil	spoilt	spoilt
build [bild]	built [bilt]	built
* gild	gilt	gilt (gilded)
* gird	girt	girt
bend	bent	bent
lend	lent	lent
rend	rent	rent
send	sent	sent
spend	spent	spent
make	made [meid]	made [meid]
say	said [sed]	said [sed]
lay	laid [leid]	laid [leid]
pay	paid [peid]	paid [peid]
have	had	had
hear [hiə]	heard [hə:d]	heard
shoe [ʃu:] (罕用)	shod [ʃɔd] (罕用)	shod
lose [lu:z]	lost [lɔ:st]	lost
sell	sold	sold
tell	told	told
buy	bought	bought
fight	fought	fought
bring	brought	brought
think	thought	thought
seek	sought	sought
teach	taught	taught
catch	caught	caught
sit	sat	sat
stand	stood	stood
understand	understood	understood
win	won [wʌn]	won [wʌn]
spin	spun	spun
wind [waind]	wound [waund]	wound [waund]
find	found	found
grind	ground	ground
shine	shone	shone
sing	sang (sung)	sung
spring	sprang (sprung)	sprung

現在式	過去式	過去分詞
sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
string	strung	strung
sting	stung	stung
swing	swung	swung
fling	flung	flung
cling	clung	clung
hang	hung	hung
dig	dug	dug
stick	stuck	stuck
hold	held	held
behold	beheld	beheld
abide	abode (罕用)	abode (罕用)
awake	awoke	awoke, awaked
come	came	come
become	became	become
overcome	overcame	overcome
run	ran	run
beat	beat	beaten

【註】 (1) Hanged 作過去式及過去分詞時是作 '絞死' 解; 作其他解說時用 hung.

(2) Sung 和 sprung 作過去式用時不見于現代用法.

(3) 助動詞 can, may, will 和 shall 只有現在過去兩式,沒有過去分詞. 這些將來在 § 13.60 再詳細說明.

(c) 末了一項是三要部有三式的動詞. 除去 begin 和 swim 兩個詞兒 (比較接近 "b" 項中的動詞),其餘都顯然有一個以 [n] 收音的過去分詞.

現在式	過去式	過去分詞
swim	swam	swum
begin	began	begun
do	did	done
go	went	gone
fall	fell	fallen
eat	ate [et]	eaten ['i:tn]

現在式	過去式	過去分詞
give	gave	given
weave	wove	woven
rise	rose	risen ['rizn]
arise	arose	arisen
ride	rode	ridden
stride	strode	stridden
write	wrote	written
smite	smote	smitten
drive	drove	driven ['drivn]
strive	strove	striven
thrive	throve, thrived	thriven, thrived
freeze	froze	frozen
speak	spoke	spoken
break [breik]	broke	broken
steal	stole	stolen
choose	chose	chosen
take	took	taken
partake	partook	partaken
wake	woke, waked	woken, waked
forsake	forsook	forsaken
shake	shook	shaken
bear (=carry)	bore	born
bear(=give birth)	bore	borne
forbear	forbore	forborne
tear [tɛə]	tore	torn
wear	wore	worn
swear	swore	sworn
bite	bit	bitten
bid	bade [bæd], bid	bidden, bid
chide	chid	chidden, chid
slide	slid	slidden, slid
draw	drew	drawn
grow	grew	grown
blow	blew	blown
know	knew	known
throw	threw	thrown
fly	flew	flown

現在式	過去式	過去分詞
see	saw	seen
slay	slew	slain
lie	lay	lain
lade (罕用)	laded (罕用)	laden
mow	mowed	mown
rive (罕用)	rived (罕用)	riven ['rivn]
saw	sawed	sawn
sew [sou]	sewed	sewn
hew [hju:]	hewed	hewn
strew (罕用)	strewed (罕用)	strewn
sow [sou]	sowed	sown
show	showed	shown
swell	swelled	swollen
grave (罕用)	graved (罕用)	*graven, graved
melt	melted	*molten, melted
prove [pru:v]	proved	*proven, proved
shape	shaped	*shapen, shaped
shave	shaved	*shaven, shaved
shear [ʃiə]	sheared	*shorn, sheared
cleave	clove [klouv]	*cloven ['klouvn]
tread	trod	*trodden, trod
get	got	*gotten, got
beget	begot	*begotten
forget	forgot	*forgotten, forgot
hide	hid	*hidden, hid
bind	bound	*bounden, bound
strike	struck	*stricken, struck
sink	sank	*sunken, sunk
drink	drank	*drunken, drunk
shrink	shrank	*shrunken, shrunk

【註】 (1) 末了一來個加星號的過去分詞都有一個加 -en 的形式. 這些形式大半 (雖未必盡然) 作爲用于名詞前的修飾語,而另一不加 -en 的形式是作動詞時制的一部分用的.

A *graven* image.	Image has been *(en)graved.*
Molten iron.	Iron is *melted.*
A *proven* or *proved* theory.	Theory has not been *proved.*

A clean-*shaven* face.	Have you *shaved* yet?
A *shorn* lamb.	Lamb's wool has been *sheared*.
A *forgotten* incident.	I have *forgot* (或: *forgotten*) it.
Ill-*gotten* money.	What have you *got*?
A *sunken* bell.	The ship was *sunk*.
A *drunken* fellow.	He was dead *drunk*.
A disease-*stricken* district.	I was quite *struck* by her beauty.
Your *bounden* duty.	That is *bound* to happen.
A *hidden* word.	Where have you *hidden* yourself? (*hid* 罕用)
God's only *begotten* son.	Laziness is *begotten* of the devil.
A *shrunken* face.	The cloth has *shrunk*.

The swine's *cloven* hoof (僅作此種意義解釋; 否則用 *cleft*, 如: a *cleft roof*).

(2) 注意外動詞 lay 和內動詞 lie 的分別 (*lay* a book down, 但 I *lie* in bed); 又注意規則動詞 load 和不規則動詞 lade 的分別:—

lay [放]	laid	laid	
lie [臥]	lay	lain	
lade (罕用)	lade (罕用)	laden	[裝載]
load	loaded	loaded	[裝載]

Lade 和 load 雖有規則不規則的分別, 但意義卻沒有什麼不同 (The camels were *laden* with bundles of silk / Men were *lading* the ship with wheat / to *load* the ship with goods / a table *loaded* with food).

(3) 辨別 borne [負擔] 和 born [生產] 兩個過去分詞的用法 (The whole burden is *borne* by him / A baby is *born*).

(4) 注意 flow 和 welcome 純然是規則的,雖則 fly 和 come (又 become, overcome) 是不規則的動詞.

fly [飛]	flew	flown
flow [流]	flowed	flowed
come	came	come
welcome	welcomed	welcomed

Welcome 在 You are *welcome* / He is *welcome* to say what he pleases 等句中是作形容詞用.

(5) 辨別 see 和 saw 兩個動詞現在式:—

see [看]	saw (過去式)	seen
saw [鋸] (現在式)	sawed	sawn

例句: I *saw* ("see" 的過去式) a carpenter *sawing* (現在分詞) wood under a mat shed / Softwood *saws* (現在式) more easily than hardwood.

(6) 辨別規則動詞 waken, awaken 和不規則動詞 wake, awake. 這四個詞兒都可作外動詞又可作內動詞用,意義完全相同. Wake 和 waken 通常和 up 連用 (I *wake up*, I *waken* up; *wake* him *up*, *waken* him *up*), 而 awake 和 awaken 則不然.

awake	awoke	awoke, awaked
wake	woke, waked	woken, waked
awaken	awakened	awakened
waken	wakened	wakened

助 動 詞

13.60. 【Might, Could, Would, Should 和 Ought】 May, can, will 和 shall 的過去式當然是 might, could, would 和 should. 此外還有助動詞 ought, 實在是動詞 owe 〔欠〕的過去式. 這些詞兒的用法應加以特別研究.

(a) 它們作爲副句中的過去式用. 我們要把 "He said, 'I *will* come.'" 這一類直接陳述變成間接的,那就非用 would 來代 will 不可了: He said that he *would* come.

I didn't know what I *should* do (= was to do) at the moment.
He said he *would* be coming in a week.
You didn't think he *could* do it, did you?
I thought he *might* want to leave his home for a change.
The doctor said that a week's rest *should* do him a lot of good.
So I asked him to get the money ready, and he said that it *should* be arranged.

(b) 指不確實的事情,或目前尚未發生的事,特別與 I wish 連用.

I wish you *would* not talk like that. (You *are talking* in a very rude manner.)
I wish I *could* go away for a vacation. (The fact is, I can't.)
He thinks that he *might* be able to get the job (which he hasn't got yet).
It *would* be a great pity to lose his service at the present moment. (Actually, he has not resigned yet.)
You *ought to* realize that this isn't a public playground.
I wish I *could* help you (but I can't).

(c) 和 like, want, care, think, be able to 連用,作爲限制的或弱變的陳述. I like 直截指陳'我喜歡'的顯明事實,而 I should like 卻暗示一種較爲婉和,不很堅決的意義. 後一形式通常比較前一形式更加合用.

I should like to	He might be able to
I should think	He might be willing to
You wouldn't want to	I should love to
I shouldn't want to	You would like to
I shouldn't care to	He would want to
I should be able to	She would care to

I *should think* he must be there now.
I *shouldn't think* so.
You *wouldn't want* to play the whole afternoon.
I *should be able* to tell you something more definite, if, etc.
You *should be able* (You *ought to be able*) to do it.

(§2.76 已經詳細討論過這種用法,可以復習.)

(d) 這些過去式最普通的用法還是當作指明一般假設而與時間無關的助動詞用. Do you suppose that he *could* do it? 意卽: 他是不是做得出這樣事情的那種人,無論現在或任何

時間? 如果把一隻小羊和一隻餓獅關在一間房間里，你想'會'發生什麽事情? 當然獅子'會'把小羊吃下去的。(If you put a lamb and a hungry lion together in the same room, what do you think *would* happen? The lion *would* eat up the lamb, of course). 無論什麽時候這都是確實的;並非指過去或現在。在此處 would 可算是指'一般時制' (general tense).

The ideal thing *would* be for a man to marry at about twenty-five and for a girl to marry at about twenty-two.
That *would* be the best arrangement.
Any one *could* do it.
No one *could* do two things well at a time.
General Chang Tsung-chang believes that a girl *should* be shut up in her house and *should* never appear in a public park.
He is a very sensitive man, and if you tell (或: *should* tell) him that he has got a loose button, he *might* be offended.
In order to bring about a new China, we *should* begin from the provinces, or in fact from the villages.
The best thing *would* be for everybody to go back to his province or his town and begin reform at home.
Aspirin *could* be taken whole or dissolved in a glass of water.
I *wouldn't* marry that girl, if she was worth a million.

【練習一百零四】 (A) 試用 I should like, I should think 等造句.

(B) Should, would 等指明一般假設的用法，在我們學習英文時，是一種最重要的習慣，非養成不可。下列直接陳述應改法避免，試改用一般假設的陳述:—

1. If you take away his books, he *has* nothing to do and he *sits* the whole day without saying a word.
2. I *like* to be an engineer.
3. *Is* there a chance for me?
4. If you don't look out, you *fall* down.
5. He *will* not listen to his friends' advice.
6. We two *may* pay him a surprise visit.
7. *Do* you *dare* to go out in a pink pyjama?
8. It *is* best to let him alone.

9. *Do* you *care* to come?
10. *Do* you *like* to come along?
11. I'm afraid that *is* a little difficult.

13.61. 【用助動詞的過去表現法】 因爲過去式 would, should, could 和 might 通常都是表示一般時間的，所以要用這些助動詞 (包括 may, must 和 ought) 來表示過去的一定形式的時候，必須另外把本動詞變成完了時制。 如： He *could do* it (一般時制)，但 He *could have done* it (過去時制)。

I *may have seen* it.
It *must have been* a mistake.
Some one *must have told* you.
You *should have prepared* your lesson.
It *would have been* all right, if, etc.
If the other banks had not helped, that bank *would have failed*.
Who *could have done* this?
You *may have heard* the story before.
You *should have heard* him talk at the dinner.
I *should have run* away.
You *should have resigned*.
He *could not have seen* me, because he was not there.

【練習一百零五】 這些短語都極其重要. 試以 should have, could have, may have, might have, must have 造句. 下列各句的空白處填以適當的詞兒:—

1. He had a car and five servants in his house. So he must have ——— a rich man.
2. How could you stand such a man for so long? If I were you, I should have ———.
3. He knew all about it. Some one must have ——— him.
4. You kept us all waiting for an hour. At least you might have ——— us.
5. He must have ——— this before.
6. He suddenly left without telling any one of us. I think he must have ———.

13.62. 【代助動詞的變用詞】 因爲 will, shall, must, can 已經變成了助動詞了,所以這些詞兒是 '不可變用的' (not declinable), 卽它們沒有完全的 '活用' (conjugation) 比方, must 便沒有過去式 ("He must go yesterday" 這句英文是不妥的). 但是,這些助動詞在現代英語里卻已有了代用詞,正如別的動詞一樣可以表示任何時制. 這些代用詞,在各種用法上都正如助動詞本身是一樣常用的,如: I *am going to* tell him 正如 I *shall* (或 *will*) tell him 是表示未來的一種方法. 因此可得下表:一

shall 或 *will* = be going to
can = be able to
must = have to

Be Going to

過 去 I *was going to* see him.
現 在 I *am going to* see him.
未 來 I *shall be going to* see him.

Be Able to

過 去 I *was able to* pay him.
現 在 I *am able to* pay him.
未 來 I *shall be able to* pay him.

Have to

過 去 I *had to* pay him.
現 在 I *have to* pay him.
未 來 I *shall have to* pay him.

再者,過去的未來用 was going to 或 was to 表示: We *were to* hold a meeting that afternoon 意卽 '會還沒有開,不過已經決定了那天下午要開一個會'. 又如 The ship *was to* arrive

the next morning, 而不用 The ship *should* (shall 的過去式) arrive the next morning.

【練習一百零六】 試以下列各短語造句:—

I shall have to
You will have to
He had to
We were to
I shan't be able to
He won't be able to
He was going to
I am not going to
The meeting was going to
The next athletic meet is going to
No one will be able to
Miss Li was to

表時間的連詞

13.70. 【表時間的連詞】 這些連詞之內,有的表示時間順序 (before, after), 有的表示同時 (when, while). Before 和 after 是非常之普通的,其他表時間的連詞的用法說明如下:—

(a) **Not until.** 有些中國學生把 '等錢來了,我要買一頂新帽' 一句說成 "I will buy a new hat *until* money comes". 中文 '等' 字可不是這樣譯法. 這一句或者說: "I *won't* buy a new hat *until* money comes", 或 "I will buy a new hat *when* money comes". Until 一定要和 not 或其他否定詞用在一起,或有時雖沒有否定詞,但意義隱含是某事的反面亦可. (因此 until 通常雖可譯作 '迄', '直至', 但實在應是 '非至～時' 的意思,那末和否定詞 not 並用時,便自然而然是 '非至 ～ 時不止', '直至～時爲止', '直到～時才～' 的意思了.)

Now can you forgive him?——*Not until* he makes an apology.
Not until the problem of militarists is solved, will there be any solution of the economic problems of China.

I will stay (或: I will *not* go away) *until* (或: *till*) his mother comes.
We sat up last night *till* (或: *until*) one o'clock. We did *not* go to bed *till* (或: *until*) one o'clock.
We will keep on (will *not* change) *until* the proper time comes.
No one will be able to know the truth *until* the wounded man returns to consciousness.
Until you told me I had *no* idea of it.

Till 和 until 在意義上是相同的,在用法上除了副句在文句當頭時以用 until 爲較妥（如末例）外，其餘也沒有什麼差別。(Till 雖較古,可是現在卻常用。 Until 則用于比較閑適,從容或綺麗的筆調里。)

(2) No sooner than, as soon as, directly, the moment.

No sooner had he finished his last sentence *than* the audience stood up. *As soon as* he finished, etc.
No sooner did I save up a few hundred dollars *than* some of my relatives fell sick or died. *As soon as* I saved up, etc.
The moment you leave the office, everybody starts talking, smoking and doing anything but attending to his duties. *Directly* (或: *As soon as*) you leave, etc.
Immediately he went away, some burglars went into his house and stole many things.
There will be a great sensation, *immediately* (或: *directly*, 或 *as soon as*) this news is spread abroad.

(3) While 和 when. 注意在英文里我們把 while 或 when 附在第二個子句上，正如附在第一個子句上一樣的常見。We were talking together *when* he entered the room 大概比說 *When* we were talking together, he entered the room 一句更加通馴。（參看中文'我們在講話之時他進來'，非'我們講話在他進來之時'）。無論如何，'when 子句' 或 'while 子句' 常在英文文句之末，然而中文卻少有這種情形。英文諺語有一

句 "Make hay *while* the sun shines" 〔勿失時機（原義是'宜趁天晴刈草'）〕，非 "*While* the sun shines, make hay". When 也和 which 一樣，常用于附加評論的時候（§9.62）.

You may just as well finish this up *while* you are waiting 或: *while* you have nothing else to do).

I have no time to do any reading until I come back from office, *when* I am usually too tired. (評論)

Why do you have to be an official *when* you can make much more honest money in business?

I often go to see him, *when* I have nothing to do.

When a man is out of job, he will do anything for a living.

What's the use of staying in office, *when* you can't do what you wanted to do for China?

Don't wait until they dismiss you, *when* it will be too late. (評論)

I like to do my writing at midnight, *when* all is quiet around me, and nobody calls and no telephone rings. (評論)

The Marshal goes to bed at seven in the morning, *when* everybody is getting up, and gets up at seven in the afternoon, *when* everybody is about ready to go to bed. (評論)

You can't rebuild the whole China, *when* you can't even rebuild the Chinese native city of Shanghai.

注意 when 和 while 常用于表明一種不屬時間本部的關係.

He is very short, *while* she is very tall.

He is dark, *while* his wife is very fair.

While (Although) it is true that he never visited China, he knew Chinese philosophy very well from the study of the classics.

While (Although) you cannot have exactly what you wish, you have gained something that you did not expect.

A ought to keep his promise, *while* B ought to help to make it possible for him to keep his promise.

Why do you remain with him, *when* he does not care about you and does not even support you?

【練習一百零七】 試以 when 和 while 造句，when 作評論用，while 作 "on the other hand" 或 "although" 的意思用.

時 間 副 詞

13.80. 【時間副詞】 下面是一個表明時間的典型副詞或副詞短語的表. 注意指過去我們用 *after* three days, three days *after*, three day *before* 和 three days *ago*, 而指未來通常用 *in* three days, *in* a week, *in* a minute: "I shall come back *in a minute*. (He finished it in a week〔他一星期以內把它做完〕是另一意義.) 又,注意 "always" 和 "often" 是有分別的,這兩個詞兒在中文里通常都譯做 '常' 字. He is *always* like that 嚴格地應該譯做 '他老是這樣', 而 He is *often* like that 應該譯做 '他常這樣'. "Presently" 並非 at present 的意思,是 by and by〔不久〕(切勿爲它的形式所惑,以爲它是 "present+ly" 的), 例如: I shall attend to this *presently* / *Presently* (=soon afterward) he appeared again. "Every" 和 "next" 的前面不用介詞,如 *every* time, *next* Wednesday, *next* month.

most of the time
often, seldom
ever, never
once in a while
once in a blue moon
now and again
sooner or later
once a week, once a month
on that day
on Christmas Eve
on Monday, on the 23rd
this Monday (不用介詞)
every Monday (不用介詞)
next Monday (不用介詞)
at first, at last
at night, at midday
at sunrise, at sunset
for ever, for good
by that time (§ 11.62)
for three whole days
this time, (the) last time, next time, every time, each time (不用介詞)
(a) week from today, *or* this day week (不用介詞)
Saturday week, a week from Saturday
week after next

presently, soon	the other day (過去)
soon afterwards (過去)	in a day or two
three days after (過去)	in a minute
after three days (過去)	wait a day, an hour, a minute (不用介詞)
some time ago (過去)	

(此類副詞中表時間的介詞用法,參看 §11.62).

【練習一百零八】 試以上列各短語造句,特別注意介詞之用法和省略,

名詞中的時間

13.90. 【名詞中的時間】 通例名詞不含有時間的意念. 可是在下列這幾個實例中卻是有時間關係的:—

her ex-husband	the late prime minister
an ex-president	the former president
an ex-convict	the bride-to-be
the late John Smith	his mother-in-law-to-be

"Ex-"=前.以前的,前任的; "late"=已故; "former"=前任,曾任; "~ -to-be"=未來的~.

參看中文'先總理','已故中央研究院長','前江蘇省主席','先父','先祖母','晚娘(繼母,後母)','前妻','未婚夫(或妻)'. 又,祖宗稱爲'祖先'或'先人',子孫稱爲'後人'或'後裔'.

第十四章　事實和想像

14.10. 【動詞的語氣：跟句的語氣有密切關係】 動詞的語氣通常類分如下：—

(1) 直　　說: I come / I shall come.
(2) 命　　令: Come!
(3) 疑　　問: Will you come?
(4) 虛　　擬: If he come.
(5) 無 限 式: To come.

直說語氣用于陳述，命令語氣用于發號施令，疑問語氣用于詢問，虛擬語氣用于假設，無限式是指陳不屬于任何固定主語的動作.

這些語氣都不過是使用動詞時的某些形式. 它們跟第三章所講的'句的語氣'並無衝突，而且幫助形成它們. 例如疑問語氣自然是用于疑問句，命令語氣用于命令句，諸如此類.

14.11. 【事實和想像】 在上面所舉的動詞語氣之中，唯一有特別形式的便是虛擬語氣 (if he *come*, if I *were*). 但是這種虛擬語氣之重要不僅在于形式之特別而已. 由意念的觀點看來，它是代表一種極其重要的心理上的分別，即講英語的人所指是事實還是想像的一種分別，這在中文里是不加注意的.

14.12. 【主觀和客觀】 從意念的立場上講，動詞的語氣可分爲兩類：'主觀' (**subjective**) 和 '客觀' (**objective**). 例如 He came 是一種直率的客觀事實的陳述; He *might* come / He *would* come / If he *should* come 便是主觀判斷的陳述. 在 That *is* a mistake 句中，動詞 is 是一定用于陳述事實的 (雖則它也可以包括一種客觀的判斷)、但在 That *must be* a mis-

take That *would be* a mistake / That *might be* a mistake 等句中, must be, would be 和 might be 這些動詞都只指陳主觀的意見.

'主觀語氣' 又可叫做 '可能語氣' (參看 §§ 3.71-3.77). 它們所轄的範圍比它的舊名稱 '虛擬語氣' 來得廣闊. 例如 I hope you *will* come 句中 will come 實在是一種主觀的陳述(一種希望), 雖則在形式上我們說它是直說而非虛擬的語氣.

虛擬語氣

14.20. 「虛擬語氣: 時制的變換」 虛擬語氣的形式, 我們必定要先學習. 各種形式如下:—

(1) If I had known. (過去)
(2) If I knew. (現在)
(3) If I don't come home tonight (未來)
(4) If I (should) know. (一般)

此外, 我們須研究動詞 to be 的各種虛擬式 (if he *be*, if he *were*, if he *was*).

在虛擬語氣的用法之中, 要注意有一種時制的變換. 過去改用過去完了, 現在改用過去, 未來改用現在. 上列第 (4) 式將來另節討論 (§ 14.21)

下列主觀和客觀的陳述可對比一下:—

客觀	主觀
It *was* a failure.	If it *had been* a success.
It *rained* yesterday	If it *hadn't rained*.
I *knew* nothing about it.	If I *had known*.

I *know* nothing about it. If I *knew*.
That *is* a lie. If it *was* a fact.
I *have* only a dollar left. If I *had* more.
He *thinks* so. If he *thought* otherwise.
You *are studying* English. If you *were studying* French.
I *shan't come* home tonight. If I *don't come* home tonight.
It *will rain*. If it *rains* tonight.
War *will break* out soon. When it *breaks* out next week.
You *will see* him tonight. When you *see* him.

【練習一百零九】 試完成下列虛擬語氣的文句:—

1. He forgot to bring a dictionary. If he . . . not . . . .
2. I stopped him. If I . . . not . . . .
3. It rained last night, as you could see the road is wet. If it . . . not . . . .
4. I have very little money. If I . . . .
5. He is very clever, but a little too talkative. If he . . . .
6. (I am not in your place.) If I . . . you . . . .
7. Don't let him know. If he . . . .
8. I shall go and see him. And if I . . . not find him . . . .
9. What will you do, if you . . . (*die*? *shall die*?) tomorrow?
10. She will marry him, no matter what . . . . (*happens*? *will happen*?)

14.21. 【一般假設: If He Should Have, If He Have】 Should 一詞,卽在 §§ 3.76, 13.60 兩節里所討論過的,是用于陳述一般假設的。 If ～ should 要算是作此種用法的唯一最普通的形式。

If you *should* ever need money.
If there *should* be (或: *Should* there be) a vacancy.
If he *should* forget.
If I *should* die now.
If he *should* become the president.
If you *should* be interested in this matter.
If that *should* be the case.
If there *should* be a war between China and Japan.

If some one *should* say to you today.
If you *should* win the champion sweepstakes [香檳票,跑馬票].

正如上面已經說過,這些句子並不指任何特定時間,雖則有時可以指明一種時間. 這些句子可說是一般假設,屬于一般時制.

再者, should 又用于 lest, for fear, in case 以及別的主觀子句 (subjective clause) 之中.

I shall send him a written word, *lest* he *should* forget.
Lest you *should* think I was unwilling to help you, I am enclosing herewith some money.
I am putting the money in different banks, *in case* (或: *lest*) some of them *should* fail.
He is doing it *for fear* (或: *lest*) people *should* misunderstand him.
In case you *should* need my help, just let me know.

把這個弄清楚以後,我們可進而研究英文的虛擬式: if he *come* / if he *be* / if he *have*. 現在在標準英語里,這些形式已大不用了,(還是用 if he *comes* / if he *is* / if he *has*; 或 if he *should come* / if he *should be* / if he *should have*). 因爲它們是比較偏僻,平常文法書未免過于注重它們. 這類的形式可算是等于 if he should come 省去了 should, 換句話說,無論什麼地方見了這樣的形式,總可能插入一個 should. 例如:—

If it *be* said that, etc. = if it *should be* said that, etc.
Although it *be* the last thing I desire = although it *should be*, etc.
Lest he *hear* about it = lest he *should hear*, etc.
Suppose that he *return* you the money = suppose he *should return* you, etc.
The court ordered that he *leave* the city at once, or that he *be* hanged to death = the court ordered that he *should leave*, etc., or that he *should be* hanged.

He agreed to go, on the condition that his family expenses *be* (=*should be*) well provided for.

The widow was bequeathed the whole estate, provided she *remain* (=*should remain*) unmarried.

【練習一百一十】 一切凡不確實陳述一件事實的句子里,往往都用 should,如 It is proper that you *should*, etc. 試以下列短語造句:—

1. If . . . should . . . .
2. What if . . . should . . . ?
3. Should there be a . . . .
4. How should I . . . ?
5. I would . . . whenever he should . . . .
6. Should you . . . , would you . . . ?
7. Lest . . . should . . . .
8. In case he should . . . .
9. For fear he should . . . .
10. It is proper that . . . should . . . .
11. It is not right that . . . should . . . .
12. It is beyond my understanding that . . . should . . . .
13. I am thinking whether . . . should . . . .
14. I do not doubt that you should be able to . . . .
15. It is incredible that . . . should . . . .
16. Don't you think you should . . . ?
17. I can't understand why . . . should . . . .
18. I can't believe that . . . should . . . .
19 It was his mother's idea that he should . . . .
20. It was our plan that . . . should . . . .

14.22. 【假設的各種程度】 我們在上面 (§ 3.77) 已經提醒過,有幾種虛擬式要加以注意. 指現在的簡單句子里,可用下列這幾式:—

(1) If he comes
(2) If he come (If he should come / Should he come)
(3) If he came

問題是，它們在實際用法上應該如何加以區別呢？ 要明瞭這一點，我們必須知道假設是有各種程度的，從一種極其可能是眞實的假設 (if he *comes*)，到一種較純粹的假設式 (if he *should come*) 以及甚至一種絕對虛妄的假設（現在用 if he *came*，過去用 if he *had come*). 究竟要用那一種程度的假設，這完全看說者的意向如何而決定。

(1) 過去的假設都是虛妄的。 過去的事情都是事實 (§13.40). 因此過去時制的一種陳述是虛是實，通常是了然的，那末過去時制的一種假想或假設的事情分明是虛妄的了。 這個在下列兩例中極易看出：—

If it *had rained* last night, the roads would be wet. (It did not rain last night.)
If I *had* not *stopped* him, he would have been killed. (I did stop him.)

(2) 未來的假設虛實未定。 未來的動作或事情尚未發生，所以未來陳述很少是陳述一件事實的，只是一種願望 (I *will* go)，一種義務 (I *have to* go)，一種可能 (I *may* go)，或一種期待 (I *shall* go). 無論是那一種，其中差不多老是有一種強烈的主觀成分 (參看 § 13.30). 假設式 (if it *rains* tomorrow: 又一般時制式，if it *should* rain tomorrow) 老是含有一種未定性.

(3) 現在的假設形色不一。 最普通的形式是用平常的直說語氣：if he *comes*. 如果假設的程度較深的時候，便用一般時制式：if he *should* come (now). 這個可以叫做一種較純粹的假設式。 用 if he *come* (以代替 if he should come) 時，其主觀的効力更大，如在辯論句中：even if he *come* / though

he *be* a millionaire / provided he *obey* strictly my orders. 還有一種更直接更純粹的假設式是 if he *came*, 或 even if he *came*, 差不多老是含有這種假設完全是虛妄的意思.

【練習一百十一】 試就下列各句中決定應用何式,並細察其所含假設之程度如何,抑可能,抑假定,抑虛妄. 注意現在式往往用平常的直說語氣.

1. What if I *don't* (*didn't*?) want to help you?
2. What does it matter, even if it *is* (*was*?) true?
3. I will have that treasure searched for, even if it *cost* (*should cost*? *costs*?) me a hundred thousand dollars.
4. What *can* (*could*?) he do, even if you *refuse* (*refused*?) him?
5. Go and see if he *is* (*be*? *was*?) here.
6. If we want to obtain government by law, we must see to it that corrupt officials *are* (*be*?) duly punished.
7. If he ever *comes* (*should* ever *come*?) back, do not take him in.

14.23. 【If I Was, If I Were】 在動詞 to be 的情形之中,現在假設所用 if I was 和 if I were (又 if he was, if he were) 之間還有一種分別. 兩者所說的假設大概都是虛妄的,但 I were, he were 強調它們的虛妄性更甚于 I was, he was. 可是,這兩式在現代英文里都極常用,有時簡直沒有分別.

He could not know everything unless he *was* a god. (在此種場合, *was* 似較 *were* 爲妥.)

If I *were* you, I wouldn't tell him about it. (在此短語之中,慣用 *were*)

Even if I *was* (或: *were*) here, what could I do?

It *were* better (即 *It would be better* 之簡) that you never *saw* him again.

I know that if he *was* here, he would deny it.

可能語氣

14.30. 【可能語氣】'可能語氣'祇是主觀語氣的別名。我們在第三章里（§§ 3.71-3.77），已經學過了句子的可能語氣。這些可能語氣包括所有表明願望，命令，請求，疑惑，恐懼，希望，判斷，勸告，需要，膽氣，推定，猜測，可能，以及其他有關的陳述。在這里，我們要把它們再復習一遍，特別注意所用的動詞形式。它們不老是適用虛擬式，而通常需要一個助動詞。

(1) 命令·請求·提議。虛擬式最常用于這一類的陳述。現在時制（通稱'虛擬式現在'）甚至用于過去。

The Captain commanded that he *go* at once. (*Go*=*should go*, 參看 §14.21.)

It is requested that the patient *be* (非: *is*) allowed to have home food brought to him.

I suggest that you *go* (非: *will go*) and fetch him.

It is the people's desire that the king *resign* (=*should resign*) and *be* (非: *is*) replaced by his nephew.

(2) 條件和讓步。這也往往用虛擬式（現在或過去），雖則平常的直說語氣也許更普通些。此中的取捨，參看 §14.22.

條　件

I don't know if this *be* (或: *is*) true.

If it *come* (=*should come* 或 *comes*) to that, I would fight it out in court.

讓　步

Although she *is* (直說) rich, she is not happy. (It is a fact that she is rich.)

Though she *be* (虛擬) the richest woman in town, she would not be satisfied. (一種假設)

You have done very well, although you *might* (或: *could*) have done better.
Still I am not for it, although all that you say *may* (或: *might*) be quite true.

(3) 願望. 願望往往指一種虛妄的假設,所以常用過去時制(參看 §14.22, 第 3 式). 又,參看 § 3.73.

I wish I *knew*.
I wish I *were* dead.
I wish I *were* in your place.
I wish you *would* (或: *could*) come. (注意非: *will*.)
但: *May* God bless you! *May* the Devil take you!

(4) 希望·恐懼·疑惑. 這些往往包括對于未來事情的預測,所以當然要用 will (第二,三人稱) 和 shall (第一人稱).

I doubt whether I *shall* be able to do it.
I have no doubt he *will* be able to do it. (用 *is able* 也不錯,但不十分普通.)
I am afraid I *shan't* be able to come.
I'm afraid that *will* be the end of his romance.
I hope you *will* come. (但: "I hope you *are* satisfied."——指現在)
We hope that China *will* become (非: *becomes*) a strong nation.
There is no doubt he *is* the best boy of the class. (指現在)

(5) 判斷和假設. 這在 §§ 14.21-14.22 里詳細說明過了. 假設越純粹,那末越發要用虛擬式. "That *might* be true" 比較 "That *may* be true 的虛擬的涵義更強. "I suppose he *can* do it and I know he is going to do it" 一句可以和 "I suppose he *could* do it, if he *wan'ed* to" 比較比較.

(6) 義務. 英國慣用法中時常用 ought, 尤其比在美國慣用法 (用 should) 里用得多.

You *ought* to obey your parents.
We *ought* to love our country.
You *oughtn't* to do it.
You *ought* not to speak like that.
I *ought* to have told you. (指過去應做而未做的事)
It *ought* to have been done long ago.

(在美國方言中,陋語形式 "had ought" 往往用于過去.)

注意 ought 雖然也是一個助動詞,但在形式上仍舊作有限式動詞用,所以它後面的 to 千萬不可省去.

(7) 猜測. 關于未知的事情有所猜測,通常作否定的意味時用 can (或 could), 作肯定意味時用 must.

It *cannot* be due to his ignorance.
The mistake *must* be intentional.
It *could* not have been stolen by some burglar.
It *must* have been stolen by some one among the servants.
Yes, I think that *must* be true.
That *must* be a mistake.
No, it *cannot* be a mistake.

(8) 可能. May 或 might 要看情形或假設程度如何而定.

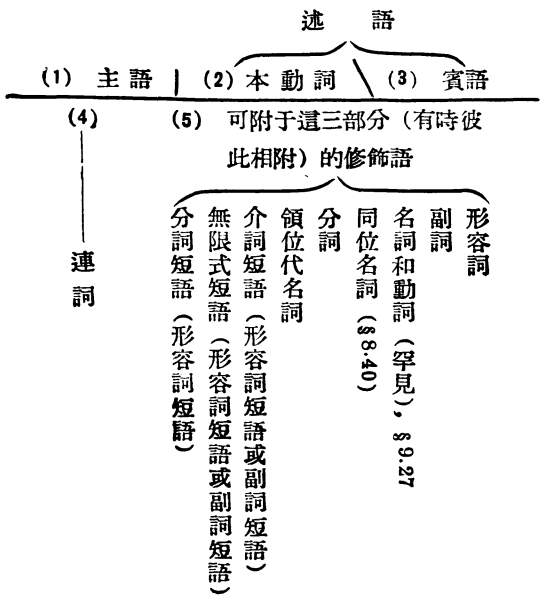
That *may* be your last chance.
He *might* still succeed.
You *might* burn down the whole house.
He *may* recover.
If I give you all the money now, you *may* spend it all.

第十五章 關 係

15.10. 【連詞和邏輯關係】 任何語文的介詞都是作爲接合文句的各部分用的。 就文法上講，它們是句法的關節。 就意念上講，它們的作用是表明邏輯的關係。 這後一種見解較爲寬廣而深遠。 比方，我們常常看見英文句子以 "and", "therefore", "but", 或 "because" 這一類的連詞起頭: *And* I went away / *Therefore* I went away / *But* how can I do it? / (Why didn't you go?) *Because* it was too late. 要把它們跟上句的邏輯關係尋出來，這是不難的，但是要把它們跟上句的文法關係尋出來，那可不十分容易了，因爲每句可算是一個個別的統一體。

單句·複句·包孕句

15.20. 【單句·複句·包孕句】 單句的各部分可類分如下表 (見下頁):一



上表說明'單句'(Simple Sentence) 的句法. 歎詞在性質上實則是獨立的. 在這類的單句里,連詞大半是用以連接修飾語的: I saw a *good* and *handsome* boy / He worked *hard* and *fast*. 主語和本動詞仍然是單純的性質.

其次,另有一種句子,或者是兩個主語合一個動詞 (*He* and *I* went), 或者是兩個動詞合一個主語 (He *came* and *went*). 有些文法學家早已把這個當作'複句' (Compound Sentence) 的縮短式看待 (=*He came* and *he went* / *He went* and *I went*). 但是這個除了給弄慣分類把戲的那班文法學家去分門別類而外, 沒有什麼實在的意思.

第三，即眞正的複句，如下例：—

He wen't away, *so* I came.
I came, *because* he went away.
Either you said so, *or* you didn't.
You broke it, *therefore* you must pay for it.
He wanted to go, *but* he didn't.

上面 so, because 等連詞都是把兩個各別的句子連成一句，各有其主語和述語.

至此爲止，我們還沒有把編入另一子句之中的子句導引出來. He went away 明明是和 I came 不相干的. 我們一把編入另一子句中去的——或作爲它結構中之一部分的——子句導引出來，即成功所謂'包孕句' (Complex Sentence) 的句子. 例如：—

I didn't say this. (單)
I didn't say *that I wouldn't go*. (包孕: 名詞子句 *that I wouldn't go* 作主句中的賓語用)

That is unknown to me. (單)
How he did it is unknown to me. (包孕: 名詞子句作主語)

The man went away. (單)
The man *who was with you* went away. (包孕: 關係子句 *who was with you* 作 man 的修飾語)

上面這三個包孕句的例子中，是用連詞 that, how 以及關係代名詞 who 把新子句和原來的那個主句連接起來的. 關係代名詞實則就是連續代名詞，正如關係副詞 (the time *when*, the place *where*) 就是連續副詞一樣，因爲除了在關係子句之中盡其正常的功用以外，其作用便在于把新子句和別的東西連接起來.

平列子句和附屬子句

15.30. 【平列子句和附屬子句】 在包孕句中，很明顯的老是有一個'主句'或'正句'(main *or* principal clause)和一個或一個以上的'副句'或'附句'(subordinate *or* dependent clause). 副句是編入，或依附于，主句的，所以應該看做低一級. 如在 The man *who was with you* went away 一句中，who was with you 這個子句是依附于主句 The man went away 的.

但即使在某些複句之中，也有主句和副句的分別. 在 He came, but I went 句中，這兩個子句顯然是同等重要的，因此無所謂主句副句了. 但在 He would come *if I would go* 句中，這第一子句 (He would come) 明明是主要的陳述，而 if I would go 只不過敘述他來的一個條件. 所以我們覺得第二個子句的重要不及，或它的等級低于，那第一個. 因此即在複句里，也可以有一個主句和一個副句.

在這種複句里，到底那個子句算是主句，那個算是副句，以及這兩個子句是同等重要或不同等重要，這完全要看意義如何，而不能從文法形式上加以斷定. 連詞如 and, both, either ~ or, but, as well as, not only ~ but also〔和，並且，或~或，但是，以及，不特~而且〕當然是導引'平列子句' (co-ordinate clauses) (同等). 在另一方面，連詞如 if, because, although since, in order that, so that, lest〔假設，因爲，雖則，既然，因此，才，免得〕等，當然是導引'附屬子句' (subordinate clauses) (差等).

下列各例可以說明由于意義而決定的這種平列子句和附屬子句的分別（斜體字是連詞或連詞短語）：—

平 列 子 句（同 等）

He was a thief, *and* she was the thief's wife.
This one is good, *but* that one is not.
Not only is it possible, *but* it is *also* desirable to have him go with you.
Neither is this mine, *nor* is it yours.
This is all very well; *still*, it is not enough.
The rich man becomes richer, *while* the poor man becomes poorer.
She became very weak, *whereas* she had been very strong and healthy before her marriage.
You must do as I say; *otherwise* (或: *or else*) I will have nothing to do with you.

附 屬 子 句（差 等）

I will tell you, *if* you will promise not to tell any one.
Unless you promise, I cannot tell it to you.
We climbed over the top, *in order that* we might get a better view.
He began to do his best, *lest* he should fail again.
I said *that* he was no person to take up this business.
So long as you persist, I will not give you any money.

邏 輯 關 係

15.40. 【邏輯關係】 一切連詞都表明某種邏輯關係. 這種種關係約略可分下列各項，每項中我們要細看它們在英文里的各種表達方法. 連詞，與連續部分（關係代名詞和關係副詞）併在一起，居于主角的地位. 介詞短語和分詞短語也往往可以代替連詞所導引的子句；事實上，它們老是短些，因此造起句子來也簡單些，容易處置些.

15.41. 【聯合】 最普通的一種形式是聯帶關係，即 '聯合' (**combination**). And 和 both ～ and 〔以及，又～又〕是任何種類的詞兒或詞羣都可以連接的。

He was [*both*] defeated *and* tired (連接形容詞).
He played [*both*] fast *and* beautifully (副詞).
We saw each other off *and* on (副詞).
We *both* read *and* write at school (動詞).
The arrow pierced into *and* through his chest (介詞).
I paid *both* for him *and* [for] his friends (介詞短語).
Both he *and* his wife escaped (主語——代名詞或名詞).
He was strong *and* she was handsome (子句 .
Men must work *and* women must weep (子句).

表明其他類似的關係時可用 as well as, not only ～ but (also), furthermore, besides, in addition, what is more, on top of that 〔以及，不特～而且，加之，此外，又，更甚者，況且〕:

He, *as well as* his secretary, was found guilty.
We *not only* dined together, *but also* danced together.
Not only did we dine together, *but* we *also* danced together.
It was *not only* unfair; it was contemptible.
He was *not only* found guilty, *but* was *also* condemned to life imprisonment.
The extra tax was a heavy burden on the people. *Furthermore*, it was against the orders of the Central Government.
Besides (連詞), it is against my principles.
Besides (介詞) giving him money and advice, he also bought the steamship ticket for him.
I have, *in addition*, last month's bills to pay.
What is more, the prisoners were subjected to flogging and torture, *in addition to* poor food and unhygienic surroundings.
On top of that, they were denied all intercourse with their friends.

15.42. 【對立】 表明 '對立' 關係 (**opposition**) 時，最有用的連詞大概是 however 〔可是〕. 其他的詞兒和短語如: but,

while, whereas, far from (~ing), on the contrary, on the other hand〔但是,既,而,決不,反之,在另一方面〕, despite (介詞), in spite of (介詞)〔不拘,不管〕以及較簡單的介詞 contrary to 和 against. But 固然是最簡單最常用的詞兒, however 卻也是最有用的,既作 but 的變式,又作連詞用,在文句中各處都可以安置,因此成就了一種較平易較柔韌的結構. Nevertheless〔但是〕也是很有用的,它傳達一種更深的對比意味,但是 notwithstanding〔不顧〕則有點兒古老了.

However, I am merely reporting this as a fact.

This, *however*, is something different from what you said the other day.

This is, *however*, something different, etc.

This is something different, *however*, from what, etc.

(表'讓步':—*However* much I may wish to help you, I can't. 參看§15.45.)

But you said you could.

While this position offers you honour and power, it imposes on you also a great responibility.

He claimed that opium had been completely suppressed in that district, *while* the facts are exactly to the contrary.

Some children like school, *whereas* others do not.

Contrary to what he said, the growing of poppies has been systematically enforced upon the people *against* the people's wish.

In opposition to what you read in the newspapers, the prisoner has really never received a fair trial.

Far from wish*ing* him any ill, I have been offering him the best advice a friend can give.

On the contrary, his expenses were all subsidized by the Japanese news agency [通訊社].

Far be it *from* me to criticize the government, who are my superiors.

On the one hand, he took money from the Government, *on the other hand*, he was carrying on anti-government propaganda.

On the other hand, there is t. s to be said for him.

Despite (In spite of) repeated warnings, he went to Manchuria.
She married him *in spite of* her father's opposition (*against* her father's wish).
Nevertheless, she married.
She married *all the same.*
Notwithstanding all this, China's internal administration has steadily improved.
For all (In spite of all) your trouble, nothing has been gained or accomplished.

15.43. 〔抉擇和替代〕 表示'抉擇' (selection), 用 either ～ or 〔或～或〕和 neither ～ nor 〔既不～又不〕. Either 又可單獨用于子句之末,卽 "also" 之意. Neither 和 nor 〔也不〕都可單獨用于句首,卽 "also not" 之意. 表示'替代' (substitution)用 instead of, in place of (介詞) 〔代替〕, otherwise, or, or else 〔否則, 不然〕. Or 有兩種意義: (1) 表更迭的意思(解作'或', '或者', '或是'); (2)＝otherwise 〔不然,否則〕.

You are *either* a fool *or* a knave.
Either you are a fool *or* you are a knave.
Either you are trying to deceive me, *or* you have been deceived yourself.
Either he goes *or* I go (卽: We cannot work together).
Neither you *nor* anybody else can persuade him to give up writing poetry.
God is *neither* here *nor* there.
Neither of you knows the exact truth.
Either of us (*Either* you *or* I) must go.
You cannot do it. *Neither* (或: *Nor*) can I. I cannot, *either*.
You do as I say, *or* (＝*otherwise*) out you go.
You had better hurry, *or* (或: *otherwise*) you will be late.
You can send him along, *or else* you can go yourself.
Otherwise, how could he come in?
Instead of being dressed up for dinner, he came down in his dressing gown.
Instead of this, he took that. He took this *instead of* that.

Instead of improv*ing* his service, he became worse.
I came *in* his *stead* (或: *place*).
Instead of a Li Hung-chang, we have a graduate of Oberlin.
In place of the old manager, we have a new boss in the person of McKinley.
Government by law, *instead of* by personal privilege, is what we we want.

15.44. 【包括 (inclusion) 和除外 (exclusion)】 現在分詞 including 〔包括～在內〕, excluding 〔除外〕, excepting 〔除去〕都放在子句之首,而它們的被動式 (included, excluded, excepted) 用時老是放在它們所修飾的詞兒之後. Except, excepting 和 but 用時意義完全相同,既作連詞又作介詞用. Except='除非'. But for 往往好似一個成語,即 "except for" 〔如非〕的意思. Too 〔也〕在現代英語里比 also 更常見更通俗. 這兩個詞兒都可以用在句子當中或末了,而 also 往往也用于句首.

We have ten working days left this week, *excluding* the Sundays (或: the Sundays *excluded*).
We will take in all applicants, foreigners (或: Chinese) *excepted*.
Excepting for a little over-use of red and green, the painting is perfect.
But for your help, I might have died.
The hospital has a staff of thirty, *including* the nurses (=nurses *included*=with the nurses *included*).
"I can resist everything *except* temptation," says Oscar Wilde.
When we arrived, we saw nothing *except* three persons sitting in the front row.
That is true, *too*. That is *also* true.
He came along, *too*. He, *too*, came along.
He came *also*. He *also* came.
Also (=Moreover), it must not be forgotten that he was born of Indian parents.

That is *also* a good thing. That, *also*, is a good thing. That is a good thing, *also*.

15.45. 【條件和讓步】 If, providing, provided 和 on the condition that 〔如果,若,倘,假令,假使〕等表明 '條件' (condition). Though 和 although 〔雖則,雖然〕表明 '讓步' (concession), 用時無甚差別,又如 granting 和 granted 〔卽令,姑認〕. 在句首, although 比 though 常見. Granting, providing 不及 granted, provided 普通,但意義跟後兩個詞兒相同. 又,作這種意義的 as 和 while 的用法也應當注意.

Measles is not a dangerous disease, *provided* you keep the child in a closed room and maintain an even temperature.

Many incurable diseases are really curable, *providing* (=*if*) you begin treatment early.

Providing (或: *Provided*) everything goes off smoothly as we planned, there is no reason why you should not succeed.

Although he is poor, he is honest.

He is honest, *though* poor.

He cannot make both ends meet, *although* he tries his best to save.

(省略文) Do your best, but you won't succeed. (=*Although* you may do your best, you won't succeed.)

Try *as* you may (=*Although* you may try as hard as you please), you won't succeed.

Hard *as* I tried (=*However* hard I tried), I could not hit the mark.

Willing *as* I was (=*Although* I was willing) to help him, I had to send him away empty-handed.

While (=*Although*) I admit that it is so, still I cannot absolve him from all blame.

While (=*Although*) he was not the only person to blame, he was principally responsible for it.

【練習一百十二】 試用上列各連詞造句,以表讓步或認可之意,即以上列各例句爲模範.

15.46. 【原因和結果】 表明'原因'(cause)的普通的詞兒是連詞 because, as, since〔因爲,既〕,介詞 owing to, on account of〔因爲,由于〕和分詞短語. 表明'結果'(result)用: hence, therefore, consequently, in consequence, as a consequence, with the result that〔由此,所以,因此,結果〕. Hence 老是用于子句之首,而 therefore 恰正如 however 一樣,地位可以任意變更(§15.42). Owing to, on account of 是介詞,後跟名詞或名動詞(~ing),因此可以造成更短的句子. 它們不形成子句,只形成介詞短語.

Therefore, there was no way for me to do it.
There was, *therefore*, no way for me to do it.
There was no way, *therefore*, for me to do it.
There was no way for me to do it, *therefore*. (罕見)
As I did not want to see him, I sent him a letter.
As it was his fault, he had to make it up to him.
As the train was two hours late, we strolled round the neighbourhood.
Well, *since* you say so, I will go.
Since there was nobody else to go, I went myself.
Since it is neither white nor black, it must be grey.
Since that is the case, we might just as well go home.
On account of his presence, we did not express any opinion.
Owing to (*Because of*) his presence, etc.
Because he was present, etc.
As (*Since*) he was present, etc.
Consequently (*In consequence*, *As a consequence*,) he died.
The doctor left a knife in his stomach, *with the result that* he died three days afterwards.
He spoke for an hour and half *with the result that* the other speakers had no chance to say anything.

英文里有一種結構特別有趣,它跟許多中文句子一樣,表明原因時不用任何連詞. 這一類句子如:—

Love me, love my dog. [愛我者愛吾犬,愛屋及烏.]
Once a thief, always a thief. [一次賊,百次賊.]
First come, first served. [先來者先供應.]

15.47. 【動機和目的】 有一種微微不同的關係是用表'目的'(purpose)或'動機'(motive)的詞兒來表達. 一般地講,因果是比較屬于外來的(外來的事件),而動機和目的是內在的(做事時的一種內心的理由). 分詞 thinking, seeing, hearing, knowing, believing, mistaking 以及其他形容心理狀態的類似詞兒往往作這種用法. 其他常用的短語如: in view of〔由～觀之,鑒于,爲～之故〕, with a view to (～ing)〔以～之目的,爲～起見〕, in order that, in order to〔爲～而〕, so that〔如是～致,因～故,是以〕, for the purpose of〔爲～目的〕, out of (kindness, gratefulness, carelessness, jealousy 等)〔出于,由于〕, by way of〔以～作爲〕, to the end that〔爲～之故而〕.

Believing (*Thinking*, *Hearing*) that he was in Paris, she took the next train to France.

In her hurry, she got into a train for Lyons, *mistaking* it for the Paris train.

She went there, *with a view to* ascertain*ing* (*in order to* ascertain, *for the purpose of* ascertain*ing*, *so that* she might ascertain) who was her husband's new love.

It was done purely *out of* jealousy.

Out of gratefulness (for returning the handbag), she gave the coolie a present of ten dollars.

I was doing it just *out of* pity, not *out of* love.

In order to stop this trouble, the Government is ready to close down the whole school.

We gave him a hundred dollars just *in order to* shut up his mouth.

By way of illustrat*ing* what he meant, he produced a chart of the club's activities.

We should all work and labour, *to the end that* the new movement may become a success.

15.48. 【比較和一致】 用介詞表'比較' (**comparison**) 時 (more than, as ～ as) 現出許多文法特點來. 這是由于所謂'比較' 老是指兩個部分的高下,不問是名詞,動詞,形容詞,或成羣的詞兒. 比方,拿我的年齡跟你的年齡比較,說 I am three years **older than** *you*, 這比較的兩部分便是 I am old 和 you are old, 或者我的年齡和你的年齡. 自然,整句的意義是 I am three years older than *you are old*, 但是要把第二部分複述一遍,那未免太愚了. 因此這第二部分老是縮短,如此句中縮短成爲 you. 又,如 I know you **better than** he *does*, 這第二部分的 does 就代替了 knows you.

像這樣的第二比較部分的省略和特點,在 §10.20 和 §10.50 里已經詳細講過了.

主語省略: He eats more than (what) *is good for him*. (參看: *more than*, §10.20, "1")
賓語省略: He eats more than (what) *he can digest*. (參看: *more than*, §10.20, "1")
主語和動詞省略: I love you more than (I love) *her*.
賓語和動詞省略: I love you more than *he* (loves you).

又,比較 §10.20 第 2 項中 so ～ that 和 so ～ as 的用法 (第 278 頁).

比較的第二部分或是名詞,或動詞,形容詞,無限式短語,或整個子句.

名詞或代名詞: This is better than *that*.
動詞: I would do anything rather than *let* him get off like that.

無限式短語: He knows better than *to go out alone on such a night.*
形容詞: This is more than *fine*: it is excellent.
副詞: I have read it more than *once.*
子句: He spends more than *he is earning.*
She is as good as *she is pretty.*

還有一種包孕句,其中第二部分是編入第一個句子里面:

This is *as* much *as I can stand.*

此處 This is much 是主句, as much as I can stand 是副句, 當作副詞子句修飾 much 的.

通常表'一致' (**conformity**) 的詞兒是: according as 〔隨～而〕(後跟子句), according to, in conformity with, in accordance with 〔依據,按照,依照〕(後面都跟名詞), 和 accordingly (副詞) 〔是以,如前所述〕.

According to Rule Six, all cinema films made in China must be censored before they are exported.
In accordance with that rule, I am submitting this for your inspection.
He said that all this had been done *in conformity with* their previous agreement.
We treated them on the spot or sent them to a hospital *according as* the wounds were light or heavy.
He is drunk or sober, *according as* he wins or loses (*according as* he fares, or *according to* his luck.)

15.49. 【時間和邏輯關係】 表明時間關係的介詞和副詞如 as soon as 〔一經～即〕, meanwhile 〔當其時〕, after 〔在～以後〕, 都是導引正常的子句的. 這一範疇中常用的副詞當然是 when, while 和 as. 可是像這一類表時間的連接的詞兒

往往另外轉變成新的意義,所表明卻是時間以外的另一種邏輯關係。例如在:—

> Why do you try to help others, *when* [既然] you cannot even pay your tailor's bills?

一句里,所表明的關係不僅是時間,而是一種'對比方面'(**contrasting aspect**) While〔然而〕和 so long as〔苟,只要〕也是如此情形:— Why doesn't he pay up his debt, *while* he is buying his wife new hats everyday? / *So long as* they don't see each other, they get along nicely; but *the moment* they come together, they start quarelling all over again.

At the same time, in the meanwhile, in the meantime, meanwhile 和 while (一律作'同時'解) 表明'同時的動作'(**contemporaneous action**),往往帶有'對比'的效果。Pending〔在~之中〕意味和這相同,但是是一個介詞。As soon as, the moment, directly, immediately 和 after 表明'事件的順序'(**sequence of events**),往往也含有因果的一種內在關係。副詞 once 特別是表明一種偶然或臨時的關係 (**casual relationship**).

Once you begin, you never know where you will end. (比較中文'此例一開','一失足成千古恨'等句中的'一'字.)
Once you taste our dinner, you will come again.
When *once* he understands, he will forgive everything.
Immediately you try to do something, people will cry you down.
The professor began his lecture *the moment* he entered the room.
Directly (=*As soon as*) the teacher walked out of the room, there was an uproar.
After I had done so much for the boy, he ran away and disappeared.
At the same time, you must remember this is not all a matter of luck. One has to work hard, too.

Meanwhile, you go ahead with your own work.
Pending the construction of the new building, the students will be housed in the old dormitory.
As soon as one goes away, another comes in.

疑問副詞和疑問代名詞

15.50. 【疑問副詞和疑問代名詞】 我們都明白關係代名詞 (who, what) 和關係副詞 (how, why, when, where) 一半是連詞，一半是代名詞或副詞，隨情形而不同. 但是，無論它們是否當關係的部分用，這些疑問詞都能導引名詞子句，因此，可以當作一種連詞看待.

How he did it I do not understand.
This is not a question of money, but of *how much we can do with the money at our disposal.*
There was no question as to *who was the guilty party.*
I cannot say *whether it is right or wrong.*
That was the reason *why he did it.* (關係詞)
We will see *what we can do for you.*
Tell me *when you want it ready.*
Who breaks pays.
He refused the offer but finally had to accept *what was far worse than the first offer*
I don't care *where you live*; you must come to the office at nine sharp [九點正].
Where you live does not concern me.

標 點 法

15.60. 【標點法：邏輯標準和發音標準】 標點符號(Punctuation Marks, 在英國通稱 "stops") 包括 '點號' (comma),

'分號' (semi-colon), '冒號' (colon), '句號' (full stop), '驚歎號' (exclamation mark *or* point), '問號' (question mark), '引號' (quotation marks; 在英國用法中又稱 "inverted commas" 〔反點號〕), 省略號 (apostrophe), 連字號 (hyphen), '破折號' (dash), '刪節號' (dottel line), '圓括號' (parentheses), '方括號' (brackets). 這些標點符號的用法對于句法有一種密切的關係.

標點符號的用法上有幾點難免是有爭執的. 這完全要看人以什麽爲判斷標準. 有些文法學家相信應該嚴格地遵守邏輯標準, 卽標點符號是用以釋明邏輯的意義, 而同時有許多人卻主張標點符號應該純粹以發音爲標準, 卽它們的用法是在于幫助讀者明瞭讀文句時何處可停, 何處不可停. 後者相信只有用這種方法, 才可以眞正欣賞作者的風格. 一切的文學作品, 不論中文英文, 都要高聲朗讀, 以便眞正的欣賞, 那末標點符號應該把著者要人家怎樣去讀他的文句的方法指示出來才是. 關于這種分別的說明, 在下面討論點號時便可見到.

可是初學者不宜採用發音標準, 因爲只有學過多年英文把它弄熟了以後, 才能眞正懂得讀時什麽地方好停頓, 什麽地方不宜停頓. 這個原則, 只有在熟練的作家手里才可以運用自如. 所以初學者以及普通作家應該根據邏輯標準, 設法在意義方面務求明晰. 明晰實在是唯一的原則. 有許多地方不妨卽以'常理'推之.

15.61. 〔點號 (,)〕 '點號' (comma) 的用與不用, 也許比其他各種標點符號更易引起爭論. 下面舉一些成爲疑問的例子:—

(1) 列舉名詞或事項時,末二項之間有 and 的地方不應該用點號分開.

I bought a hat, a cane and a book. (非: cane,)
Tom, Dick and Henry.
She sings, writes poetry and plays the piano. (比較: She sings *and* writes poetry *and* plays the piano.)

但依發音的標準,可以用一點號: I bought a hat, a cane, and a book. 注意比較長的平行子句或短語用 and 連結時,它前面的點號往往是十分需要的.

She sings French songs, and speaks the French language fluently, and plays the piano.
(依據發音標準,這第一個點號可省可不省:) She sings French songs and speaks the French language fluently, and plays the piano.

可見發音的原則是不十分確定;但是正唯其如此,也就留下更多的餘地來表達著者的意向了. 這種標點符號,這種文章,都跟實際的語言更加一致. 依邏輯的標準,這第一個 and 可以省去,如下:—

She sings French songs, speaks the French language fluently and plays the piano.

但在實生活中,我們並不老是這樣說法,所以這種句子或者要給人以矯揉做作或生硬的印象.

(2) 一個名詞有兩個修飾語的地方,第二個修飾語或短語往往用兩個或一個點號.

She bought a very expensive, but very good-looking(,) hat.
He was a clever, but undependable(,) assistant.

就邏輯上講，應該用兩個點號，但是在發音上講，只要用一個，因爲讀起來在末兩個詞兒之間是沒有停頓的。

(3) 常見的短語或副詞插在句子里，往往可以不用點號。

Th r fore(,) I went.
That was(,) of course(,) a fact.
Of course he knew. (較優于: Of course, he knew.)

但: This was, logically speaking, incorrect.
To be sure, he was to blame.
The envelope, strange to say, had been cut open.

(4) 其餘可以由'常理'來決定，以求得最高限度的明晰。

Any militarily weak nation would, like China, when she was invaded by Japan, resort to the boycott as the only weapon of defence. (子句 *when she was invaded by Japan* 或許要被誤解，以爲是指 *any nation* 而言: 所以 *China* 之後的點號亟宜刪去，讀如下:)
Any militarily weak nation would, like China when she was invaded by Japan, resort to the boycott, etc.

15.62. 【分號 (;)】 一句里有幾個平列結構要把它們分開，或者在句子里要劃出比點號所可表明的更長的一段文字，便用'分號' (semi-colon). 分號的特點就是用了它可以另起一個新子句而不用介詞。 例如:—

This was not due to carelessness; it was due to wilful neglect.

這一句可以寫成:

This was not due to carelessness, but (it was) due to wilful neglect.

或者:

This was not due to carelessness. It was due to wilful neglect.

可是我們總覺得這兩個平列陳述句的關係十分密切,不應該把它們用'句號'分開。所以,分號是介于句號與點號之間的一種標點符號。

有時邏輯關係證明用分號用得正當的地方,甚至也可以用連詞:—

This was not ideal; still, it was the best one could expect under the circumstances.

【練習一百十三】 下列各句中之點號,試以分號代之,或另行補入適當之連詞:

1. She was sent to Shanghai without her mother's knowledge, it was against the latter's wish.
2. Policemen were standing in the middle of the road, they stopped the tram-cars and the buses, automobiles were searched, and all passengers were subjected to a close examination.
3. On the one hand, he could not do it himself, on the other, he tried to prevent others from doing it.
4. Man proposes, God disposes.
5. Firstly, he did not want to go, secondly, he was not the best man for it, and thirdly, Dick was ready to go in his stead.

15.63. 【冒號 (:)】 下文列舉一件或數件事物以爲實例時,用'冒號' (colon). 又,下文是以不同形式敍述引語時,也用冒號 (這往往也可以用點號).

The list is as follows: one hat, two canes, three pairs of boots, etc.

Columbus discovered a string of islands: he did not discover the American Continent.

He said: "You have won." (或 He said, "You have won.")

15.64. 【句號 (.)】 凡意思完全的句子,末了都用'句號' (full stop). 現在美國新聞英語里有一種用簡短生動的句子的

趨勢，卽用句點表明句子的各部分，不過這種用法不足取法。茲舉例如下：—

> "There is a tendency in modern newspapers to use short snappy sentences. The shorter the better. For the snappier they are, the happier the reader will be. Which is a good thing for the busy business-man."

任何一類的'簡寫式' (abbreviation)，都用句號。例如：Dr. (= Doctor), Mr. (= mister), Mrs. (= Mistress), N.Y. (=New York), C.P. (=Communist Party), Jan., Feb., etc. (=January, February, etc.), Sun., Mon., etc. (=Sunday, Monday, etc.), S.M.C. (=Shanghai Municipal Council), R.C.A. (=Radio Corporation of America), yrs. (=yours). 不過近來有許多人(簡明及袖珍牛津字典著者 Fowler 兄弟可爲代表)就主張把'縮寫式' (contractions) 從簡寫式中分出，前者不用句號，後者才用，例如上例中 Mr / Mrs / Dr / yrs 都不加句號，其他都加句號。注意 Miss〔小姐，女士〕卻是一個完全的詞兒，不是簡寫式，無論如何不可用句號。

15.65. 【感歎號 (!) 和問號 (?)】 這兩種符號的用法雖則簡單（一個表明感歎，一個表明疑問），只是'常理'問題，然而有些地方也要注意：凡不含感歎或疑問的意思時，決不可亂用。例如中文句子'未知如何'，'不知道他來過了沒有'都不可用'問號' (question mark)，還有文言有許多助詞如'矣'，'焉'，'哉'，'耶'，並不是個個都適用'感歎號' (exclamation mark or point) 的。

She asked me how I did it. (非問句)
I was meditating how wonderful it all seemed. (非感歎句)

You are coming, too? (問句)
You are not joking? (問句)
Is that a fact! (感歎句,但不妨用問號; 或者雙 "?!" 也可用得.)
How dare you? (或: you!)

15.661. 【引號 (" " 或 ' ')】 '引號' (quotation marks), 或稱 '倒點號' (inverted commas), 分 '單' (single), '雙' (double)兩種. 有些人喜歡用單引號,但雙引號比較通用. 引號是引用別人寫的或說的句子或短語時候用的,凡引號應該視爲神聖不可侵犯的,(其中的字句必須和原文完全相符,切不可更改或增加一字). 如有省略的字句,應該用 '刪節號' (dotted line). 如果引用的時候,必須加以注釋或說明,那末加進去的字句必須用 '方括號' (brackets), 如下例:—

"He [Mr. Henderson] . . . would not allow anybody to interfere with the policy of the Committee.

引語中如再有引語,或用雙引號,或用單引號,要看那一種初先沒有用到過,便用那一種,如:—

"He said,'You have won.' "
'He said,"You have won." '

如引語有好幾段,那末只要在每段開始的地方用引號 (此處我們不妨稱 ['] 或 ["] 爲 '前引號'), 末段末了才加以結束 (用 '後引號', 卽 ['] 或 ["]). 如:—

" ..... ' .....
....
..... '.....
" ....
....
" ..... ' ..... '

15.662. 【省略號 (') 和連字號 (-)】 起首的引號是一個或兩個'倒點號', 但結束的單引號本來卻另有一名稱, 叫做'省略號' (apostrophe). 它的作用是: (1) 表明字母或數目字的省略, 如 can't, don't, what's, I'm, it's, e'er [ɛə], ne'er [nɛə], 'gainst, beginnin' [bi'ginin] (倫敦俚語中 [ŋ] 往往作 [n]), 便把字母(特別是元音字母)省去; '40 便是 1940 (年). (2) 表明名詞的領位, 如 boy's, women's, marshals' 等 (參看 §8.30). (3) 表明字母或數目字的複數, 如 two a's and five 3's (參看 §5.28 "d", "e" 兩項).

'連字號' (hyphen) 用于複合詞之間, 表明兩個 (或兩個以上) 詞兒的結合, 形成一個新的意義(參看 §2.60, §9.21). 又, 連字號在字典里除表明複合詞外, 又作爲劃分音節之用. 不過爲避免混淆起見, 字典里往往用'-' 表音節的分段, 另以"=" 表複合詞. 連字號還有一種用法, 卽書寫時或打字時如果到了一行的末了, 一個字還沒有完, 那末只要在音節上或字源上可以分拆的時候, 都可把未完部分寫在或打在第二行的起頭, 而在上一行末了用一個連字號.

15.67. 【破折號 (—) 和删節號 (. . .)】 '破折號' (dash) 通常表明思想的突然轉變, 同時在文法結構上或斷或不斷. 在實際生活之中, 我們的思想不會是循着完全句子的直線跑去, 往往在半途轉到別的東西上, 或不然在原來要說的句子未完以前突然中斷了. 因此, 現代的個人筆調往往用破折號以表示這種思想的轉變. 這種句子每每在談話中聽到, 以致它們在信札或娓語小品里的用法可收簡便和流暢的效果.

(a) 有時單單表明一種停頓，如下句：—

When the mandarin fell on the floor, the first thing he would do on getting up was to readjust his tortoise-shell spectacles—leisurely, correctly.

(b) 在下列各句中表示思想的突然轉變：—

In order to get a divorce, you'll have to—oh, well, we won't go into that.

I gave him full permission—in fact, I encouraged him, to examine the company's accounts.

We had no money, no food, not sufficient clothing, being stranded in a strange city, hounded by the police from place to place—you can imagine the rest.

(c) 破折號也可用在冒號，點號，或句號之後，同樣是表示一種較長的停頓的（如舉例，信札中的尊稱，或文章中段節的標題）。

The conditions are as follows:—

Dear Sir,—

For example,—

15.67. The Dash and the Dotted Line.—The dash is usually used . . . .

(d) '雙破折號' (**double dash**) 表明夾注，其用法和 '圓括號' (parentheses) 或 '方括號' (brackets) 相同。

After that, the three of us—i.e., my wife, my wife's brother and myself—went into a restaurant.

這個跟下一句的意思完全相同：—

After that, the three of us (i.e., my wife, my wife's brother and myself) went into a restaurant.

'刪節號' 表示一個未完的思想。 在現代文的筆調，有時用刪節號表示思想的碎片，如在回憶錄的文章之中。 這種描寫的方法，往往比較完全連貫的句子更有力，因爲它富有暗示的力量。

Shut up alone in the attic, I began to think of my early childhood. Effie playing in the garden . . . the nurse Jennie . . . my mother's smiling face . . . my father's stern eyes and prickly beard which tickled my little fingers . . . Jack my best sc ool friend . . . the barn behind the backyard in which Jack and I used to play hide and seek . . . my story book with a green cover . . . the adventures of Captain Drake . . . .

往往地一段文字以刪節號收尾，意卽箸者還有許多話要說，但是不如就這樣打住吧（'不盡欲言'）.

15.68. 【圓括號和方括號】 Parentheses 和 brackets 這兩個英文名稱有時用起來不分彼此，但正式的區別卻是圓括號 "( )" 和方括號 "[ ]". 括號式的夾注用得太多了，便顯出一種鬆懈而拖泥帶水的筆調，這個應該避免，除非在箸者說得津津有味，有這種貫徹的能力，比如在 George Saintsbury* 的文章里. 圓括號也可以包含一種記號或一個短語.

This was the great (?) Dr. Forbes. (插入這個問號表明作者對于 Dr. Forbes 的偉大——"greatness"——頗有懷疑的餘地.)

The people were taxed to death and bled white by the "revolutionary" (?!) generals. (此處用 "?!" 不特表明說者懷疑 '將軍們' 之 '革命性'，抑且含有譏刺意味，無異于說他們 '反革命'——"counter-revolutionary".)

Mr. Henderson continued: "We cannot let the unemployment question alone, because the question will not let us alone." (*Hear! Hear!*) (在此段新聞之中用 "*Hear! Hear!*" 者，表明聽衆對于 Mr. Henderson 的言論歡呼喝采.)

---

*George Edward Bateman Saintsbury, 十九世紀的英國文學評論家，1845 年生.——譯者註.

疏散句和後括句

15.70. 【疏散句法和後括句法】 比較下列兩組句子:—

(*A*) 疏散句 (*Loose Sentences*):—

The dinner is at eight, if I am not mistaken.
He writes fairly well, although he is a little inclined to use long words.

(*B*) 後括句 (*Periodic Sentences*):—

If I am not mistaken, the dinner is at eight.
Although he is a little inclined to use long words, he writes fairly well.

A 組里副句在句末,而B組里在句首。 句子的內容雖然是相同的,但是文章風格的意趣卻大不相同。 第一句,在說者的意向,說到 "The dinner is at eight" 大可結束了,但加上 if I am not mistaken 是作爲一種回想的。 在 B 組的第一句,這個句子是自始至終當作一個整個的思想。 所以第一式 (叫做 '疏散句') 是較隨意,較自然,而不十分矯飾,但是第二式 (叫做 '後括句') 是較正確而較正式。 兩種句式各有用處,傳達的意思是各異其趣的。 在中國學生有一種危險,便是專門只會用後括句,以致造出來的句子都失去平易流暢筆調所必不可少的那種簡便的特性。

中文古書里沒有疏散句。 例如 '論語' 里 '齊景公曰: "善哉! 信如君不君,臣不臣,父不父,子不子,雖有粟,吾得而食諸?" ' 這一段決不可把副句放在句末,成爲 '吾得而食諸,雖有粟?' 或 '雖有粟,信如君不君,臣不臣,父不父,子不子?' 但在

現代白語文里，卻可能說：‘你的話好啊！ 我那里有飯吃，雖然有粟，假如君不君，臣不臣，父不父，子不子？’ 這在文字的柔韌性上是一種進步，使得一種眞正口語的筆調可以實現。

第十六章　表現法的經濟

16.10. 【平易和經濟】 所謂精于某種語文,卽行文時文句的形式和結構達到一種平滑流利的境地。 我們動不動就陷入表現法上生硬和矯枉過正的毛病。 例如只用 you must not 和 if it is possible 而不用 you mustn't 和 if possible. 但是這些簡單的形式,他們英國人用得非常之多,因爲各國語言天然演化出某些省略文,抄走近路,結果既平易,又經濟。 英文是格外以喜歡結構的經濟和簡單出名,因爲除了足數應用的詞兒以外,決不多用一個。 所以我們在結束本書的時候,應該把各種省詞省力的訣門好好地復習一遍。

作用的變換

16.20. 【作用的變換】 名詞通常比較其他各詞類便于造成簡短的文句。 比較下列各句:—

I saw *hatred* in his eyes. 或: His eyes seemed to show *hatred.*
His eyes seem to show that he *hated* me.

I have no *fear* of his *running* away.
I am not *afraid* that he may *run* away.

Cleanliness is next to *holiness.*
To be clean is next in importance to *to be holy.* (此句極其不妥)

There's *comfort* for one's soul in *smoking.*
When one *smokes,* one's soul *feels comforted.* (此句極其不妥)

Strive for *simplicity of style.*

Strive *to be simple* when you *write.*

Punctuality often means a *waste* of time in China.

To be punctual in China means that you often have to *waste* your time waiting for others.

He makes a *virtue* of *necessity.*

Because he *has to* do it, he is making it appear that he *loves* doing it.

上列各對句子，一見便明白第一例簡短乾淨，自全體看來總比第二例好得多了.

16.21. 【子句變成短語】 因爲名詞比較簡單而有限式動詞（涉及主語或者還涉及賓語）比較複雜的關係，短語既沒有動詞和主語，便比子句簡短乾淨. 尤以介詞短語是這樣情形. 例如 *for fun* 這兩個詞兒可代表 he was not serious in, *by necessity* 可代表 because he had to do it 這個子句. Do it *by turn* 比較 You do it first and the others will do it one after another 好得多了. During his absence 比 while he is away 短些. 英文里有許多成對的介詞和連詞，其意義是相同的.

介　詞	連　詞
on account of his illness 或 *because of* illness	*because* he was ill
during his illness	*while* he was ill
against, despite, inspite of my advice	*although* I advised him to the contrary
for all my trouble, *with* all your trouble	*although* I (you) took so much trouble
for the purpose of, by way of, with a view to	*in order that, so that, that*
out of gratefulness, jealousy	*because* one felt grateful, jealous
With that, he went away.	*After* he said that, he went away.

with your permission	*if* you allow me
to my surprise	(I was surprised to)
upon seeing me there	*when* he saw me there
on hearing this	*when* he heard this
but for my help	*if* I had not helped him
like me	*as* I do it
after examination	*after* it was examined
before coming	*before* one came
since his departure	*since* he left

許多動詞和形容詞後面可以跟介詞短語，無限式短語，或者以 that 起頭的子句。

I am sure *of* his coming.
I am sure *to* meet him.
I am sure *that* he will come.

He is afraid *of* death.
He is afraid *to* die.
He is afraid *that* he may die.

He is thinking *of* going home.
He is thinking *to* go home.
He is thinking *that* he must go home.

I am sorry *for* you.
I am sorry *to* hear this.
I am sorry *that* the letter didn't reach you.

He was disappointed *at* their attitude.
He was disappointed *to* hear that they did not care.
He was disappointed *that* they took no interest in it.

16.22. 【短語修飾語變成詞兒修飾語】 許多短語當修飾語用，可以改爲詞兒修飾語。 例如 "We are living in a China *torn by civil wars*" 這一句可以寫得更簡單，變成 "We are living in a *war-torn* China." "If you go through the *famine-stricken* district" 比較 "if you go through the

district *stricken by famine* 簡單而好些. 這種種修飾法的構成,已經在 §9.26 里詳細說過了.

省略法

16.30. 【輔助詞兒的省略】 只要舉幾個例子就夠了.

They had come and (had) gone.
He had inherited and (had) spent a fortune.
She was trying to start a ball, and he (was trying) to prevent it.
She was trying to get into society, and he (was trying) to get away from it.

16.31. 【主要詞兒的省略】 這一種省略文在對話時的答句里特別常見.

Would you join? I should love to (join you).
I should like to fry chicken or bake potatoes, but do not know how (to do it).
He has declared bankruptcy. You don't tell me (that this is true)!
Would you speak at the next meeting? I would rather not (do that).
Will you come? I think (I will) not.
Why the hurry? (Why should there be such a hurry?)
Why so? (Why is it so?)
But how? (But how to do it?)
How now? (How is it now?)
What next? (What is to come next?)
What about? (What is it about?)
May I telephone to him now? You might just as well (do so).
Is that correct? In a way (it is).
Does he write poetry? Not any that I know of.
Did you know of this? Not until now.
(Do it) Gently, please.

(That's) Enough! (That's) Impossible!
He comes from the same place (as I do).
I went to Enfield's (house 或 shop).

16.32. 【副句中的省略法】 在英文里,副句往往受各種各樣的肢解 (參看 §9.82).

I'll come, if (it is) possible.
Wash it in water, pick out the small particles, if (there's) any, and sun it in the air. Take it in, when (it is) dry. Replace it, if (it is) necessary.
(When) Dinner (was) over, the ceremony was begun.
I will bring her up all alone, (if) God (be) willing.
You should come when (you are) called.
When (you are) writing your mother, give her my warmest regards.
When (you are) in doubt, consult the dictionary.
Although (he was) the youngest of the class, he captured all the prizes.

又,注意子句中的 that 也每每省去:—

He said (that) he was coming.
I saw (that) he could not do it.
He said (that) he had received word (that) Millie was not coming.

關係代名詞 that 等當賓語用時,也常常省去 (§9.68):—

The man (that, whom) you saw (或 talked with, 或 looked for).
He was not the man (that) I wanted.
He was the one (that) you were asking for.
The things we have are not the things we want, and the things we want are not the things we have.
The book (that, which) you bought (或 gave me).

由于縮短副句的這種趨勢,因而生出 as 和 but 等當關係代名詞的用法.

He came to apologize, *as* was expected.
Anyway, he lost his job, *as* has been mentioned above.
There is no one *but* admires his courage.

16.33. 【"And That"】 在英文里，短語 "and that" 可以代表整個前行的子句. 例如:—

The poor boy was ordered to go out and fetch water, *and that* (即: go out and fetch water) on a stormy night like this.
You had better pay up, *and that* (pay up) immediately.

簡寫和縮寫

16.40. 【縮寫】 縮寫式如 isn't, aren't, don't, won't, wouldn't, shan't, can't 極其普通,成爲日常用語的一部分. 事實上，它們已經變成正常的口語形式，甚至如果英國人說出 I shall not 或 I cannot 的時候，好像在 not 上多少帶點強調的意思. 實則 not 這個詞兒老是讀 [not], 決不讀 [nɔt], 所以除去讀時元音很清楚，或用上述的縮寫式以外，再沒有其他讀法了.

尤其在問句里，*Are* you *not* coming? 或 *Can* he *not* go himself? 不似 *Aren't* you coming? 或 *Can't* he go himself? 常見. Do ～ not? 在問句里更不多見. 我們極少說 *Do* you *not* think so? 或 *Does* he *not* come here everyday?, 總是用 *don't* you? 和 *doesn't* he? 的形式. 所以我們如果不精通這些形式，休想把英文說得正確而馴熟 (§ 3.51).

第三人稱單數現在用 don't, 從來文法書不加贊許的. 但是事實上，現在用 "he don't" 卻極其普通，甚至連哥倫比亞大

學教授演講時也出之于口哩. 這個潛藏的理由便是無意中對于經濟的需要,因爲 doesn't 含有兩個音節,而 don't 只有一個. "That *don't* matter" 當然比 "That *doesn't* matter" 好讀得多了. 但是我們中國學生卻還不宜做文法改造的先鋒,只要曉得這一點就夠了.

16.41. 【簡寫】 簡寫也變成英文日常用語的一部分. 平常,我們說 *auto* 〔汽車〕而不說 automobile, *taxi* 〔出租汽車〕不說 taxi-cab, *co-ed* 〔男女同校〕不說 co-education, *movie* 〔電影〕和 *talkie* 〔有聲〕不用 moving picture 和 talking picture, 又用 *'phone* 代 telephone, *cinema* 〔活動電影機〕代 cinematograph, *exam* 和 *prep* 代替 examination 和 preparation (或 preparatory). Advertisement 〔廣告〕就說 *ad*, omnibus 〔公共汽車〕就說 *bus*. 紐約的 Elevated Railways 〔高架鐵路〕順次而成 *elevated* > *el.* > *L* 的簡寫式. 在現代的英語里,我們可以說 "T.B." (=tuberculosis), "O.K." (意卽 "All right"; 起初 O.K. 是諧音,指 Santo Domingo 的 Aux Cayes 地方所產上等葡萄酒,後來借用,指任何合乎標準的事物), "C.O.D." (=cash on delivery 〔貨到收款〕), "C.P." (=Communist Party 〔共產黨〕), "B.A.T." (=British American Tobacco Co. 〔英美烟公司〕), 等等.

16.42. 【單音節語 (Monosyllalism)】 還有一種趨勢也是同樣需求簡潔,卽以短的詞兒代替長的詞兒,尤其是在美國俚語之中. 下面舉一些例子 (專門美國或英國的俚語逐一加以說明):—

cop=copper=policeman
thug=gangster
buck=dollar, 如 "three bucks" (美)
guy=fellow (美)
chap=fellow (英)
kid=child
grub=food, feed (英)
bite, snack=a light lunch
grit=endurance
guts=real value, inner force
swop=change
fake=forgery, anything false
fad, craze=fashion
crib=plagiarize
cram=work hard before examination
grab=take by force
lot=amount
hike=make an excursion on foot
probe=investigation
boss, chief=manager or president
date=appointment with girls
lift=elevator
sack—"give, get the sack"=dismiss, be dismissed
pop=papa
mom=mamma
kick=protest ("raise a kick")
row=quarrel ("raise, make a row")
push=aggressive or enterprising spirit
fit=in good health (英)
deal=business transaction
job, post=position.
dough=money (美)
tip=suggestion("give you a tip")
clue=suggestive evidence
off=finished, over
through—"am through with you" =will have no more to do with you
up=has come up ("What is up?", "subject is up for discussion")
play=drama
broke=bankrupt
bum=penniless loafer

這些單音節詞兒眞是不勝枚舉，但上列這些例子，有些也用在文章里，可見一斑了。 又，注意那些眞正單音節的組合 (monosyllabic combinations)，與中文極其相似:—

stand pat=remain firm in one's attitude [固執]
wash-out=a complete failure[大敗]
lock-out=exclusion of workers as employer's method against strikes [(對付罷工的)封廠]
try-out=preliminary test [預試]
tight-wad=stingy person [吝嗇鬼]
soul-mate=lover [情侶]
dumb-bell, bone-head=fool[木頭]
love-nest=lover's home [香閨]
old man=husband, father [老頭子]
joy ride=pleasure trip or drive [[樂游,兜風]
high-b..ow=high class, high and fine [高尚,高貴]

give-and-take=exchange of service or favour [授受,來往]

frame-up=trick to involve persons with the police [誣陷]

在現代美國語(current American)里,這種單音節語的盛行,從下列整句或整個短語都是單音節的例中不難體會出它的眞味來。如:—

She got into a fit (=rage). [發脾氣]

You've got to hand it to him (=acknowledge his superiority or cleverness). [甘拜下風]

Knock some sense into that guy (=make him realize his situation). [教他識相點,拿鏡子照照自己的面目]

He was the best guy to put over a deal (=a business trasaction). [最會做生意,懂得生意經]

I take off my hat to him (=acknowledge his cleverness). [致敬,五體投地]

What a guy wants is a lot of push and grit that will keep him on the go and not see red or fall flat and get scared when some one shoots a pop-gun at you. [脫帽

人要有魄力,有膽氣,以爲活動的餘地,如有人向你放一聲紙砲,臉要不紅,不要給它嚇了,也不要現出驚慌失措的樣子來.]

表現法經濟的幾種特別用法

16.50. 【格言】 格言,爲要有力而易于記憶起見,非力求簡短不可。英文格言之表明一種整個哲學或信仰,其簡潔不亞于中文文法,凡不必要的詞兒一概刪去。例如我們中文說'坐吃山空'的時候,意思跟'如果坐着吃,不做事,便是如山一般的家私也要給你吃光了'這一個長句子是一樣明顯,而意境卻生動活潑得多了。英文的例子如下:—

Easier said than done. (注意嚴格地講,此處應該用 *more easily.*)

First come, first served.

Once b'tten, twice shy.

Once a thief, always a thief.

No work, no pay.

Well begun, half done.

Live and let live.

16.60. 【經濟和感情文字】 一個人當情緒緊張的時候，自然只說出幾個要緊關頭的詞兒，因爲他無暇顧及文法的完全不完全了 這並不是說這類的感歎句便是不通或者沒有效力。感歎句的文法特點在 §3.80 里已經講過。 此處只舉一些例子，表明在這種感歎句中很自然的省略文：Hands off!〔切勿動手〕/ Hats off!〔脫帽!〕/ My purse!〔我的錢袋!〕/ Me a burglar?〔我偷東西嗎?〕/ Pretty, isn't it?〔美不美?〕/ Best food I've ever tasted!〔生平第一次嘗到的好食物!〕/ He married?!〔他結婚了!?〕/ Quick—the doctor!〔快——醫生!〕

16.70. 【經濟和商業】 有許多時會，爲實際原因而需要經濟的，例如打電報，寫新聞標題，做廣告文字，佈告和招貼。 如果有人打了一個電報，說 "MAN IN HOSPITAL DOCTOR CONFIDENT REMIT MONEY"〔某人進院醫生可靠匯款〕，大概沒有人會批評他的文法吧。 其他，例如做廣告，寫標題，最重要的事是簡潔有力而意趣深長。 說服顧客來買東西的在于提示的力量，而不在堆砌字句的工夫。 我們所見的廣告字句有些最好的非常之短而恰到好處。 香烟廣告最有意思的只有兩個詞兒："They satisfy"〔保君滿意〕；其他如 "Walk a mile for a Camel"〔(駱駝牌)遠道而求之〕/ "They are toasted"〔'烤'(此字常見于紅錫包——卽大英牌——以及從前的翠鳥牌香烟廣告上〕/ "Taste is everything"〔味居第一〕/ Smoke Capstan"〔請吸白錫包(卽'絞盤牌')〕。 這一類短語反覆讀下去，讀者自會生出一種催眠作用，不管他會不會吸烟。

形式文法概要

所謂形式文法是指討論範圍只限于語文中固有形式的那一種文法研究。形式文法所討論的是詞兒的分類，各個不同詞類的界說，每一詞類所特有的形式上的變化，以及句法的分析。

討論語文的形式方面的一種純粹理論的研究，必須藉重形容詞，副詞等的許多種類，而且爲要使得系統精確，便非爲它們定下捉摸不定的界說。可是，這種形式文法對于學英文的外國人卻沒有什麼用處，卻是一件令人駭異的事。自實用的觀點看來，下面這個概要儘够一般學生應用。數字指本書的章節，各點在該章該節里已有詳細的討論。

名　詞

1. 界說.——名詞指事物的名稱。動作（如 examination）或性質（如 goodness）亦可包括在內（§2.11）.

2. 分類.——名詞可分爲下列各類：—

1.	公　名	city (§4.40)
2.	專　名	Ningpo (§4.40)
3.	集合名詞	committee (§4.50)
4.	物質名詞	water (§4.51)
5.	抽象名詞	kindness (§4.30)

3. 性 (Gender).——名詞有四種性 (§4.71)：—

1.	陽　性	man
2.	陰　性	woman
3.	通　性	teacher
4.	中　性	chalk

4. 數 (Number).——英文里有'單數' (singular) 和'複數' (plural). 單數指一個，複數指一個以上 (§5.20). 加 -s 而成的複數叫做'規則複數 (regular plural), 如 windows; 其他不是加 -s 而成的叫做'不規則複數' (irregular), 如 children (§5.22).

5. 位 (Case).——名詞作主語用時，是在'主位' (nominative); 表所有權的是在'領位' (possessive), 如 man's; 作賓語用時是在'賓位' (objective). 在英文里，名詞只有在領位時才用特別形式來加以區別.

代名詞

6. 界說.——代名詞是代替名詞的詞兒 (如以 *he* 代 John, 以 *this* 代 this book).

7. 分類.——代名詞可分爲下列各類 (§8.11):—

人稱	he
指示	this, that
關係	"the boy *who* came"
疑問	who?, what?

8. 性.——代名詞也有四性，與名詞同. 事實上，代名詞只有第三人稱單數才有性的區別 (he, she, it).

9. 人稱 (Person) 和數.——有三個人稱和兩個數，如下:—

	單數	複數
第一人稱	I	we
第二人稱	thou, you	you
第三人稱	he, she, it	they

10. 位.——人稱代名詞有三位，主位，領位（§3.30）和賓位，形式各各不同（§7.20）.

11. 關係代名詞導引一個新的子句，同時又指先行的一個詞兒，卽先行詞（antecedent）（§9.60）.

形容詞

12. **界說.**——形容詞是用來修飾名詞或代名詞的.

13. 分類.——形容詞之分爲'敍述'（descriptive），'指示'（demonstrative），'定量'（quantitative）等等，實在並沒有什麽意義.

14. 定冠詞和不定冠詞.——The 叫做定冠詞，a（an）叫做不定冠詞（§8.70）.

15. 比較.——形容詞的比較有三級：原級，比較級和最高級（good, better, best; white, whiter, whitest）（§10.10）.

動詞

16. **界說.**——動詞是敍說人或物所作的事.

17. 分類.——動詞可分爲'外動詞'，'內動詞'和'助動詞'三類.

外動詞可直接統攝賓語，如："I *see*（外動詞）you（賓語）"（§11.20）.

內動詞不統攝賓語 (如 I *was sleeping*), 但可以跟一個介詞短語 (如 I was sleeping *in his bed*) (§11.21).

助動詞是跟別的動詞一同用, 如 "I *can* see", "I *will* go" (§13.60).

18. 人稱和數.——動詞和他們主語的數和人稱是一致的. 事實上,只有第三人稱單數現在直說法有一個特別的形式: "He *comes*." To Have 和 To Be 這兩個動詞的特別形式更多: I *have*, thou *hast* (古語——現用 you have), he *has*, we (you, they) *have* / I *am*, thou *art* (古語——現用 you *are*), he *is*, we (you, they) *are*. 動詞 To Be 的過去時制又有不同形式: I *was*, thou *wert* (古語——現用 you *were*), we (you, they) *were*.

Thou 後動詞加 -est (thou come*st*), 第三人稱單數加 -eth (he come*th*) 的形式是古文體.

19. 有限式和無限式.—— 跟固定主語連用的動詞 (He *comes*) 叫做有限式動詞;不這樣連用而加 to 在前面的叫做無限式 (infinitive mood) (*to come*).

20. 分詞.——用法和形容詞相仿的動詞叫做分詞. 現在分詞老是加 -ing 而形成,過去分詞則通常是加 -ed 的. 不規則動詞變過去分詞時加 -n, -en (beaten, drawn) 或由于其他變化 (slept) (§13.50).

現在分詞表明主動的或未完的動作 (a *deceiving* letter, a *drowning* man). **過去分詞**表明被動的或已完的動作 (a *deceived* person, a *drowned* man) (§§2.33, 11.44).

21. 態.——動詞或'自動態'或'被動態'(§11.30). 對于主語有何動作時,動詞便是被動態("I *was sent* away"). 被動態由于動詞 To Be 的各種形式加過去分詞而成: *was* (to be 的過去) + *sent* (send 的過去分詞) / *shall be sent* / *have been* sent, 等 (§11.31).

22. 語氣.——動詞有下列各種語氣:一

有限式 { 直說語氣: He comes. / 命令語氣: Come. / 虛擬語氣: If he come. }

無限式: To come

有些文法還承認有疑問語氣(§14.10).

直說語氣是用于陳述的平常語氣. 命令語氣用于發問,通常只限于第二人稱 (you). 虛擬語氣用于申述一種假設,以第三人稱單數現在式不加 -s 作爲區別 (§14.21)

注意這個所謂虛擬語氣嚴格地是指動詞的'形式'而言. (§14.12). 一個眞正的虛擬陳述 (例如一種假設) 可以全然不用虛擬式來表達,如 if he comes, 在形式上是直說的,而在意義上是虛擬的 (§14.20). 又, if he should come 的形式在舊式文法書里叫做'虛擬未來', 但這是命名上一個嚴重的錯誤,因爲這一式實在屬于'一般時制' (genenal tense), 其用法並不祇限于未來 (§14.21).

動詞 To Be 的虛擬式有特別形式: if I were (§14.10).

23. 時制.——時制有三個: 現在,過去和未來 (§13.10) 這三個主要時制又各分爲其他時制如下:一

	現 在	過 去	未 來
不 定	I come	I came	I shall come
繼 續	I am coming	I was coming	I shall be coming
完 了	I have come	I had come	I shall have come
完了繼續	I have been coming	I had been coming	I shall have been coming (罕用)

關于各種時制的用法，參看 §§ 11.10, 13.21 (現在不定)，§13.41 (過去)，§13.30 (未來)，§ 11.42 (現在完了)，§ 11.43 (繼續或進行)。

24. 動詞的三要部。 —— 現在，過去和過去分詞叫做動詞的三要部。動詞加 -ed 而成過去和過去分詞的叫做 '規則動詞' (kick, kick*ed*, kick*ed*)，不加 -ed 的叫做 '不規則動詞' (draw, drew, drawn; pay, paid, paid)。

('名動詞'——gerund——這個詞兒指動詞加 -ing 作名詞用，如 coming, going，這在現代英語里並無實際的用處)。

副 詞

25. 界說。——副詞是修飾動詞，形容詞或另一副詞的一個詞兒 (§2.11, "5")。

26. 分類。——副詞可作如下分類：簡單，疑問和關係。這種分類法並無特殊意義，除了關係副詞是導引子句，有一個表出或省略的 '先行詞' 的："Tell me (the time) *when* you are coming." 此處 time 叫做關係副詞 when 的先行詞。簡單副詞又依照意義分爲 '時間副詞' (when, now), '地方副詞' (where, here), '情狀副詞' (how, well, clearly) 等。

27. **比較.**——副詞也和形容詞一樣,比較有三級: 原級 (quickly), 比較級 (more quickly), 最高級 (most quickly) (§10.11).

介詞

28. **界說.**——介詞是表明某種關係的詞兒,統攝一個名詞作爲它的賓語: on the top, at the time. 有時也可帶一個副詞: at once, for ever, from afar.

介詞在實際用法上斷不能單獨成立, 而老是形成一個介詞短語.

連詞

29. **界說.**——連詞是連接詞兒或詞羣的一個詞兒: "this *and* that", "He was there *or* he was not."

30. **分類.**——介詞連接同等重要或同等邏輯關係的子句時,叫做'平列介詞'; 表明差等邏輯關係的叫做'從屬介詞'. 有了兩個不相等的子句,其中含有本動詞的一個叫做'主句', 而另一成爲主句之一部的那個子句叫做'副句' (§15.30).

歎詞

31. **界說.**——歎詞便是用于感嘆贊歎時的詞兒或短語 (§2.11, "8").

32. 句（或'文句'）. 句（文句）是表達一個完全意義的一羣詞兒.

33. 主語和述語. 本動詞的主語叫做句子的主語. **本動詞**及其附加的詞兒，如賓語，補足語，或修飾語，合成述語.

34. 補足語. 補足語是文句的一部分，爲要完成本動詞的意義而增加的，如 I should like *to go* / He was made *king* / Paint it *white*. 依界說，賓語也是一種補足語，如 I killed *him* (§ 9.90).

35. 直接賓語和間接賓語. 對于某人或爲某人作一件事或給某人一件東西，這個人就叫做動詞的間接賓語. 那件事物便是直接賓語，如 I gave *you* (間接賓語) a knife (直接賓語).

36. 子句. 子句是文句中的一句. 其所以異于短語者，在于它有主語述語，和文句一般無二 (§ 3.23). 名詞子句當名詞用 (§ 3.64)，副詞子句當副詞用，關係子句便是前面有一個關係代名詞或副詞的一個子句 (§ 9.60).

37. 短語. 短語是不含主語及有限式動詞的一羣詞兒 (§ 3.23). 分詞短語以分詞起頭 (§ 9.40)，介詞短語以介詞起頭 (§ 9.50)，無限式短語以動詞的無限式起頭 (§ 9.31). 這些短語當作形容詞或副詞用時，也叫做形容詞短語或副詞短語. 分詞短語中有一個詞兒，被它本身的分詞所修飾的時候，這個短語叫做**獨立分詞短語** (§ 9.42).

38. 複句和包孕句. 複句由兩個或兩個以上的平列子句合成. 包孕句由一個主句和一個或一個以上的副句造成.

39. **分析文句**便是說明句中各詞兒的詞類，並舉出名詞和代名詞的性，數，位（又代名詞的人稱）；有限動詞的數，人稱，語氣，及時制；形容詞和副詞的比較等級；以及文句中各個詞兒彼此的關係。

40. 舉出動詞的**變用法**，便是說明用于各種語氣，時制，人稱和數的種種形式。

索 引 一

項 目 部 分

一 畫

一兩,兩三,等 5.31 (1)
一切文法形式和結構是表達意念的工具 1.11
一致 15.48
一般化 8.71

二 畫

'了', 中文 3.31
　輕讀 11.40
人 4.60
人格化 1.41, 4.63
人和事物及其性 (第四章)
人稱:—
　一般 7.24
　人稱代名詞的 7.20
　矛盾 7.30
八大詞類 1.40, 2.10

三 畫

上等 10.13
下等 10.13
大寫字母 4.41
子句 3.23
　主要(主句), 15.30
　平列 15.30
　附屬(附句,副句), 15.30
　虛擬 3.77
　關係 9.60
子句修飾語 9.30
　總括 9.80
　經濟 9.82
　變成詞兒修飾語 16.21

四 畫

不可比較的詞兒 10.15
不定 8.70
不規則動詞 13.50
　一式 13.50 (a)
　二式 13.50 (b)
　三式 13.50 (c)
　無變化 5.22
不辨形狀,英文之 6.56
中國貨幣的英文名稱 6.30
中英文的不同:—
　在意念上 1.31
　在意念和表現法上 1.30
　在重量,價值,體積,距離,形狀和位置的表現法上 6.10
中英文的比較 2.13, 3.31

五十以上,以下,等 5.31 (4)
介詞 1.40, 2.10, 2.52, 11.21
使文句簡潔 9.51
在句末 9.52
持續性 11.62
特別用法 9.54
特殊用法 6.61
界說 2.11
當名詞 2.51
當副詞 2.52, 6.60
當形容詞 2.50, 6.60
介詞力量的意味 2.18
介詞短語 2.10 (6), 9.50
內動詞 11.20, 11.21
當外動詞 11.22
被動 12.41
公名 4.40
分詞 1.40, 2.33, 11.44
不連結的 9.41
拼法 2.34
現在 2.33
和終結方面 11.44
變副詞 2.43
過去 2.33
分詞短語:—
獨立 9.42
當修飾語 9.40
表一般關係 9.40, 9.42
表原因 9.40
表情狀 9.40
分數 5.30 (1)
分號 15.62
反問 3.46
反點號——見'引號'
少 5.31 (6)
引用句:—
引用句中的 15.66
直接 7.60
引號 7.60
和感歎號並用 15.65
單 15.66
雙 15.66
心理意向 5.24
文法作用 2.12
意味 2.14
變換 16.20
轉變 (第二章), 2.20
文法是表現法的科學 1.20
文法事實的分類法:—
形式的 1.40
意念的 1.40
方面 (參看'動作'), 2.17, 11.02
動作 1.41, (第十一章)
動詞~~,英文的 11.03
各種次要 11.90
意味 2.17
終結 11.44
非終結 11.44
比喻的表現法 7.50
比較 1.40, (第十章), 10.40, 10.50, 15.48
三級 1.20, 10.11
和位的關係 10.50
含蓄 10.14
有標準的 10.20
比較的等級: 相對的性質 10.10

五 畫

主動態 11.30
僞 11.35
主動者 12.10
主句 15.03

主觀 14.12
主語 1.10, 3 20, (第十二章), 12.10
　文法 12.12
　混合數的 5.41 (3)
　種類 12.20
　非人稱 12.50
代名詞 1.40, 2.10
　事物 7.40-7.45
　交互 7.23
　人稱 7.20, 7.21, 8.30
　反身 7.23
　賓位(輕讀) 2.18, 7.20
　本身 7.23
　界說 2.11
　疑問 3.60, 15.50
　種類 8.11
　通數 5.41 (5)
　關係 9.61-9.692
　非人稱 7.20, 7.40
　領位 8.30
代用名詞 2.10 (6)
代表法 1.41, (第七章), 7.10, 8.10
回想 3.77
包括 15.44
半 5.30 (5)
句(文句) 1.11, 3.10
　包孕 15.20
　單 15.20
　後括 15.70
　疏散 15.70
　複 15.20
句的語氣 3.30
　和動詞語氣的關係 14 10
句法 3.22
句號 15.64
可能 3 75, 14 30 (8)
左右,等 5.31 (2)
平易 16.10
平等 10.12
未來 13.30-13.34
　單純 13.10, 13.31
　表現法 13.30
　之後 13.10
　之前 13.10
未完成 11.43
本書編輯大綱 1.41
永遠眞理 13.21
目的 15.47
示例 8.40

六　畫

同位 8.40
同等 15.30
名詞 1.30, 2.10
　主動 11.33
　公有(公名) 4.40
　具體 4.30
　動作 2.15
　品性 2.15
　專有(專名) 4.40
　情況 2.15
　抽象 4.30, 5.12
　界說 2.11
　當修飾語用 9.27
　當動詞 2.23
　被動 11.33
　當形容詞 2.21
　變形容詞 2.22
　領位 8.30
名詞子句 3.64
名詞短語 9.83

因(原因) 15.43
因果的內在關係 15.49
多 5.31 (6)
多少 5.31 (6)
存在 11.11
成 1.20, 5.30 (1)
成對的介詞和連詞 16.21
成對的動詞和名詞 2.32
成語 1.10
有聲 2.32
有限式動詞 2.30
　重要 3.11
百分比 1.20, 5.30 (1)
米突制 6.20, 6.40
行爲 11.11

七 畫

位 1.40
　主 7.20
　人稱代名詞的 7.20
　賓 7.20
　比較和 10.50
　矛盾 7.31
　領 7.20
位置的表現法 1.41, 6.60
判斷 14.30 (5)
刪節號 7.60, 15.67
助動詞 3.41, 13.60
　代~~~的變用詞 13.62
　用~~~的過去表現法 13.61
　否定式 3.1
　省略 16.50
否定 3.50
　局部 3.57
　强調 3.55
　條件 3.57
否定詞:—
　助動詞的 3.51
　'存在'動詞的 3.51
　雙重 3.45
否認 1.41
含糊音 3.51
'吧',中文 3.31
完了 11.40
　未來 11.42
　現在 11.41
　用法 11.42
　過去 11.42
希望 3.73, 14.30 (4)
序數詞 8.50
形容詞 1.30, 2.10
　主動 11.34
　被動 11.34
　界說 2.11
　當名詞 2.41
　變名詞 2.40
　變副詞 2.42
形式 1.10
形狀的表現法 1.41, 6.50
抉擇 15.43
'把'字表賓語意念 1.11
折扣 5.30 (2)
更迭 8.60
泛指法 8.80

八 畫

事實 1.31, (第十四章), 14.11
事物 4.10

及其性（第四章）
意味 2.15
種類 4.10
兩性的人和動物 4.72
具體和抽象的東西 1.41
具體意義的抽象詞 4.31
'呢',中文, 3.31
受影響者 12.11
命令 3.71, 13.31, 14.30 (1)
間接 7.60
性 1.41, 4.70
中 4.71
公 4.71
陰 1.40, 4.71
陽 1.40, 4.71
'所',中文 7.42
拉丁比較詞 10.13
果'結果） 15.46
明知故昧的問句表否定語氣 3.55
物 4.60
肯定 3.40
含有否定力量的～～句 3.55
回答 3.42
反問 3.46
表現式 1.10
表現法 1.10
省略文的 7.70
表現法的科學（第一章）
表現法的經濟 1.41,（第十六章）
和商業 16.72
子句的 9.82
和平易 16.10
和感情文字 16.60
短語的 9.82
附句'副句） 15.30

九　畫

俚語:一
美國 16.42
英國 16.42
冒號 15.63
冠詞 8.70
不定 8.70
定 8.70
'卻',中文 3.31
品性 2.15
意味 2.16
括號:一
方 15.68
圓 15.68
指定法 1.41,（第八章）, 8.10
柔音 2.32
活的文法 1.42
界說 1.10
界限 10.32
省略法 16.32
主要詞兒的 16.31
副句中的 16.32
輔助詞兒的 16.30
省略號 8.31, 15.662
科學報告 13.41
美國新聞英語中的短促句 15.63
英文法 1.10
應教人學習英國人的思想方法和表現法 1.32
的研究 1.10
'要',中文 13.32
述語 1.10, 3.20
補足語 9.90
重音 2.18
重量 1.40

重量的表現法 6.20
陋語 3.51, 3.56
限制語 3.43
面積 6.40
音節 7.20

十 畫

修飾法 1.40, 8.10, (第九章), 9.10
　的重要 9.10
修飾語 1.40, 3.22
　之間的關係 9.22
　子句 9.30, 9.80
　對等 9.23
　在名詞之後的位置 9.81
　短語 9.20, 9.80
　和被修飾語的關係 9.20
　附屬 9.24
倍數 5.30 (3)
准許 3.74
剛音 2.32
原因(或'因') 15.46
　表～～時省去連詞 15.46
'呷',中文 3.31
差等 15.30
弱式(輕讀) 2.18, 3.44, 8.72
弱變的最高級詞 10.16
恐懼 14.30 (4)
'挺',北京話 10.16
效果 15.46
　對比的 15.49
時制 1.40, 13.10
　一般 13.60 (4)
　副句的 7.61, 13.43
　未來 13.30-13.34
　現在 13.20, 13.21
　現在完了 11.41, 11.42
　現在進行(繼續) 11.10, 11.31, 11.43
　表 13.10
　變換 14.20
　過去 13.40-13.42
　過去完了 13 42 (4)
　過去進行(繼續) 11.43
時間 1.40, 13.10
　名詞之中的 13.90
　和邏輯關係 15.49
格言 16.50
氣母 5.20
破折號 15.67
　雙 15.67 (d)
被修飾語 1.41, 9.11, 9.20
被動態 11.30
　構成 11.31
　用法 11.32
被動態動詞帶賓語 12.40
配分 8.60
除外 15.44

十一畫

假設 14.30 (5)
　一般 14.21
　各種程度 14.22
　未來 14.22 (2)
　現在 14.22 (3)
　純粹 3.76
　過去 14.22 (1)
副句(附句) 1.74, 15.30
　省略法 16.32
副詞 1.40, 2.10, 2.52

時間 11.40, 13.80
界說 2.11
當名詞 2.51
疑問 3.60, 15.50
關係 9.70
'勒止句' 7.70 (2)
動作 1.40, 2.15, 8.73, 11.10
主動 11.33, 11.34
交互 7.23, 11.90 (3)
內凝 11.20, 11.30
反身 11.90 (3)
同時 15.49
外射 1.41, 11.20, 11.30,(第十二章)
完成 11.40
役使 11.90 (1)
時間 1.40, (第十三章)
暫時 11.60, 11.61
未完 11.40
意味 2.16
終止 11.50 (3)
繼續 11.50 (2)
習慣 11.70, 13.21
被動 11.32, 11.34
試驗 1.31, 11.80
重複 11.90 (2)
長久 11.60, 11.61
開始 11.50 (1)
動機 15.47
動詞 1.11, 2.10
不規則(表) 2.33, 13.50
內 11.20, 11.21
助 3.41, 13.60
外 11.20, 11.22
存在 3.40
方面——見'動作'
暫時 11.61
本 3.20
有限式 3.11
無限式——見'無'
界說 2.11
當修飾語 9.27
當名詞 2.30
當形容詞(即'分詞') 2.33
研究 11.01
行爲 3.40
規則 2.33, 13.50
變名詞 2.31
當形容詞 2.35
動詞語氣 14.10
命令 14.10
無限式 14.10
疑問 14.10
直說 14.10
虛疑 14.10, 14.12, 14.20
區別 8.20
基數詞 8.50
專名 4.40
和大寫字母 4.41
常理 5.24
情況 2.15, 11.10
情狀 2.15
意味 2.17
接尾 2.22
形式上的 1.41
接近數 5.31
推測 3.74 3.75, 14.30 (7)
條件 11.10, 14.30 (2), 15 45
'將',中文 13.32
現在 13.20
代未來用的 13.34
單純 13.10
之後 13.10
之前 13.10
'戲劇式' 13.42

現在不定式的用法 11.10
現在分詞和過去分詞作用的不同 2.33
現在完了 11.40
　和時間副詞 11.41
　和過去不定式的不同 11.42
理論假設 3.74
終止 11.50
習慣動作 11.70
　現在 11.70, 13.21
　過去 11.70
規則 1.10
貨幣:—
　中國 6.30
　其他外國 6.30
　美國 6.30
　英國 6.30
連字號 9.21, 15.662
　用法 9.21
　省略 9.21
連詞 1.40, 2.10, 2.52, 3.22, 15.10
　界說 2.11
　表時間的 13.70
　和邏輯關係 15.10
遁詞 1.41
部分 5.30 (6)
問句:—
　直接 3.61
　過節 3.60, 3.62
　間接 3.64
問號 15.65
陳述 1.41
　代表 7.60
　直接 7.60
　間接 7.60
陳述句:—
　主觀 14.20
　客觀 14.20
　間接 7.10, 7.60
'頂',中文 10.16

十二畫

單數:—
　一般 5.25
　和複數 5.20-5.27
單音節的詞兒 16.42
　結合 16.42
單音節語(組合) 16.42
尊敬的影響 7.22
'就',中文 13.32
强式(重讀) 2.18, 3.44, 8.72
强調 3.44
提議 3.71, 14.30 (1)
換級 9.25
替代 15.43
無聲 2.32
無限式 1.40, 2.30
　分離 9.32
無限式短語 9.31
　修飾整個陳述句 9.31 (d)
　當修飾語 9.31
短語 3.23
短語修飾語 9.30
　接合 9.84
　總括 9.80
　經濟 9.82
　變成詞兒修飾語 16.22
程序 4.20
程序詞 4.20
　指結果的 4.21
補足語當修飾語 9.90
等級 1.40, (第十章)

差別 10.30
無定限 10.31
累積 10.33
結果 4.20
結構 1.11
期間 11.60
'著'('着'),中文 9.40
虛字,中文 3.31
虛擬現在式代將來 14.21 (1)
虛擬過去式 3.73
冒詞 3.81
詞(兒) 1.10
詞尾 4.22
詞序 1.11
倒置 3.60
詞形 1.20
詞級 9.11
詞羣 1.40
詞類 1.10, 1.40, 2.10, 9.11
及其作用的轉變 (第二章)
距離的表現法 1.41, 6.40
進行式的用法 11.43
量 1.40, (第五章)
意念 5.60
開始 11.50
間接問句和名詞子句 3.64
集合詞 4.50, 5.23
順序 8.50
事件的 15.49

十三畫

'嗎',中文 3.31
想像 1.31, (第十四章), 14.11
意念 1.10
的表現法 1.10
意向 13.31
感情吐露 3.80
感歎號 15.65
暗比 7.10, 7.50
禁止 3.74
羣名 4.50
義務 3.74, 14.30 (6)
過去 13.40-13.43
單純 13.10
形象化 13.42
之後 13.10
之前 13.10
用法 13.41
過去不定式 11.10
和現在完了的不同 11.42
過去動作是事實 13.40
過節問句的用法 3.62

十四畫

實字,中文 3.31
對立 15.42
態:一
主動 11.33, 11.34
名稱的解釋 11.30
被動 11.33, 11.34
數 1.20, 1.40, (第五章)
不定 1.20, 1.40, 5.31
動詞的 5.41
單 1.10, 5.20
意念 5.10
正 5.31
矛盾 5.40
複 1.10, 5.20

負 5.31
數詞 5.30
疑惑 14.30 (4)
疑問 3.60
疑問聲調 3.60, 3.63
蓋然(性) 3.75
複合名字 8.30
複合詞:—
舉例 2.60
當副詞 2.60
當動詞 2.60
當名詞 2.60
當形容詞 2.60
複數 5.20
不規則 5.20, 5.22
外來語的 5.22
岐義 5.27
特別情形 5.28
自然 5.26
規則 5.20
讀音 5.20
複數詞尾 5.20
輕讀 7.20
語助詞,中文 3.31
語氣 1.41
主觀 14.12
動詞 14.10
句的 (第三章), 3.30
可能 3.70, 14.30
客觀 14.12
虛擬 14.20
領位 8.30
同位名詞的 8.30 (e)
詞尾 s 的名詞的 8.30 (b)
特別情形 8.30 (c)
複合名詞的 8.30 (d)
複數名詞的 8.30 (a)
'麼',中文 3.31

十五畫

價值 1.40
價值的表現法 6 3)
賓語 1 11, (第十二章), 12.11
反覆 12.11
和受影響者 12.11
文法 12.12
直接 3.21, 12.31
表結果的 12.11
間接 3.21, 12.31
賓語意念 1.11
標點法 15.60
依發音標準 15.60
依邏輯標準 15.60
標點符號 1.41, 15.60-15.68
歎詞 2.10
界說 2.11
確定 8.70
'罷',中文 3.31
說什麼以及怎樣說 1.10
請求 3.71, 14.30 (1)
質詞 1.41, 4.51, 5.11

十六畫

錢:—
常~ 6.20
金~ 6.20
整千整萬 5.31 (5)
親密的影響 7.22
選擇 10.40

憂時 11.60
默音 2.34, 8.70
默說法,英文的 3.45, 10.31 (5)

十七畫

'總',中文 3.31
縮寫(式) 3.51, 16.40
聯合 15.41
聲母 5.20
聲調疑問 3.63
謙恭的影響 7.22
謙讓的影響 7.22
點號 15.61

十八畫

斷言:—
　強調 3.44
　限制 3.43
簡寫(式) 13.41
　舉例 15.64, 16.41

十九畫

關係 1.10, 1.20, (第十五章)
　偶然 15.49
　邏輯 15.10, 15.40. 15.49
'難道',中文 3.31
願望 3.73, 14.30 (3)
類詞 5.25

二十畫

繼續 11.50

二十二畫

觀念 1.10

二十三畫

變形的短語當修飾語用 9.26
邏輯關係 15.40
　時間和 15.49
　連詞和 15.10
體積的表現法 1.41, 6.40

二十四畫

讓步 14.30 (2), 15.45

索 引 二

詞 語 部 分

A

A, 8.70
　一般單數, 8.71
　用法, 6.50, 8.70
　省略, 8.73
　特別用法, 8.72
　讀音, 8.72
A bit, 10.31 (2)
-able, 11.34
Able to, 13.62
About, 5.31
Above, 10.20 (1)
Absolutely, 10.31 (4)
A cat, 8.71
According as, 15.48
Accordingly, 15.48
According to, 15.48
A deal, 10.31 (3)
A few, 3.53, 10.31
Affair(s), 7.43
After, 13.80, 15.49
Against, 15.42
Ago, 13.80
A good deal, 10.31 (3)
A great deal, 10.31 (3)
Ain't, 3.51
-al, 2.22
A little, 3.53, 10.31
All that, 7.42
"*All that glitters is not good*," 3.57
All the same, 15.42
Almost, 10.31 (4)
A lot (of), 10.31 (3)
Also, 15.44
Although, 15.45
Alumni, 5.22
Always, 13.80
An, 見 "*A*"
　在元音前, 8.70
　在輔讀音節的 *h* 之前, 8.70
　在默音 *h* 之前, 8.70
And, 9.84, 15.30, 15.41
And that, 7.44, 16.33
Another, 8.20
A number of, 5.31
Any, 7.41
Anybody, 3.52
Anyhow, 8.80
Any number of, 5.31
Any old ～, 8.80
Anything, 3.52, 7.43
Appreciably, 10.31 (3)
Approximately, 5.31
A rap, 10.31 (2)
Aren't, 3.51
Around, 6.61
As, 15.45, 15.43, 15.49
　作關係代名詞, 9.691, 16.32
As ～ *a*, 8.72 (3)
As a consequence, 15.43
As ～ *as*, 10.20 (2), 15.48, 9.691
As far as ～ *concerns* (或: ～ *is concerned*), 10.32
As soon as, 13.70 (2), 15.49
As well as, 15.41
At, 11.62
At the same time, 15.49
A twopence, 10.31 (2)

B

Barely, 10.31 (2)
Because, 15.46
Because of, 15.46
Begin ～*ing*, 11.50 (1)
Begin to, 11.50 (1)
Believing, 15.47
Below fifty, 5.31
Besides, 15.41
Beyond, 10.20 (1)
Both ～ *and*, 15.41
Boy, 7.41

Boys, 5.21
Bushel of rice, a, 5.11
But, 9.53, 9.84, 15.30, 15.42, 15.44
　作介詞, 9.53
　作關係代名詞, 9.692, 16.32
But for, 15.44
But that, 7.42
But what, 7.42
By, 10.30, 11.62
By far, 10.30
By way of, 15.47

C

Can, 3.41, 14.30 (7)
Cannot, 14.30 (7)
Can't, 3.51
Cat, 7.50
Catch me going to the church, 3.55
Cats, 8.71
Cease ~ing, 11.50 (3)
Cease to, 11.50 (3)
Centi-, 6.20, 6.40
Chiefly, 10.31 (4)
Completely. 10.31 (4)
Consequently, 15.43
Considerably, 10.31 (3)
Continue ~ing, 11.50 (2)
Continue to, 11.50 (2)
Contrary to, 15.42
Could, 3.76, 13.60, 14.30 (7)
Couldn't, 3.51

D

Dare, 9.33
Dare to, 9.33
Dead, 2.42
Deca-, 6.20, 6.40
Deci-, 6.20, 6.40
Decidedly, 10.31
Despite of, 15.42
Didn't, 3.51
Different from, 8.20
Differ from, 8.20
Directly, 13.70 (2), 15.49
Doesn't, 3.51
Dog, 7.50
Don't, 3.51, 16.40
Down, 6.61
Dozen, -s, 5.21, 5.31
During, 11.62
Dust, 7.50

E

Each, 4.60, 5.41, 8.60
Each other, 7.23
Each other's, 7.23
Each ~ the other, 7.23
Easily the best, 10.30
-ed, 2.22, 11.33
-edly, 2.43
-ee, 11.33
Either, 8.60, 15.43
Either ~ or, 8.60, 15.43
-en, 2.22
Enough for, 10.20
Enough to, 9.31 (c), 10.20
Entirely, 10.31 (4)
-er, 10.11, 11.33
-es, 5.20
-est, 10.11
Every, 13.80
Every ninth, 8.60
Every other, 8.60
Every third, 8.60
Except, 15.44
Excepted, 15.44
Excepting (for), 15.44
Exceptionally, 10.31 (3)
Excluded, 15.44
Excluding, 15.44

F

Fairly, 10.31 (1)
Far, 10.31 (3)
Far (be it) from, 15.42
Far from ~ing, 15.42
Farther, 10.14
Fast, 2.42
Few, 3.53
Finger, 7.50

Fish, 5.22
Fit of anger, a, 4.32
For all, 9.54, 15.42
For fear, 14.21
Former, 10.14
For ～'(s) sake, 8.30 (3)
For the purpose of, 15.47
From ten to fifteen, 5.31
From whom, 9.64
-ful, 2.2 , 11.34
Further, 10.14
Furthermore, 15.41

G

Girl, 4.71
Going to, 13.62
Go on ～ing, 11.60
Government has, 5.23
Government have, 5.23
Grain of sand, a, 5.11
Gram, 6.20
Granted, 15.45
Granting, 15.45
Greatly, 10.31 (3)

H

Had better, 10.40
Had had, 3.71, 11.42
Had rather, 10.40
Hard, 2.42
Hardly, 2.42, 10.31 (2)
Have, 3.41
Have better, 3.71
Have had, 11.42
Have to, 13.62
Hear! Hear! 15.68
Hearing, 15.47
Hecto-, 6.20, 6.40
He don't, 13.40
Hence, 15.46
How, 15.5
How ～ a, 8.72
However, 8.80, 15.42
Hundreds, 5.31
Hyper-, 10.20 (1)

I

"I ain't got nothing," 3.56
I am, 3.40
-ible, 11.34
-ic, 2.22
-ics, 5.26
I didn't know, 13.41
I didn't quite realize, 13.41
I do, 3.40
-ies, 5.21
If, 3.73, 9.71, 15.30, 15.45
If he have, 14.21
If he should have, 14.21
If I was, 14.23
If I were, 13.23
I forgot, 13.41
I had expected, 11.42 (5)
I had intended, 11.42 (5)
I knew, 13.41
"I made him go," 9.91
Immediately, 13.70 (2), 15.49
Immensely, 10.31
In, 2.17, 9.54, 11.62, 13.80
In accordance with, 15.48
In addition (to), 15.41
In any case, 8.80
In a way, 10.31 (1)
In case, 14.21
Included, 15.44
Including, 15.44
Incomparably, 10.31 (3)
In conformity with, 15.48
In consequence, 15.46
—ing and ～ —ing, 9.84
In (one's) place, 15.43
In (one's) stead, 15.43
In opposition to, 15.42
In order that, 15.30, 15.47
In order to, 15.47
In spite of (all), 15.42
Instead of (～ing), 15.43
In the course of, 11.62
In the meantime, 15.49
In the meanwhile, 15.49
In view of, 15.47
In which, 9.64
-ish, 2.22
I should, 3.71

I should say, 3.55
Isn't, 3.51
Is to, 13.33
It, 1.11, 7.45
　作主語, 12.21
　作 *that* 的先行詞, 7.45
　作補足修飾語, 7.45
　作模糊的主語, 7.45
　作模糊的賓語, 7.45
　作邏輯主語的代用詞, 7.45
I thought, 13.41
It is I, 7.31 (1)
I told you long ago, 13.41

K

Keep (on) ~ing, 11.60
Kilo-, 6.20, 6.40
Knowing, 15.47
Knowingly, 2.43

L

Ladies, 5.21
Lady, 4.71
Largely, 10.31 (4)
Last, 13.80
Later, 10.14
Latter, 10.14
Learning, 15.47
-less, 2.22
Lest, 14.21, 15.30
Let there be, 12.22
Little, 3.53, 10.31 (2)
Lots, 10.31 (3)
Lots of, 5.31
-ly, 2.17, 2.22, 2.43

M

Man, 4.71
Many a, 5.41, 8.72
Markedly, 10.31 (3)
May, 3.41, 3.73, 13.33, 14.30 (3, 8)
Meanwhile, 15.49
Meter, 6.40
Might, 3.76, 13.60, 14.30 (8)
Milli-, 6.20, 6.40
Mine, 7.21
Miss Rogers, the, 5.28
Mistaking, 15.47
Moment, the, 13.70 (2), 15.49
More and more, 10.30
More better, 10.12
More of a ~, 10.15
More often than not, 10.15
More or less, 10.31 (1)
More than, 10.20, 10.50, 15.48
More than one, 5.41
Much, 10.31 (3)
Must, 3.41, 14.30 (7)
Mustn't, 3.51

N

Need, 3.41, 9.33
Needn't, 3.51
Need to, 9.33
Neither ~ nor, 8.60, 15.30, 15.43
Nevertheless, 15.42
Next, 13.80
Next best, 10.12
No, 3.52
　否定回答中用, 3.54
Nobody, 3.52, 9.31 (a)
No fun, 3.52
No good, 3.52
No matter how, 8.80
No matter what, 8.80
No matter when, 8.80
None, 7.41
None too, 10.31
No other than, 8.20
No sooner than, 13.70 (2)
Not a, 3.52
Not altogether, 10.31
Not any, 3.52
Not enough, 10.20 (3)
Nothing, 2.53, 7.43, 9.31 (a)
Noticeably, 10.31 (3)
Not only ~ but also, 15.30
Not over, 10 31 (5)
Not till, 13.70 (1)
Not too, 10.31 (5)

Not until, 13.70 (1)
Notwithstanding, 15.42
No use (~ing), 3.52

O

-oes, 5.21
Often, 13.80
Of which, 4 62
On, 9.54, 11.62
On account of, 15.46
Once, 15 49
One, 7.24, 7.43
One another, 7.23
One of those is, 5.41
One of those who are, 5.41
One or two, 5.31
On the condition that, 15.45
On the contrary, 15.42
On the one hand, 15.42
On the other hand, 15.42
On top of that, 15.41
Or, 15 43
-or, 11.33
Or else, 15.30, 15.43
Or so, 5.31
Or thereabouts, 5.31
-os, 5.21
Other, 8.20
Other, the, 8.20
Others, 8.20
Otherwise, 15.30, 15.43
Ought, 13.60, 14.30 (6)
Oughtn't, 14.30 (6)
-ous, 11.34
Out of, 15.47
Over-, 10.20 (1), 10.31 (5)
Over fifty, 5.31
Owing to, 15.46

P

Partly, 10.31 (4)
Pending, 11.62, 15.49
People, 7.24
Perfectly, 10.31 (4)
Pianos, 5.21
Piece of folly, a, 4.32
Piece of luck, a, 5.12
Please, 9.33
Possible, 3.75, 10.12
Possibly, 3.75
Potatoes, 5.21
Prefer, 10.40
Presently, 13.80
Principally, 10.31 (4)
Probable, 3.75
Probably, 3.75
Provided, 15.45
Providing, 15.45

Q

Quite, 10.31 (4)
Quite ~ a, 8.72 (2)

R

Rather, 10.31 (1)
Rather ~ a, 8.72 (2)
Relatively, 10.31 (4)
Remain ~ing, 11.50 (2)
Remarkedly, 10.31 (5)
Respective(ly), 8.60
Round, 6.61

S

-s, 5.20
Same, 8.20
Scarcely, 10.31 (2)
Scores, 5.31
Seeing, 15.47
Shall, 3.72, 13.31, 14.30 (4)
讀音, 13.31
Shan't, 3.51, 14.30 (4)
Should, 3.76 13.60, 14.30 (6)
Shouldn't, 3.51
Since, 11.42 (3), 15.43
Slightly, 10.31 (2)
So ~ a, 8.72 (3)
So ~ as, 10.20
So ~ as to, 9.31 (c)

So long as, 10.32, 15.30
Some, 5.31, 7.41
Somebody, 9.31 (a)
Something, 7.43, 9.31 (a)
Somewhat, 10.31 (1)
Sons-in-law, 5.28
So that, 15.47
Still, 15.30
Stop ～ing, 11.50 (3)
Stop to, 11.50 (3)
Such ～ a, 8.72 (2)
Such ～ as, 9.691
Sufficient to, 9 31 (c)
Super-, 10.20 (1)

T

Than, 8.20, 9.53
Th n whom, 9.53
That, 4.61, 7.44, 8.20, 15.30
　代 *for which*, 9.67
　代 *in which*, 9.67
　作關明的關係代名詞, 9.61
　省去 (在子句中), 9.68, 16.32
That don't matter, 16.40
That ～ for, 9.66
That ～ of yours, 7.21
That ～ to, 9.66
The, 2.41, 8.70
　一般單數, 8.71
　用法, 8.70
　在專名前, 8.72 (4)
　省略, 8.73
　特別用法, 8.72
　當等級副詞用, 8.72 (5), 10.33
The cat, 8.71
The dead, 2.41
The poor, 2.41
There, 1 .22
　兩種讀法, 12.22
There are, 12.22
Therefore, 15.46
There is, 12.22
The same ～ as, 9.691
Thing, 7.43
Thinking, 15.47
This, 8.20, 13.80
This ～ of mine, 7.21
Though, 15.45
Three weeks is heaps of time, 5.24
Through, 9.54
Till, 13.70 (1)
To, 9.31, 9.54
　省去或保留, 9.90
To a certain degree, 10 31 (1)
To a certain extent, 10.31 (1)
To a great extent, 10.31 (3)
Too, 15.44
Too ～ a, 8.72 (3)
Too ～ for, 10.20 (1)
Too ～ to, 9.31 (c), 10.20 (1)
Totally, 10.31 (4)
To the end that, 15 47
Tremendously, 10.31 (3)

U

Under, 9.54
Under-, 10.20 (3)
Unless, 15.30
Until, 11 22 (3), 13.70
Up, 6.61
Used to, 11.70
Usually, 11.70
Usually not, 11.70
Used to be, 11.70
Used to, get, 11.70
Utterly, 10.31 (4)

V

Very, 10.12, 10.31 (3)

W

Wasn't, 3 31
We, Editorial, 7.22
We, Royal, 7.22
Weren't, 3.51
What, 7.42, 15.50
What ～ a, 8.72 (2)
Whatever, 8.80
What is more, 15.41
When, 9.70, 13.70 (3), 15.49, 15 50

When called, 9.71
Whenever, 8.80, 9.70
When resting, 9.71
Where, 9.70, 15.50
Whereas, 15.30, 15.42
Whereby, 9.70
Wherefore, 9.70
Wherein, 9.70
Whereof, 9.70
Wherever, 8.80, 9.70
Where's your manners?, 5.41 (4)
Which, 4.31
　作評論的代名詞, 9.62
　修飾連途句, 9.63
Which ～ and which, 9.84
Which ～ it, 9.65
Which ～ them, 9.65 「15.49
While, 13.70 (3), 15.30, 15.42, 15.45,
Who, 7.61, 7.31 (2), 8.80, 15.50
Whoever, 7.31 (3), 8.80
Wholly, 10.31 (4)
Whom, 7.31 (2)
Whomever, 7.31 (3), 8.80
Whose, 4.62
Why, 9.70, 15.50
Whys and wherefores, the, 9.79
Will, 3.72, 13.31, 14.30 (4)
　讀音, 13 31
Will you?, 3 61
With, 9.54
With all, 9.54
With a view to (～ing), 15.47
With the result that, 15.46
Woman, 4.71
Won't, 3.51
Won't you?, 3.61
Would 3.76, 13.60
Wouldn't, 3.51
Would rather, 10.40

Y

-y, 2.22
-ys, 5.21